unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v91

Daniel

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2026-08-14
Version: v3.0.0
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links
Date: 2026-09-26
Version: v91
Published by: unfoldingWord®

Generated with: Door43 Preview **Version:** 1.4.10 **Date:** 2026-09-26

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes - Daniel **14**

Daniel Introduciton 14
Daniel 1 17
Daniel 2 47
Daniel 3 112
Daniel 4 150
Daniel 5 203
Daniel 6 250
Daniel 7 286
Daniel 8 335
Daniel 9 379
Daniel 10 435
Daniel 11 469
Daniel 12 548

Appendex: unfoldingWord® Translation Academy **572**

Abstract Nouns 573
Active or Passive 577
Alternative Readings 581
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 585
Background Information 591
Biblical Distance 596
Blessings 601
Collective Nouns 605
Connect — Contrast Relationship 610
Connect — Exception Clauses 614
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 617
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 622
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship 626
Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship 630
Connecting Words and Phrases 633
Copy or Borrow Words 639
Direct and Indirect Quotations 642

Doublet 645
Ellipsis 649
End of Story 654
Euphemism 657
Exclamations 660
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 664
First, Second or Third Person 666
Foreground Information 669
Forms of You 675
Forms of ‘You’ — Singular 677
Generic Noun Phrases 680
Hebrew Months 683
Hendiadys 688
How to Translate Names 692
Hyperbole 699
Idiom 706
Imperatives — Other Uses 710
Information Structure 715
Introduction of a New Event 719
Introduction of New and Old Participants 726
Irregular Use of Tenses 731
Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit 738
Merism 742
Metaphor 745
Metonymy 755
Nominal Adjectives 759
Numbers 762
Oath Formulas 767
Order of Events 773
Ordinal Numbers 777
Parallelism 781
Personification 786
Poetry 790
Politeness 796
Possession 802
Pronouns — When to Use Them 809
Quotations and Quote Margins 813

Quotes within Quotes 817
Reduplication 821
Rhetorical Question 825
Simile 832
Symbolic Action 837
Symbolic Language 841
Synecdoche 845
Textual Variants 847
Third-Person Imperatives 851
Translate Unknowns 857
Unusual Uses of the Plural 863
Verse Bridges 866
When Masculine Words Include Women 869

Appendix: unfoldingWord® Translation Words 873

abomination, abominable 874
acknowledge, admit, admitted 875
adversary, enemy 876
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels 877
afflict, affliction, distress 878
age, aged, old, old age, years old 880
age, era, time 881
Ahasuerus 882
alarm, alarmed 883
alien, foreigner, sojourn 884
Ammon, Ammonite 885
angel, archangel 886
anoint, anointed, anointing 888
appoint, appointed 890
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus 891
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community 892
assign, assigned, assignment, reassign 894
Azariah 895
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian 896
banquet 898
bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced 899
bear, bears, bore, borne, bearer, bearing, carry 900
beast 901

bind, bond, bound 902
blemish, unblemished, defect 904
bless, blessed, blessing 905
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee 907
bread 909
bronze 910
call, called 911
call, called 912
call, called, call out, called out 913
captive, captivate, captivity, catch 914
chaff 916
Chaldea, Chaldean 917
chief, leader 918
commander 919
companion, fellow worker, friend 920
compassion, compassionate 921
concubine 922
confess, confession 923
confirm, confirmation 925
consume, devour 926
contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to 928
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved 929
courage, courageous, valor 930
court 931
covenant 932
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love 935
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox 936
cry, cry out, outcry 938
curse, cursed, cursing 939
Cyrus 941
Daniel 942
Darius 943
day 944
declare, proclaim, announce 945
decree, decreed 947
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted 948
defile, defiled, desecrate 949

delight 951
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered 952
desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator 954
destroy, destruction, annihilate 956
devour 957
discern, discernment, distinguish 958
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed 959
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer 960
doctrine, teaching, belief, beliefs, instruction, knowledge 961
dominion 962
donkey, mule 963
dream 964
drunk, drunkard 966
eagle 967
earth, land 968
Edom, Edomite, Idumea 970
Egypt, Egyptian 971
Elam, Elamites 973
endure, endurance 974
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 976
eunuch 979
evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant 980
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin 982
exalt, exalted, exaltation 984
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy 985
fast, fasting 987
favor, favorable, favoritism 989
fear, afraid, frighten 991
feast, feasting 993
flood 994
flute, pipe 996
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned 997
forsake, forsaken, leave 999
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 1001
furnace 1002
Gabriel 1003
gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway 1004

generation 1005
generation 1006
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around 1007
glory, glorious, glorify 1008
goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid 1011
God 1013
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father 1016
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry 1018
gold, golden 1020
good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness 1021
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha 1023
Greece, Grecian 1025
Hananiah 1026
harp, harpist 1027
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 1028
Holy One 1030
holy place 1031
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit 1033
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 1035
honor 1038
horn, horned, shofar 1040
hour, moment 1041
house 1042
house of God, your house, his house, Yahweh's house, a house for my name, the house for my name, the house, a house, a house of Yahweh 1043
house, household, house of Israel, house of David 1045
humble, humbled, humility 1046
image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue 1048
incense 1050
iniquity 1051
interpret, interpretation, interpreter 1052
iron 1053
Israel, Israelites 1054
Jehoiakim 1056
Jeremiah 1057
Jerusalem 1059
Jew, Jewish 1061
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad 1063

Judea, Judah 1065
judge, judgment 1067
king, kingship 1069
kingdom 1071
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 1073
labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work 1075
lampstand 1076
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God 1078
law, principle 1080
leopard 1081
likeness 1082
lion, lioness 1084
livestock, animals 1085
loins 1086
lord, Lord, master, sir 1087
love, beloved 1090
lute, lyre 1093
magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits 1094
magistrate 1095
majesty 1096
manager, steward, stewardship 1097
Mede, Medes, Media 1098
mercy, merciful 1099
Michael 1101
might, mighty, mighty works 1102
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded 1104
miracle, wonder, sign 1106
Mishael 1108
Moab, Moabite 1109
month, monthly 1110
Most High 1111
mourn, mourner, weeping 1112
mystery, hidden truth 1113
nation 1114
Nebuchadnezzar 1116
Negev 1118
noble, nobleman, royal official 1119

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn 1120
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared 1122
palace, house 1123
palm 1124
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 1125
perfect, complete 1127
Persia, Persians 1128
pit, pitfall, trench, cistern 1129
plea, plead, please, beg, implore 1130
plunder, plundered, spoil, spoils 1131
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess 1132
praise, praised, praiseworthy 1134
pray, prayer 1136
prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility 1138
profane, profaned 1140
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 1141
prosper, prosperity, prosperous 1143
prostrate 1144
prostrate, bow down, worship 1145
proud, pride, prideful, boast, boastful, boasting 1147
province, provincial 1149
prudence, prudent 1150
pure, purify, purification 1151
purple 1153
queen 1154
rage 1155
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness 1156
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance 1158
reign, rule 1160
repent, repentance 1161
report, reported, tell, reputation 1163
restore, restoration 1164
reward, prize, deserve 1166
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness 1168
ruin, ruins, ruined 1171
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader 1172
sackcloth 1174

sacrifice, offering 1175
saint 1177
sanctuary 1178
save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue 1180
scroll 1183
seal, sealed, unsealed 1184
seed 1185
seek, search, look for 1186
seize, seizure, capture 1187
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 1188
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach 1190
Shinar 1192
shrewd, cunning 1193
siege, besiege, besieged, siegework, siegeworks 1194
silver 1195
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 1196
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder 1199
snow 1200
Son of Man, son of man 1201
sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician 1203
sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted 1204
spirit, wind, breath 1206
splendor 1208
statute 1209
stone, stoning 1210
storehouse 1211
stronghold, fortification, fortress, citadel 1212
stumble, reeling 1213
suffer, suffering 1214
sword, swordsmen 1216
temple, house, house of God 1218
tent, tentmaker 1220
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic 1221
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire 1222
the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea 1224
thresh 1225
throne, enthroned 1226

tongue, language 1227
trample 1229
transgress, transgression 1230
tremble, shake, shaken, quake 1231
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity 1232
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness 1234
tunic 1236
understand, understanding, thinking 1237
vision, envision 1238
watch, guard, take heed, beware 1239
week 1240
wine, wineskin, new wine 1241
wise men, advisor 1243
wise, wisdom 1244
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture 1246
wrath, fury 1249
Yahweh, Yah 1250
year 1253

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes - Daniel

Introduction to Daniel

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the book of Daniel

1. Daniel and his friends resolve not to defile themselves (1:1–21)
2. Daniel interprets Nebuchadnezzar’s dream about a statue (2:1–49)
3. God delivers Daniel’s friends from the fiery furnace (3:1–30)
4. Daniel interprets Nebuchadnezzar’s dream about a tree (4:1–37)
5. Daniel interprets the writing on the wall at Belshazzar’s feast (5:1–31)
6. God keeps Daniel safe in the den of lions (6:1–28)
7. Daniel’s vision of four beasts (7:1–28)
8. Daniel’s vision of a ram and a goat (8:1–27)
9. Daniel’s prayer for the restoration of Jerusalem and Gabriel’s explanation (9:1–27)
10. Daniel’s vision of an angel and the kings of the north and south (10:1–12:13)
    A. Daniel has a vision and a man appears to him to explain it (10:1–11:1)
    B. The wars between the kings of the south and north (11:2–45)
    C. What will happen at “the time of the end” (12:1–13)

What is the Book of Daniel about?

The first part of the book of Daniel (chapters 1–6) relates stories about four young men whom the Babylonians took from the kingdom of Judah as prisoners. One of

these men was named Daniel. He had three friends, to whom the Babylonians gave the names Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These stories tell how these young men were faithful to God while living in a pagan land and serving a pagan king. They tell how God protected them and rewarded them because they were faithful. They also tell how God gave Daniel the ability to interpret dreams and explain mysteries.

The second part of the book of Daniel (chapters 7–12) relates several prophetic visions that Daniel had. These chapters also describe, in several cases, the glorious appearance of angelic messengers who explained to Daniel what his visions meant.

What title should translators use for this book?

Translators can use the traditional title “The book of Daniel” or just “Daniel.” They might also call this book “Stories and Visions of Daniel” or “What Daniel Did and What God Showed Him.”

Who wrote the Book of Daniel?

The first six chapters of the book speak of Daniel and his friends in the third person (as “he” and “they”). This suggests that someone else, perhaps another Judean who was exiled in Babylon with them, may have written these chapters to record how they remained faithful to God and how God protected them.

In the last six chapters of the book, Daniel speaks of himself in the first person (saying “I, Daniel”). (The seventh chapter serves as a transition; it begins by speaking of Daniel in the third person, but this introduces an account by Daniel himself that ends with this first-person attestation.) This indicates that Daniel himself wrote this part of the book.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

(Some material may go here.)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

The meaning of Daniel’s visions

Even though angelic messengers explain to Daniel what his visions mean, it is not entirely clear to modern readers what historic time periods they predicted or whether they predict things that will happen at the end of the world. It is not necessary to

come to conclusions about this in order to translate the book. The language in the visions is straightforward and descriptive, and translation teams should be able to reflect successfully in their languages what it says. What it means is a matter for preachers and teachers of the Scriptures to try to understand and explain.

The original languages of the book of Daniel

Half of the book of Daniel is written in Hebrew, and the other half of the book is written in Aramaic. These halves do not correspond with the two parts that are stories and visions. Instead, chapters 1 and 8–12 are in Hebrew, while chapters 2–7 are in Aramaic. This means that the first chapter of each part of the book is in a different language from the rest of that part. In the first part, the Hebrew chapter introduces a transition from the young men's former life in Jerusalem to their life in the Babylonian and Persian courts, where Aramaic was spoken. In the second part, the Aramaic chapter introduces a transition from the affairs of those foreign courts to matters that affect the Jewish people more directly. Daniel and his three friends were native speakers of Hebrew who had to learn Aramaic (1:4), so they or others who were with them would have been able to put together a book like this that used both languages.

Even in the English ULT text, some of the differences between the original Hebrew and Aramaic texts will be evident. For example, translators may already have encountered the common Hebrew expression "answered and said" in their work on other books. In the Aramaic sections of Daniel, the equivalent expression is "answered and was saying." It is not necessary to try to show such differences in your translation. Consistently say things in the way that is most natural and meaningful in your translation.

"all before that" and "all before this"

In the Aramaic portion of the book (chapters 2–7), these similar phrases describe some relationship between what follows and what precedes. They do not indicate that what precedes happened before what follows. Their meaning is flexible and varies by context. Notes will suggest what they mean and how you might translate them in each instance.

Daniel 1

Introduction to Daniel

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the book of Daniel

1. Daniel and his friends resolve not to defile themselves (1:1–21)
2. Daniel interprets Nebuchadnezzar's dream about a statue (2:1–49)
3. God delivers Daniel's friends from the fiery furnace (3:1–30)
4. Daniel interprets Nebuchadnezzar's dream about a tree (4:1–37)
5. Daniel interprets the writing on the wall at Belshazzar's feast (5:1–31)
6. God keeps Daniel safe in the den of lions (6:1–28)
7. Daniel's vision of four beasts (7:1–28)
8. Daniel's vision of a ram and a goat (8:1–27)
9. Daniel's prayer for the restoration of Jerusalem and Gabriel's explanation (9:1–27)
10. Daniel's vision of an angel and the kings of the north and south (10:1–12:13)
    A. Daniel has a vision and a man appears to him to explain it (10:1–11:1)
    B. The wars between the kings of the south and north (11:2–45)
    C. What will happen at "the time of the end" (12:1–13)

What is the Book of Daniel about?

The first part of the book of Daniel (chapters 1–6) relates stories about four young men whom the Babylonians took from the kingdom of Judah as prisoners. One of these men was named Daniel. He had three friends, to whom the Babylonians gave the names Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These stories tell how these young men were faithful to God while living in a pagan land and serving a pagan king. They

tell how God protected them and rewarded them because they were faithful. They also tell how God gave Daniel the ability to interpret dreams and explain mysteries.

The second part of the book of Daniel (chapters 7–12) relates several prophetic visions that Daniel had. These chapters also describe, in several cases, the glorious appearance of angelic messengers who explained to Daniel what his visions meant.

What title should translators use for this book?

Translators can use the traditional title “The book of Daniel” or just “Daniel.” They might also call this book “Stories and Visions of Daniel” or “What Daniel Did and What God Showed Him.”

Who wrote the Book of Daniel?

The first six chapters of the book speak of Daniel and his friends in the third person (as “he” and “they”). This suggests that someone else, perhaps another Judean who was exiled in Babylon with them, may have written these chapters to record how they remained faithful to God and how God protected them.

In the last six chapters of the book, Daniel speaks of himself in the first person (saying “I, Daniel”). (The seventh chapter serves as a transition; it begins by speaking of Daniel in the third person, but this introduces an account by Daniel himself that ends with this first-person attestation.) This indicates that Daniel himself wrote this part of the book.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

The meaning of Daniel’s visions

Even though angelic messengers explain to Daniel what his visions mean, it is not entirely clear to modern readers what historic time periods they predicted or whether they predict things that will happen at the end of the world. It is not necessary to come to conclusions about this in order to translate the book. The language in the visions is straightforward and descriptive, and translation teams should be able to

reflect successfully in their languages what it says. What it means is a matter for preachers and teachers of the Scriptures to try to understand and explain.

The original languages of the book of Daniel

Half of the book of Daniel is written in Hebrew, and the other half of the book is written in Aramaic. These halves do not correspond with the two parts that are stories and visions. Instead, chapters 1 and 8–12 are in Hebrew, while chapters 2–7 are in Aramaic. This means that the first chapter of each part of the book is in a different language from the rest of that part. In the first part, the Hebrew chapter introduces a transition from the young men's former life in Jerusalem to their life in the Babylonian and Persian courts, where Aramaic was spoken. In the second part, the Aramaic chapter introduces a transition from the affairs of those foreign courts to matters that affect the Jewish people more directly. Daniel and his three friends were native speakers of Hebrew who had to learn Aramaic (1:4), so they or others who were with them would have been able to put together a book like this that used both languages.

Even in the English ULT text, some of the differences between the original Hebrew and Aramaic texts will be evident. For example, translators may already have encountered the common Hebrew expression "answered and said" in their work on other books. In the Aramaic sections of Daniel, the equivalent expression is "answered and was saying." It is not necessary to try to show such differences in your translation. Consistently say things in the way that is most natural and meaningful in your translation.

Daniel 1:1

ULT	UST
In the year of three to the reign of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, came {to} Jerusalem and besieged against it.	*After King Jehoiakim had been ruling Judah for almost three years, King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon came to Jerusalem with his army and surrounded the city.*

ULT In the year of three
UST After … for almost three years
(בִּשְׁנַת שָׁלֹושׁ)

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **three**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. In this verse, the number identifies the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim. Alternate translation: [In the third year of the reign]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In the year of	After … for … years
to the reign of	had been ruling
Jehoiakim	Jehoiakim
king of	King
Judah	Judah
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar … with his army
Babylon	Babylon
{to} Jerusalem	to Jerusalem
and besieged	and surrounded

Daniel 1:2

ULT	UST
And the Lord gave into his hand Jehoiakim, king of Judah, and some of the vessels of the house of God. And he brought them {to} the land of Shinar, {to} the house of his god, and he brought the vessels {into} the house of treasure of his god.	*{After two years,} the Lord allowed Nebuchadnezzar to capture Jehoiakim, the king of Judah. They also captured some of the things that the priests used in God's temple. They brought them back to Shinar, and Nebuchadnezzar put them in the treasury of the temple of his god.*

ULT And the Lord gave into his hand

UST {After two years,} the Lord allowed Nebuchadnezzar to capture
(וַיִּתֵּן אֲדֹנָי בְּיָדוֹ)

Here, **hand** represents "power" or "control." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And the Lord gave into his control]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Lord	the Lord
Jehoiakim	Jehoiakim
king of	the king of
Judah	Judah
the house of God	in God's temple
{to} the land of	to Shinar
Shinar	to Shinar
{to} the house of	the temple of
his god	his god
{into} the house of treasure of	in the treasury of
his god	his god

Daniel 1:3

ULT	UST
Then the king told Ashpenaz, the master of his eunuchs, to bring from the sons of Israel, both from the seed of the kingdom and from the nobles,	*Then Nebuchadnezzar commanded Ashpenaz, the chief official in his palace, to bring some Israelite men to Babylon. He wanted men who belonged to important families, including the family of the king of Judah.*

ULT **Ashpenaz**
UST Ashpenaz
(לְאַשְׁפְּנַז)

The word **Ashpenaz** is the name of a man.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **from the sons of Israel**
UST some Israelite men
(מִבְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל)

The author is speaking as if all the people descended from the man Israel were his **sons**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the people of Israel]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **both from the seed of the kingdom**
UST including the family of the king of Judah
(וּמִזֶּרַע הַמְּלוּכָה)

The author is speaking as if the members of the royal family were **seed** that the kingdom had produced. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [both from the royal family]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **both from the seed of the kingdom**
UST including the family of the king of Judah
(וּמִזֶּרַע הַמְּלוּכָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [both from the sons of the royal family]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	Nebuchadnezzar
the master of	the chief
his eunuchs	official in his palace
Israel	some Israelite men
both from the seed of	including the family of
the kingdom	the king of Judah
the nobles	important families

Daniel 1:4

ULT	UST
youths in whom was not any blemish and {who were} good of appearance and being skillful in all wisdom and knowers of knowledge and understanders of knowledge and in whom was strength to stand in the palace of the king, and to teach them the writing and tongue of the Chaldeans.	*He wanted young men who were healthy, handsome, and very intelligent. They needed to be people who had learned and understood many things. They had to be capable of working in the palace. People were to teach them the language and literature of the Chaldeans.*

ULT **and knowers of knowledge and understanders of knowledge**
UST They needed to be people who had learned and understood many things
(וְיֹדְעֵי דַּעַת וּמְבִינֵי מַדָּע)

For poetic purposes, the author is using two different words that have basically the same meaning. The ULT translates each one as **knowledge** because English does not have two different words that it can use in this context. But if your language does, it would be appropriate to use them here. Alternate translation: [knowers of knowledge and understanders of information]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and knowers of knowledge**
UST They needed to be people who had learned … many things
(וְיֹדְעֵי דַּעַת)

The author is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this.

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and tongue of the Chaldeans**
UST the language and … the Chaldeans
(וּלְשׁוֹן כַּשְׂדִּים)

Here, **tongue** represents "language." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and language of the Chaldeans]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in all wisdom and knowers of knowledge and understanders of knowledge**
UST and very intelligent. They needed to be people who had learned and understood many things
(בְּכָל־חָכְמָה וְיֹדְעֵי דַּעַת וּמְבִינֵי מַדָּע)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **wisdom** and **knowledge**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [in everything wise and who knew many things and who understood many things]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
blemish	healthy
and {who were} good of	handsome
wisdom	and … intelligent
and knowers of	They needed to be people who had learned
knowledge	many things
in the palace of	in the palace
the king	in the palace
and tongue of	the language and
the Chaldeans	the Chaldeans

Daniel 1:5

ULT	UST
And the king assigned to them the matter of a day in its day from the portion of the king and from the wine of his drinking, and three years for their upbringing, and from the end of them they would stand to the face of the king.	*The king told his servants to give them each day the same food and wine that he ate and drank. He told them to train them for three years. After that, they could work for him.*

ULT **the matter of a day in its day**
UST each day
(דְּבַר־יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ)

The author is using **the matter of a day in its day** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a set amount for each day." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a set amount for each day]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from the portion of the king and from the wine of his drinking**
UST the same food and wine that he ate and drank
(מִפַּת־בַּג הַמֶּלֶךְ וּמִיֵּין מִשְׁתָּיו)

Daniel is using this possessive form to mean the food and wine that the king himself eats and drinks. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [from the same food that the king eats and the same wine that he drinks]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and from the end of them they would stand**
UST After that, they could work
(וּמִקְצָתָם יַעַמְדוּ)

The pronoun **them** refers to the three years of the young men's training, while the pronoun **they** refers to the young men. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and at the end of those three years the young men would serve]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to the face of the king**
UST for him
(לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ)

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of or in the presence of the king. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before the king]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	The king
And … assigned	told his servants to give
and from the wine of	and wine
years	for … years

Daniel 1:6

ULT	UST
And among them from the sons of Judah were Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah.	*Among the Judeans whom Ashpenaz brought to Babylon were Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah.*

ULT Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah
UST Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah
(דָּנִיֵּאל חֲנַנְיָה מִישָׁאֵל וַעֲזַרְיָה)

The author is introducing **Daniel**, **Hananiah**, **Mishael**, and **Azariah** as new participants in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [four young men whose names were Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Judah	the Judeans whom Ashpenaz brought to Babylon
Daniel	Daniel
Hananiah	Hananiah
Mishael	Mishael
and Azariah	and Azariah

Daniel 1:7

ULT	UST
And the chief of the eunuchs gave names to them. And to Daniel, he gave Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, Shadrach; and to Mishael, Meshach; and to Azariah, Abednego.	*The chief official gave them Babylonian names. He called Daniel Belteshazzar. He called Hananiah Shadrach. He called Mishael Meshach. And he called Azariah Abednego.*

ULT **Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, Shadrach; and to Mishael, Meshach; and to Azariah, Abednego**

UST Belteshazzar. He called Hananiah Shadrach. He called Mishael Meshach. And he called Azariah Abednego

(בֶּלְטְשַׁאצַּר וְלַחֲנַנְיָה שַׁדְרַךְ וּלְמִישָׁאֵל מֵישַׁךְ וְלַעֲזַרְיָה עֲבֵד נְגוֹ)

The words **Belteshazzar**, **Shadrach**, **Meshach**, and **Abednego** are the Babylonian names of these young men.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and to Hananiah, Shadrach; and to Mishael, Meshach; and to Azariah, Abednego**

UST He called Hananiah Shadrach. He called Mishael Meshach. And he called Azariah Abednego

(וְלַחֲנַנְיָה שַׁדְרַךְ וּלְמִישָׁאֵל מֵישַׁךְ וְלַעֲזַרְיָה עֲבֵד נְגוֹ)

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and to Hananiah, he gave the name Shadrach; and to Mishael, he gave the name Meshach; and to Azariah, he gave the name Abednego]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	The chief official
the eunuchs	The chief official
to Daniel	Daniel
and to Hananiah	He called Hananiah
and to Mishael	He called Mishael
and to Azariah	And he called Azariah

Daniel 1:8

ULT	UST
But Daniel set upon his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king or with the wine of his drinking. So he sought from the chief of the eunuchs that he would not defile himself.	*But Daniel resolved not to make himself ritually unclean by eating the same food that the king ate or drinking the same wine that he drank. So he asked the chief official for permission to eat and drink something else.*

ULT **But Daniel set upon his heart**
UST But Daniel resolved
(וַיָּשֶׂם דָּנִיֵּאל עַל־לִבּוֹ)

The author is using **set upon his heart** as a common expression of the culture to mean "resolved" or "firmly decided." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But Daniel firmly decided]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
he would … defile himself	to make himself ritually unclean
the king	that the king ate
or with the wine of	or drinking the same wine
So he sought	So he asked
from the chief of	the chief official
the eunuchs	the chief official

Daniel 1:9

ULT	UST
And God gave Daniel to favor and to compassions to the face of the chief of the eunuchs.	*God caused the chief official to respect Daniel and to want to help him.*

ULT And God gave Daniel to favor and to compassions
UST God caused … to respect Daniel and to want to help him
(וַיִּתֵּן הָאֱלֹהִים אֶת־דָּנִיֵּאל לְחֶסֶד וּלְרַחֲמִים)

The author is using **gave Daniel to favor and to compassions** as a common expression of the culture to mean "caused the chief of the eunuchs to regard Daniel with favor and kindness." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And God caused Daniel to be regarded with favor and compassion]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT to favor and to compassions
UST to respect … and to want to help him
(לְחֶסֶד וּלְרַחֲמִים)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **favor** and **compassions**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [to be regarded favorably and compassionately]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT to the face of
UST caused
(לִפְנֵי)

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the chief of the eunuchs. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of] or [in front of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
Daniel	Daniel
to favor	to respect
and to compassions	and to want to help him
the chief of	the chief official

ULT	UST
the eunuchs	the chief official

Daniel 1:10

ULT	UST
And the chief of the eunuchs said to Daniel, "I, I fear my lord the king, who has assigned your food and your drink. For why should he see your faces looking worse than the youths who {are} like your age? Then you would endanger my head with the king."	*However, the chief official told Daniel, "My master, the king, ordered us to give you his own food and drink. So I am afraid of what he might do to me if I let you eat something else. Suppose he saw that you were not as healthy as the other young men who are your age. Then he might execute me!"*

ULT **I, I fear**
UST So I am afraid of what he might do to me if I let you eat something else
(יָרֵא אֲנִי)

The chief of the eunuchs is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **fear** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he himself is afraid of what the king might do to him. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [I myself fear my lord the king] or [for my part, I fear]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **For why should he see your faces looking worse than the youths who {are} like your age**
UST Suppose he saw that you were not as healthy as the other young men who are your age
(אֲשֶׁר לָמָּה יִרְאֶה אֶת־פְּנֵיכֶם זְעֻפִּים מִן־הַיְלָדִים אֲשֶׁר כְּגִילְכֶם)

The chief of the eunuchs is using the question form to express his fear of what the king might do to him if the young men looked unhealthy. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [For I am afraid that he will see your faces looking worse than your peers!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Then you would endanger my head with the king**
UST Then he might execute me
(וְחִיַּבְתֶּם אֶת־רֹאשִׁי לַמֶּלֶךְ)

The chief of the eunuchs is using **endanger my head with the king** as a common expression of the culture to mean "cause the king to have me executed." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Then you would cause the king to have me beheaded]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **For why should he see your faces looking worse than the youths who {are} like your age? Then you would endanger my head with the king**
UST Suppose he saw that you were not as healthy as the other young men who are your age. Then he might execute me
(אֲשֶׁר לָמָּה יִרְאֶה אֶת־פְּנֵיכֶם זְעֻפִּים מִן־הַיְלָדִים אֲשֶׁר כְּגִילְכֶם וְחִיַּבְתֶּם אֶת־רֹאשִׁי לַמֶּלֶךְ)

The word **you** is plural here because the chief of the eunuchs is addressing Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah together, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the chief of	However, the chief official
the eunuchs	However, the chief official
to Daniel	Daniel
I fear	am afraid of what he might do to me if I let you eat something else
my lord	My master
the king	the king
has assigned	ordered us to give you
{are} like your age	are your age
with the king	he

Daniel 1:11

ULT	UST
Then Daniel said to the steward whom the chief of the eunuchs had assigned over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah,	*So Daniel spoke instead to the man whom the chief official had appointed to care for him and for Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah.*

ULT **the steward**
UST the man
(הַמֶּלְצַר)

A **steward** is a kind of official who was put in charge of overseeing and caring for others. If your readers would not be familiar with what a steward is, you could use the name of a similar person that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [the caretaker] or [the overseer]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the steward	the man
the chief of	the chief official
the eunuchs	the chief official
had assigned	had appointed
Daniel	him
Hananiah	and for Hananiah
Mishael	Mishael
and Azariah	and Azariah

Daniel 1:12

ULT	UST
“Please test your servants {for} ten days, and let them give to us from vegetables, and let us eat, and water, and let us drink.	*He asked him, “Please let us try something for ten days. Give us only beans, grains, and vegetables to eat and only water to drink.*

ULT your servants
UST us
(אֶת־עֲבָדֶיךָ)

Daniel is referring to himself and his companions in the third person as **your servants** to show respect and humility before the steward. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this in the first person. Alternate translation: [us]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT and let them give to us
UST Give us
(וְיִתְּנוּ־לָנוּ)

Daniel is using the pronoun **them** in a general sense, not to refer to specific people. Use an expression for this that would be natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and let us be given some vegetables to eat]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT and let them give to us from vegetables, and let us eat, and water, and let us drink
UST Give us only beans, grains, and vegetables to eat and only water to drink
(וְיִתְּנוּ־לָנוּ מִן־הַזֵּרְעִים וְנֹאכְלָה וּמַיִם וְנִשְׁתֶּה)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. He means that he wants the steward to give them vegetables to eat and water to drink. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and let them give to us vegetables to eat and water to drink]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Please	He asked him, “Please
test	let … try something
your servants	us

Daniel 1:13

ULT	UST
Then let our appearances be seen to your face, and the appearance of the youths eating the portion of the king, and according to what you see, do with your servants."	*Then examine us and see how we look. Compare us to the other young men who are eating the same food as the king. Based on what you see, decide what food you will let us eat."*

ULT **Then let our appearances be seen to your face, and the appearance of the youths**
UST Then examine us and see how we look. Compare us to the other young men
(וְיֵרְאוּ לְפָנֶיךָ מַרְאֵינוּ וּמַרְאֵה הַיְלָדִים)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **appearances** and **appearance**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [Then call us before you to see how we look and how the youths look after they have been]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	as the king
your servants	decide what food you will let us eat

Daniel 1:14

ULT	UST
And he listened to them in this matter, and he tested them {for} ten days.	*The man agreed to do what Daniel suggested. He let them try eating and drinking something different for ten days.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and he tested them	He let them try eating and drinking something different

Daniel 1:15

ULT	UST
And at the end of ten days, their appearances, it was seen better and fatter of flesh than all of the youths eating the portion of the king.	*After those ten days, he saw that Daniel and his friends looked better and healthier than all the young men who had been eating the same food as the king.*

ULT their appearances, it was seen
UST he saw that Daniel and his friends looked
(נִרְאֶה מַרְאֵיהֶם)

The expression **it was seen** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [their faces looked]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT and fatter of flesh
UST and healthier
(וּבְרִיאֵי בָּשָׂר)

The author is using **fatter of flesh** as a common expression of the culture to mean "healthier" or "better nourished." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and better nourished]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	those … days
better	better
the king	as the king

Daniel 1:16

ULT	UST
So the steward was taking away their portion and the wine of their drinkings, and he was giving vegetables to them.	*So after that, the guard allowed them to keep eating only beans, grain, and vegetables. He did not make them eat the same food and drink the same wine as the king.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and the wine of	the same wine as the king

Daniel 1:17

ULT	UST
And these four youths, God gave to them knowledge and skill in all writing and wisdom, and Daniel understood all visions and dreams.	*God enabled those four young men to learn what the Babylonians were teaching them. He enabled them to understand their literature and to learn to think wisely. He enabled Daniel to understand what visions and dreams meant.*

ULT **And these four youths, God gave to them**
UST God enabled those four young men
(וְהַיְלָדִים הָאֵלֶּה אַרְבַּעְתָּם נָתַן לָהֶם הָאֱלֹהִים)

The author is stating the topic **these four youths** at the beginning of the sentence and then referring back to them with the pronoun **them**. If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about the four youths together with the information about what God gave to them. Alternate translation: [And God gave these four youths]

Support Reference: Information Structure

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
knowledge	to learn what the Babylonians were teaching them
and wisdom	and to learn to think wisely
and Daniel	He enabled Daniel
understood	to understand
visions	visions
and dreams	and dreams

Daniel 1:18

ULT	UST
And at the end of the days, when the king had said to bring them in, then the chief of the eunuchs brought them to the face of Nebuchadnezzar.	*The king had said to bring the young men to him at the end of those three years. So the chief official brought them into the presence of Nebuchadnezzar.*

ULT **to the face of Nebuchadnezzar**
UST into the presence of Nebuchadnezzar
(לִפְנֵי נְבֻכַדְנֶצַּר)

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of Nebuchadnezzar. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [into the presence of Nebuchadnezzar] or [in front of Nebuchadnezzar]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	The king
the chief of	the chief official
the eunuchs	the chief official
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar

Daniel 1:19

ULT	UST
And the king spoke with them, and none was found from all of them like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. So they stood to the face of the king.	*The king spoke with each young man. He realized that none of the others were as capable as Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. So he included those four young men among his advisors.*

ULT **and none was found**
UST He realized that none
(וְלֹא נִמְצָא)

The expression **was found** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he found none]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **from all of them**
UST of the others were as capable
(מִכֻּלָּם)

The pronoun **them** refers to all the young men whom the king had brought before him. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [from all of the other young men]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	The king
like Daniel	as Daniel
Hananiah	Hananiah
Mishael	Mishael
and Azariah	and Azariah

Daniel 1:20

ULT	UST
And every matter of wisdom {and} understanding that the king sought from them, then he found them ten hands above all of the magicians {and} enchanters who {were} in all of his kingdom.	*Whenever the king asked them to help him understand something, he found that what they told him was much better than what any of the magicians or sorcerers in his kingdom told him.*

ULT **matter of wisdom {and} understanding**
UST to help him understand something
(דְּבַר־חָכְמַת בִּינָה)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **wisdom** and **understanding**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [matter requiring them to be wise and to understand well]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **ten hands above all of**
UST was much better than what any of … told him
(עֲשֶׂר יָדוֹת עַל כָּל)

The author is using **ten hands above** as a common expression of the culture to mean “ten times better than.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [ten times better than all of]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the magicians {and} enchanters**
UST the magicians or sorcerers
(הַחַרְטֻמִּים וְאַשָּׁפִים)

The terms **magicians** and **enchanters** describe people who claimed to have secret knowledge and the ability to perform magic and interpret dreams and omens. If your readers would not be familiar with what these people did, you could use the names of similar people that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [the people who practiced magic and claimed secret knowledge]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
wisdom	to help him understand
{and} understanding	to help him understand
the king	the king

ULT	UST
sought	asked
the magicians	the magicians
his kingdom	his kingdom

Daniel 1:21

ULT	UST
And Daniel was {there} until the year of one to Cyrus the king.	*Daniel remained an advisor in the royal court right up to the time when Cyrus became king.*

ULT until the year of one to Cyrus the king
UST right up to the time when Cyrus became king
(עַד־שְׁנַת אַחַת לְכוֹרֶשׁ הַמָּלֶךְ)

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **one**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [until the first year that Cyrus was king]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the year of	the time when
to Cyrus	Cyrus
the king	became king

Daniel 2

Daniel 2 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Nebuchadnezzar has a troubling dream that he cannot remember (1)
2. His advisors fail to tell him the dream, so he orders their execution (2–13)
3. Daniel appeals for time, and God shows him the dream (14–19)
4. Daniel praises God (20–23)
5. Daniel tells Nebuchadnezzar his dream and its meaning (24–45)
6. Nebuchadnezzar rewards Daniel and his friends (46–49)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in Daniel's prayer of thanksgiving in 2:20–23.

Daniel 2:1

ULT	UST
And in the year of two to the reign of Nebuchadnezzar, Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams. And his spirit was troubled, and his sleep finished for him.	*One night during the second year of his reign, Nebuchadnezzar had a dream. The dream worried him very much. As a result, he could not get back to sleep.*

ULT **And in the year of two**
UST One night during the second year
(וּבִשְׁנַת שְׁתַּיִם)

The expression **year of two** uses a cardinal number where your language might use an ordinal number, since it refers to the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **two**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [In the second year]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams**
UST Nebuchadnezzar had a dream
(חָלַם נְבֻכַדְנֶצַּר חֲלֹמוֹת)

Daniel is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [Nebuchadnezzar dreamed]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams. And his spirit was troubled**
UST Nebuchadnezzar had a dream. The dream worried him very much
(חָלַם נְבֻכַדְנֶצַּר חֲלֹמוֹת וַתִּתְפָּעֶם רוּחוֹ)

The expression **his spirit was troubled** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And this troubled his spirit]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT and his sleep finished for him
UST As a result, he could not get back to sleep
(וּשְׁנָתֹו נִהְיְתָה עָלָיו)

Daniel is using **his sleep finished for him** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Nebuchadnezzar was unable to sleep. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he could not sleep]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And in the year of	second
to the reign of	of his reign
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
dreamed	had
dreams	a dream
his spirit	him
And … was troubled	The dream worried … very much

Daniel 2:2

ULT	UST
Then the king said to call the magicians and the enchanters and the sorcerers and the Chaldeans to declare to the king his dreams. And they came, and they stood to the face of the king.	*So he told his servants to summon his magicians, enchanters, sorcerers, and other advisors. He wanted them to tell him what he had dreamed and what it meant. They came and stood in his presence.*

ULT **the magicians and the enchanters and the sorcerers**
UST his magicians, enchanters, sorcerers
(לַחַרְטֻמִּים וְלָאַשָּׁפִים וְלַמְכַשְּׁפִים)

The terms **magicians**, **enchanters**, and **sorcerers** are different kinds of people who were thought to have special knowledge or powers, such as interpreting dreams, using magic, or communicating with spirits. If your readers would not be familiar with what these are, you could use the names of similar people that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [the users of magic and the spell-casters and the fortune-tellers]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to the face of the king**
UST in his presence
(לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ)

Here, **to the face of** represents being in the presence of the king. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [in the presence of the king]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	he
to call	to summon
the magicians	his magicians
and the sorcerers	sorcerers
and the Chaldeans	and other advisors
to declare	He wanted them to tell
to the king	him
his dreams	what he had dreamed and what it meant

Daniel 2:3

ULT	UST
And the king said to them, "I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit is troubled to know the dream."	*He told them, "I have had a dream, and it has worried me. I want to know what I dreamed."*

ULT I have dreamed a dream
UST I have had a dream
(חֲלוֹם חָלַמְתִּי)

Nebuchadnezzar is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [I dreamed]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT and my spirit is troubled
UST and it has worried me
(וַתִּפְעָם רוּחִי)

The expression **is troubled** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and it troubles my spirit]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	He
I have dreamed	I have had
a dream	a dream
my spirit	me
and … is troubled	and it has worried
to know	I want to know

Daniel 2:4

ULT	UST
Then the Chaldeans said to the king {in} Aramaic, "O King, live forever! Tell the dream to your servants, and we will show the interpretation."	*The advisors replied to the king, speaking in Aramaic, "King Nebuchadnezzar, we hope you live for a long time! Tell us what you dreamed, and we will tell you what it means."*

ULT **live forever**
UST we hope you live for a long time
(לְעָלְמִין חֱיִי)

The Chaldeans are using **live forever** as a common expression of the culture to mean "may you live for a long time." It was a respectful way to greet a king. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [may you live for a long time]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to your servants**
UST us
(לעבדיך)

The Chaldeans are speaking of themselves in the third person as **your servants** to show humility. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a humble form in the first person. Alternate translation: [to us, your humble servants]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and we will show the interpretation**
UST and we will tell you what it means
(וּפִשְׁרָא נְחַוֵּא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and we will interpret it for you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Chaldeans	The advisors
to the king	to the king
{in} Aramaic	speaking in Aramaic
O King	King Nebuchadnezzar
forever	for a long time

ULT	UST
Tell	Tell
the dream	what you dreamed
to your servants	us
and … the interpretation	and … what it means

Daniel 2:5

ULT	UST
The king answered and was saying to the Chaldeans, "The word from me {is} firm. If you do not make me know the dream and its interpretation, you will be made {into} limbs, and your houses will be made a rubbish heap.	*But the king replied to them, "I am giving a strict command. If you do not tell me what I dreamed and what it means, I will order my soldiers to cut you into pieces. I will also order them to destroy your houses completely.*

ULT **and was saying**
UST But … replied
(וְאָמַר)

The expression **and was saying** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of introducing direct quotations in your language. It may not be necessary to represent this expression explicitly, here and in its many other occurrences in this book.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **The word from me {is} firm**
UST I am giving a strict command
(מִלְּתָא מִנִּי אַזְדָּא)

The king is using **The word from me is firm** as a common expression of the culture to mean "my decision is final." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [My decision is final]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and its interpretation**
UST and what it means
(וּפִשְׁרַהּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and interpret it for me]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **you will be made {into} limbs**
UST I will order my soldiers to cut you into pieces
(הַדְּמִין תִּתְעֲבְדוּן)

The expression **you will be made** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I will have your limbs cut off]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and your houses will be made a rubbish heap**
UST I will also order them to destroy your houses completely
(וּבָתֵּיכוֹן נְוָלֵי יִתְעֲבִוּן)

The expression **your houses will be made a rubbish heap** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and I will turn your houses into a rubbish heap]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The king	the king
to the Chaldeans	to them
you do … make me know	you do … tell me
the dream	what I dreamed
and its interpretation	and what it means
and your houses	your houses

Daniel 2:6

ULT	UST
But if you show the dream and its interpretation, you will receive gifts, a reward, and great honor from before me. Therefore, show me the dream and its interpretation."	*But if you do tell me what I dreamed and what it means, I will reward you. I will give you splendid gifts, and I will greatly honor you. So tell me what I dreamed and what it means!"*

ULT **and its interpretation**
UST and what it means
(וּפִשְׁרֵהּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and interpret it for me]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and great honor**
UST and I will greatly honor you
(וְיָקָר שַׂגִּיא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of honor, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and I will honor you very much]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the dream	what I dreamed
and its interpretation	and what it means
you will receive	I will give you
a reward	I will reward you
and … honor	and I will … honor you
the dream	what I dreamed
and its interpretation	and what it means

Daniel 2:7

ULT	UST
They answered again and were saying, "Let the king tell the dream to his servants, and we will show the interpretation."	*But again they replied, "Please tell us what you dreamed, and then we will tell you what it means."*

ULT Let the king tell the dream to his servants
UST Please tell us what you dreamed
(מַלְכָּא חֶלְמָא יֵאמַר לְעַבְדָוֹהִי)

Even though the Chaldeans are addressing the king directly, they are speaking of him in the third person as **the king** and of themselves in the third person as **his servants** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form using the second person and the first person. Alternate translation: [O king, please tell us your servants the dream]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT and we will show the interpretation
UST and then we will tell you what it means
(וּפִשְׁרָה נְהַחֲוֶה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and we will interpret it for you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	Please
Let … tell	tell
the dream	what you dreamed
to his servants	us
and … the interpretation	what it means

Daniel 2:8

ULT	UST
The king answered and was saying, "I am knowing for certain that you are buying time all before that you see that the word from me is firm.	*The king responded, "I recognize clearly that you know that I will certainly do what I have said, so you are trying to get more time.*

ULT all before that
UST so
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דִּי)

See the discussion of this phrase in the introduction to the book of Daniel. In this context, the king is using it to indicate that what follows is the reason for what precedes. Alternate translation: [because]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT you are buying time
UST you are trying to get more time
(עִדָּנָא אַנְתּוּן זָבְנִין)

The king is using **you are buying time** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you are trying to gain more time." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you are trying extend the time allotted]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The king	The king
am knowing	recognize
time	time

Daniel 2:9

ULT	UST
But if you do not make me know the dream, your decree is one. For you have agreed together to speak a false and corrupted word before me until that the time is changed. Therefore, tell the dream to me, and I will know that you do show me its interpretation."	*But if you do not tell me what I dreamed, I will do to you exactly what I said. I believe that you have all agreed to tell me a false explanation of my dream so that I do not punish you. So I insist that you tell me what I dreamed. Then I will know that you can also tell me what it really means."*

ULT **your decree is one**
UST I will do to you exactly what I said
(חֲדָה־הִיא דָתְכֹוֹן)

The king is using **your decree is one** as a common expression of the culture to mean "there is only one verdict for you all." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [there is only one verdict for you all]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the time is changed**
UST so that I do not punish you
(עִדָּנָא יִשְׁתַּנֵּא)

The expression **the time is changed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [circumstances change]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **you do show me its interpretation**
UST you can also tell me what it really means
(פִּשְׁרֵהּ תְּהַחֲוֵנִי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [you interpret it correctly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
you do … make me know	you do … tell me
the dream	what I dreamed
your decree	I will do to you
and corrupted	false

ULT	UST
the time	so that I do not punish you
tell	you tell
its interpretation	what it really means

Daniel 2:10

ULT	UST
The Chaldeans answered before the king and were saying, "There is not a man upon the earth who is able to show the matter of the king, all before that any great and powerful king has not asked a matter like this from any magician or enchanter or Chaldean.	*The advisors replied to the king, "There is no one on the earth who can tell you what dream you had! That is why no king, even a great and mighty one, has ever asked any of his magicians or enchanters or other advisors to tell him what he dreamed.*

ULT **a man**
UST one
(אֱנָשׁ)

The Chaldeans are not referring to a specific **man**. They mean people in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [anyone]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **all before that**
UST That is why
(כָּל־קָבֵל דִּי)

See the discussion of this phrase in the introduction to the book of Daniel. In this context, the wise men are using it to indicate that what follows shows why what precedes is true. Alternate translation: [you may be sure of this because] or [after all,]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The Chaldeans	The advisors
the earth	the earth
and powerful	and mighty one
king	king
magician	his magicians
or Chaldean	or other advisors

Daniel 2:11

ULT	UST
For the matter that the king asks {is} difficult, and there is not another who will show {it} before the king except the gods, who, their dwelling is not with flesh.”	*What you are asking us to do is impossible. The only beings who could tell you what you dreamed are the gods, but they do not live among us people!”*

ULT **flesh**
UST us people
(בְּשָׂרָא)

The Chaldeans are using **flesh** to represent human beings, who are mortal. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [human beings]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	you
the gods	are the gods

Daniel 2:12

ULT	UST
All before this, the king became angry and became very furious, and he said to destroy all of the wise men of Babylon.	*When the king heard that, he became extremely angry. He commanded his soldiers to execute all the wise men in Babylon.*

ULT All before this
UST When … heard that
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

See the discussion of this phrase in the introduction to the book of Daniel. In this context, the author is using it to indicate that follows is the result of what he has just described. Alternate translation: [Because of this] or [As a result]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT became angry and became … furious
UST he became … angry
(בְּנַס וּקְצָף)

The terms **became angry** and **became very furious** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [became extremely angry]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
to destroy	his soldiers to execute
the wise men of	the wise men
Babylon	in Babylon

Daniel 2:13

ULT	UST
And the decree went out that the wise men were to be killed. And they sought Daniel and his friends, to be killed.	*Because the king had commanded his soldiers to kill all the wise men, some soldiers went to find Daniel and his friends so that they could kill them.*

ULT **that the wise men were to be killed**
UST his soldiers to kill all the wise men
(וְחַכִּימַיָּא מִתְקַטְּלִין)

The expression **the wise men were to be killed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that people should kill the wise men]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And they sought Daniel and his friends, to be killed**
UST some soldiers went to find Daniel and his friends so that they could kill them
(וּבְעֹו דָּנֵיאֵל וְחַבְרֹוהִי לְהִתְקְטָלָה)

The expression **to be killed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And they sought Daniel and his friends in order to kill them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the decree	Because the king had commanded
that the wise men	all the wise men
were to be killed	his soldiers to kill
And they sought	some soldiers went to find
Daniel	Daniel
and his friends	and his friends
to be killed	so that they could kill them

Daniel 2:14

ULT	UST
Then Daniel replied with prudence and discretion to Arioch the captain of the guard of the king, who had gone out to kill the wise men of Babylon.	*Arioch, the commander of the king's bodyguard, was leading the soldiers who came to kill Daniel and his friends. And Daniel spoke to him wisely and tactfully.*

ULT **with prudence and discretion**
UST wisely and tactfully
(עֲטָא וּטְעֵם)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **prudence** and **discretion**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [prudently and discreetly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to Arioch**
UST Arioch … to him
(לְאַרְיֹוךְ)

The word **Arioch** is the name of a man.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
with prudence	wisely
the guard	bodyguard
the king	the king's
to kill	to kill
the wise men of	Daniel and his friends
Babylon	Daniel and his friends

Daniel 2:15

ULT	UST
He answered, saying to Arioch, the commander of the king, "Upon what {is} the decree from before the king being urgent?" Then Arioch made Daniel know the matter.	*He asked Arioch, the king's officer, "Why did the king give such a harsh command?" Then Arioch explained to Daniel what had happened.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the commander	the … officer
the king	king's
{is} the decree	a … command
the king	the king
Daniel	to Daniel
made … know	explained

Daniel 2:16

ULT	UST
Then Daniel went in and sought from the king that he give time to him, that he might show the interpretation to the king.	*Daniel went to the king and asked him to give me some time so that he tell him his dream and what it meant.*

ULT that he might show the interpretation to the king
UST so that he tell him his dream and what it meant
(וּפִשְׁרָא לְהַחֲוָיָה לְמַלְכָּא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [that he might explain to the king what the dream meant]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Then Daniel	Daniel
and sought	and asked
the king	him
time	some time
that … the interpretation	his dream and what it meant

Daniel 2:17

ULT	UST
Then Daniel went to his house, and he made Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his friends, know the matter,	*Then he went home and told his friends Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah what had happened.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	he
to his house	home
and … Hananiah	Hananiah
Mishael	Mishael
and Azariah	and Azariah
his friends	his friends
he made … know	and told

Daniel 2:18

ULT	UST
that they might seek mercies from before the God of the heavens concerning this mystery, that they might not destroy Daniel and his friends with the rest of the wise men of Babylon.	*He asked them to pray to God in heaven and ask him to be merciful to them and show them what the king had dreamed and what it meant. Then the king's soldiers would not kill them, even if they killed the other wise men in Babylon.*

ULT **that they might seek mercies**
UST He asked them to pray … and ask him to be merciful to them
(וְרַחֲמִין לְמִבְעָא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **mercies**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [that they might seek to be treated mercifully]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **this mystery**
UST and show them what the king had dreamed and what it meant
(רָזָה דְּנָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **mystery**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what was hidden] or [what they did not know]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
that … mercies	and ask him to be merciful to them
the God of	God
the heavens	in heaven
mystery	and show them what the king had dreamed and what it meant
Daniel	them
and his friends	them
the wise men of	wise men
Babylon	in Babylon

Daniel 2:19

ULT	UST
Then the mystery was revealed to Daniel in a vision of the night. Then Daniel blessed the God of the heavens.	*That night God revealed the dream and its meaning to Daniel in a vision. Then Daniel praised God.*

ULT the mystery was revealed to Daniel
UST God revealed the dream and its meaning to Daniel
(לְדָנִיֵּאל & רָזָא גְלֵי)

The expression **the mystery was revealed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God revealed the mystery to Daniel]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the mystery	the dream and its meaning
to Daniel	to Daniel
in a vision	in a vision
blessed	praised
the God of	God
the heavens	God

Daniel 2:20

ULT	UST
Daniel answered and was saying, "May his name, of God, be blessed from eternity and to eternity, for wisdom and power, for {they} are to him.	*He said, "People should praise God forever! He is the one who is truly wise and powerful.*

> ULT **May his name, of God, be blessed**
> UST People should praise God
> (לֶהֱוֵא שְׁמֵהּ דִּי־אֱלָהָא מְבָרַךְ)

David is saying what he wants to happen. See the discussion in the introduction to this book about this form of speech, and follow the decision you have made as a team about how speakers will express in such contexts what they want to happen. Alternate translation: [I desire for God's name to be blessed]

Support Reference: Irregular Use of Tenses

> ULT **May his name, of God, be blessed**
> UST People should praise God
> (לֶהֱוֵא שְׁמֵהּ דִּי־אֱלָהָא מְבָרַךְ)

The expression **be blessed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [May people bless the name of God]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **May his name, of God, be blessed**
> UST People should praise God
> (לֶהֱוֵא שְׁמֵהּ דִּי־אֱלָהָא מְבָרַךְ)

Daniel is using the term **name** to represent who God is or to refer to God's reputation. Alternate translation: [May God be blessed]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **his name, of God**
UST God
(שְׁמֵ֥ה דִֽי־אֱלָהָ֖א)

"His name, of God" is a doubling of reference. The phrase names God twice, once by pronoun, "name," and once explicitly as "God." It might seem that the expression **his name, of God** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [May God be blessed]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **his name, of God**
UST God
(שְׁמֵ֥ה דִֽי־אֱלָהָ֖א)

Here, **his name** represents God himself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [God himself]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **wisdom and power**
UST wise and powerful
(חָכְמְתָ֥א וּגְבוּרְתָ֖א)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **wisdom** and **power**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [being wise and being mighty]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **from eternity and to eternity**
UST forever
(מִן־עָלְמָ֥א וְעַד־עָלְמָֽא)

Daniel is referring to all of time by naming two extremes, **from eternity** and **to eternity**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [for all time]

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	He
God	God
blessed	People should praise
eternity	forever
wisdom	wise

ULT	UST
and power	and powerful

Daniel 2:21

ULT	UST
And he {is} the one changing times and seasons, the one removing kings and setting up kings, the one giving wisdom to the wise and knowledge to the knowers of understanding.	*He controls the different things that happen at various times. He stops some kings from reigning, and he makes other kings start reigning. He is the one who enables people to be wise and to understand difficult things.*

ULT **the one giving wisdom to the wise and knowledge to the knowers of understanding**
UST He is the one who enables people to be wise and to understand difficult things
(יָהֵב חָכְמְתָא לְחַכִּימִין וּמַנְדְּעָא לְיָדְעֵי בִינָה)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [the one giving wisdom and understanding to those who are wise]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **to the wise**
UST people
(לְחַכִּימִין)

Daniel is using the adjective **wise** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [to wise people] or [to those who are wise]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **and knowledge to the knowers of understanding**
UST and to understand difficult things
(וּמַנְדְּעָא לְיָדְעֵי בִינָה)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **knowledge** and **understanding**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [and enabling those who can discern to know things]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the one giving wisdom to the wise and knowledge to the knowers of understanding**
UST He is the one who enables people to be wise and to understand difficult things
(יָהֵב חָכְמְתָא לְחַכִּימִין וּמַנְדְּעָא לְיָדְעֵי בִינָה)

This is poetic language. If your language has a way to indicate poetry, you could use it here.

Support Reference: Poetry

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
times	at various times
kings	some kings
wisdom	to be wise
to the wise	people
and knowledge	difficult things
understanding	and to understand

Daniel 2:22

ULT	UST
He is revealing the deep and the hidden; he knows what {is} in the darkness, and the light is lodged with him.	*He reveals things that are very mysterious. Everything is light where he is, but he also knows what happens where it is dark.*

ULT **the deep and the hidden**
UST things that are very mysterious
(עַמִּיקָתָא וּמְסַתְּרָתָא)

Daniel is using the plural adjectives **the deep** and **the hidden** as nouns to mean certain kinds of things. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [deep things and hidden things]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the deep and the hidden**
UST things that are very mysterious
(עַמִּיקָתָא וּמְסַתְּרָתָא)

The terms **the deep** and **the hidden** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [things that are very difficult to know] or [things that are very obscure]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **he knows what {is} in the darkness, and the light is lodged with him**
UST Everything is light where he is, but he also knows what happens where it is dark
(יָדַע מָה בַחֲשׁוֹכָא ונהירא עִמֵּהּ שָׁרֵא)

Daniel is speaking of hidden things as if they were **darkness** and of what God knows as if it were **light**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he knows what is secret, and understanding resides with him]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he knows	but he also knows

Daniel 2:23

ULT	UST
God of my fathers, I am thanking and praising {you}, for you have given wisdom and power to me. And now, you have made me know what we sought from you, for you have made us know the matter of the king."	*You are the God whom my ancestors worshiped. I thank you and praise you because you have made me wise and strong. You have revealed to us what the king dreamed and what it meant. So you have done just what we prayed you would do."*

ULT **God of my fathers**
UST are the God whom my ancestors worshiped
(אֱלָהּ אֲבָהָתִי)

Daniel is speaking of his ancestors as if they were his **fathers**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God of my ancestors]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **what we sought from you**
UST what we prayed you would do
(דִּי־בְעֵינָא מִנָּךְ)

By **we**, Daniel means himself and his friends but not the one to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God of	are the God whom … worshiped
and praising	and praise you
wisdom	wise
you have made me know	you have done
we sought	we prayed
king	the king

Daniel 2:24

ULT	UST
All before this, Daniel went in to Arioch, whom the king had appointed to destroy the wise men of Babylon. He went, and thus he said to him, "May you not destroy the wise men of Babylon. Bring me in before the king, and I will show the interpretation to the king."	*Then Daniel went to Arioch, the man whom the king had appointed to execute the wise men of Babylon. He said to him, "Please do not kill us wise men. Take me to the king, and I will tell him what his dream means."*

ULT All before this
UST Then
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

See the discussion of this phrase in the introduction to the book of Daniel. In this context, the author is using it to indicate that follows is the result of what he has just described. Alternate translation: [Consequently]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the king	the king
had appointed	had appointed
to destroy	to execute
the wise men of	the wise men of
Babylon	Babylon
and … the interpretation	and … what his dream means

Daniel 2:25

ULT	UST
Then Arioch, in hastening himself, brought Daniel in before the king, and thus he said to him, that "I have found a man from the sons of the captivity of Judah who will make the king know the interpretation."	*So Arioch quickly took Daniel to the king. He told the king, "Here is one of the men whom our soldiers brought from Judah. He says that he can tell you what your dream means."*

ULT **he said to him, that**
UST He told the king
(אֲמַר־לֵהּ דִּי)

The word **that** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of indicating direct quotations in your language.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **the sons of the captivity of Judah who**
UST the men whom our soldiers brought from Judah. He says that he
(בְּנֵי גָלוּתָא דִּי יְהוּד דִּי)

Arioch is using **the sons of the captivity of Judah** as a common expression of the culture to mean the people who had been taken away from Judah into exile. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the exiles from Judah who]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the captivity of Judah who**
UST whom our soldiers brought from Judah. He says that he
(גָּלוּתָא דִּי יְהוּד דִּי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **captivity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [those captured from Judah who]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the interpretation**
UST what your dream means
(פִּשְׁרָא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what the dream means]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the king	the king
the captivity	whom our soldiers brought
Judah	Judah
the king	you
will make … know	can tell
the interpretation	what your dream means

Daniel 2:26

ULT	UST
The king answered and was saying to Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, "Are you being able to make me know the dream that I saw and its interpretation?"	*The king spoke to Daniel. (He called him Belteshazzar.) He asked, "Can you really tell me what I dreamed and what it means?"*

ULT **was Belteshazzar**
UST Belteshazzar
(בֵּלְטְשַׁאצַּר)

The word **Belteshazzar** is the Babylonian name given to Daniel.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The king	The king
to Daniel	to Daniel
to make me know	tell me
the dream	what I dreamed
and its interpretation	and what it means

Daniel 2:27

ULT	UST
Daniel answered before the king and said, "The mystery that the king has asked, wise men, enchanters, magicians, diviners, are not being able to show to the king.	*Daniel replied to him, "No wise man or enchanter or magician or fortuneteller could tell you what you want to know.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the king	him
The mystery	what
the king	you
wise men	wise man
magicians	or magician
diviners	or fortuneteller

Daniel 2:28

ULT	UST
However, there is a God in the heavens revealing mysteries, and he has made King Nebuchadnezzar know that which will be at the end of days. Your dream and the visions of your head upon your bed was this.	*But there is a God in heaven who reveals secrets, and he has shown you, King Nebuchadnezzar, what will happen in the future. This is what you saw in your dream as you were lying on your bed.*

> ULT **at the end of days**
> UST in the future
> (בְּאַחֲרִית יוֹמַיָּא)

Daniel is using **at the end of days** as a common expression of the culture to mean a future time. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in days to come]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **Your dream and the visions of your head**
> UST what you saw in your dream
> (חֶלְמָךְ וְחֶזְוֵי רֵאשָׁךְ)

If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a connecting word or phrase to show that **Your dream and the visions of your head** explains what Daniel means when he says that God has made the king know what will happen in the future. Alternate translation: [Your dream, that is, the visions of your head]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

> ULT **and the visions of your head**
> UST what you saw
> (וְחֶזְוֵי רֵאשָׁךְ)

Daniel is using **the visions of your head** as a common expression of the culture to mean the things that Nebuchadnezzar saw in his mind while he was dreaming. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the images you saw in your mind]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a God	a God
in the heavens	in heaven

ULT	UST
mysteries	secrets
King	you, King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
and he has made … know	and he has shown
days	in the future
Your dream	in your dream
and the visions of	what … saw

Daniel 2:29

ULT	UST
You, O king, your thoughts arose upon your bed {about} that which will be after this, and the revealer of mysteries has made you know that which will be.	*Your Majesty, while you were sleeping, you dreamed about what is going to happen in the future. God, who reveals secrets, has shown you what is going to happen.*

ULT **your thoughts**
UST you dreamed about
(רַעְיוֹנָךְ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **thoughts**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what you were thinking]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **mysteries**
UST secrets
(רָזַיָּא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **mysteries**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [hidden things]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O king	Your Majesty
mysteries	secrets
has made you know	has shown you

Daniel 2:30

ULT	UST
And I, this mystery has been revealed to me not because of wisdom that is in me more than all of the living, but for the purpose that they may make the king know the interpretation and you may know the thoughts of your heart.	*I do not know your dream and its meaning because I am wiser than anyone else on earth. It is because God wants you to understand what your dream means. It explains what you were wondering about.*

ULT **this mystery has been revealed to me**
UST I do … know your dream and its meaning
(רָזָא דְנָה גְּלִי לִי)

The expression **this mystery has been revealed to me** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God has revealed this mystery to me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **more than all of the living**
UST than anyone else on earth
(מִן־כָּל־חַיָּא)

Daniel is using the adjective **living** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [more than anyone else who is alive] or [more than any other human being]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **they may make the king know**
UST God wants you to understand
(לְמַלְכָּא יְהוֹדְעוּן)

The pronoun **they** does not refer to any specific people here. Daniel uses it in an indefinite way to mean that the interpretation would be made known to the king. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the king may come to know]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the thoughts of your heart**
UST what you were wondering about
(וַרַעְיוֹנֵי לִבָּךְ)

Daniel is speaking of the mind as if it were the **heart**, because the people of this culture associated thinking with the heart. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the thoughts of your mind]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mystery	your dream and its meaning
because of wisdom	because … am wiser
the king	you
they may make … know	God wants … to understand
the interpretation	what your dream means

Daniel 2:31

ULT	UST
You, O King, were looking, and behold, a huge statue. This statue {was} great, and its splendor {was} exceeding. It stood before you, and its appearance was terrifying.	*Your Majesty, in your dream you saw a giant statue standing in front of you. It was very impressive, and it was shining very brightly. It was frightening to look at it.*

ULT **and its appearance was terrifying**
UST It was frightening to look at it
(וְרֵוַהּ דְּחִיל)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **appearance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and it looked terrifying]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and behold**
UST you saw
(וַאֲלוּ)

Daniel is using the term **behold** to focus King Nebuchadnezzar's attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [and look]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **This statue {was} great, and its splendor {was} exceeding**
UST It was very impressive, and it was shining very brightly
(צַלְמָא דְּכֵן רַב וְזִיוֵהּ יַתִּיר)

The expression **was great and its splendor was exceeding** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [This statue was very large, and it gleamed with extraordinary splendor]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and its appearance was terrifying**
UST It was frightening to look at it
(וְרֵוַהּ דְּחִיל)

The expression **its appearance was terrifying** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and it terrified those who saw it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O King	Your Majesty
statue	statue
and its splendor	and it was shining … brightly
was terrifying	It was frightening

Daniel 2:32

ULT	UST
This statue, its head {was} of fine gold; its chest and arms, of silver; its belly and its thighs, of bronze;	*The head of the statue was pure gold. Its chest and arms were silver. Its belly and thighs were bronze.*

ULT its chest and arms, of silver; its belly and its thighs, of bronze
UST Its chest and arms were silver. Its belly and thighs were bronze
(חֲדוֹהִי וּדְרָעוֹהִי דִּי כְסַף מְעוֹהִי וְיַרְכָתֵהּ דִּי נְחָשׁ)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [its chest and arms were of silver; its belly and its thighs were of bronze]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
statue	the statue
gold	gold
silver	silver
bronze	bronze

Daniel 2:33

ULT	UST
its legs, of iron; its feet, some of them of iron and some of them of clay.	*Its legs were iron, and its feet were partly iron and partly clay.*

ULT its legs, of iron; its feet, some of them of iron and some of them of clay

UST Its legs were iron, and its feet were partly iron and partly clay

(שָׁקָוֹהִי דִּי פַרְזֶל רַגְלֹּוהִי מנהון דִּי פַרְזֶל ומנהון דִּי חֲסַף)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. He means that its legs {were} of iron. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [its legs were of iron; some of its feet were of iron and some of them were of clay]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
iron	iron

Daniel 2:34

ULT	UST
You were looking until that a stone was cut out, but not by hands, and it struck the statue on its feet of iron and clay, and it crushed them.	*As you watched, someone cut a rock from a mountain, but it was not a human who did that. The rock {tumbled down and} smashed the iron and clay feet of the statue. It broke them into tiny pieces.*

ULT **a stone was cut out**
UST someone cut a rock from a mountain
(הִתְגְּזָרַת אֶבֶן)

The expression **a stone was cut out** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone cut out a stone]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but not by hands**
UST but it was not a human who did that
(דִּי־לָא בִידַיִן)

Here, **hands** represents the effort or action of human beings. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [but not by human effort]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a stone	a rock
the statue	of the statue
iron	iron

Daniel 2:35

ULT	UST
Then at once the iron, the clay, the bronze, the silver, and the gold crumbled, and they became like the chaff of the threshing floors of summer. And the wind carried them away, and any place was not found for them. But the stone that struck the statue became a great mountain, and it filled all of the earth.	*Immediately the iron, clay, bronze, silver, and gold parts of the statue also broke into tiny pieces. Those pieces were as small as the chaff that people separate from grain after they harvest it. The wind blew away all those tiny pieces. Nothing remained. But the rock that had smashed the statue became a large mountain that covered the whole earth.*

ULT **like the chaff of the threshing floors of summer**
UST as small as the chaff that people separate from grain after they harvest it
(כְּעוּר מִן־אִדְּרֵי־קַיִט)

The point of this comparison is that just as **chaff** is light and easily blown away by the wind, so the crushed pieces of the statue were completely scattered and disappeared. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [as light and scattered as the chaff of the threshing floors of summer]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and any place was not found for them**
UST Nothing remained
(וְכָל־אֲתַר לָא־הִשְׁתַּכַּח לְהֹון)

The expression **any place was not found for them** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and no one could find any trace of them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **became a great mountain, and it filled all of the earth**
UST became a large mountain that covered the whole earth
(הֲוָת לְטַוּר רַב וּמְלָת כָּל־אַרְעָא)

Daniel is speaking of the kingdom that God will establish as if it were **a great mountain** that **filled all of the earth**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [grew into a kingdom that spread throughout the whole earth]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the iron	the iron
the bronze	bronze

ULT	UST
the silver	silver
and the gold	and gold parts of the statue
like the chaff	as small as the chaff
the threshing floors of	that people separate from grain
the wind	The wind
And … carried … away	blew away
But the stone	But the rock
the statue	the statue
the earth	the … earth

Daniel 2:36

ULT	UST
This {was} the dream. And we will tell its interpretation before the king.	*That was what you dreamed. Now I will tell you what it means.*

> ULT **And we will tell its interpretation before the king**
> UST Now I will tell you what it means
> (וּפִשְׁרֵהּ נֵאמַר קֳדָם־מַלְכָּא)

By **we**, Daniel means himself but not the king to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

> ULT **And we will tell its interpretation before the king**
> UST Now I will tell you what it means
> (וּפִשְׁרֵהּ נֵאמַר קֳדָם־מַלְכָּא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And we will tell the king what it means]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{was} the dream	you dreamed
we will tell	I will tell
And … its interpretation	Now … what it means
the king	you

Daniel 2:37

ULT	UST
You, O king, {are} the king of kings to whom the God of the heavens has given the kingdom, the power, the strength, and the glory.	*You are a king who rules over many other kings. God, who rules in heaven, has enabled you to rule over them. He has given you great power and much honor.*

ULT {are} the king of kings
UST are a king who rules over many other kings
(מָלֶךְ מַלְכַיָּא)

Daniel is using **the king of kings** as a common expression of the culture to mean a supreme king who rules over other kings. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [are the greatest king, ruling over all other kings]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT the power, the strength, and the glory
UST great power and much honor
(חִסְנָא וְתַקְפָּא וִיקָרָא)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **the power**, **the strength**, and **the glory**, you could express the same ideas in other ways. Alternate translation: [the ability to rule powerfully, to rule strongly, and to be honored greatly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O king	You
{are} the king of	are a king who rules over
kings	many other kings
the God of	God
the heavens	who rules in heaven
the kingdom	has enabled … to rule over them
and the glory	and much honor

Daniel 2:38

ULT	UST
And in everywhere that are dwelling the sons of man, the beast of the field, and the bird of the heavens, he has given into your hand, and he has made you rule over all of them. You are the head of gold.	*He has made you the ruler of a great territory. It seems as if you have power over every place where people and animals and birds live. The golden head of the statue represents you.*

ULT **the sons of man**
UST people
(בְּנֵי־אָנָשָׁא)

Daniel is using **the sons of man** as a common expression of the culture to mean human beings in general. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [human beings]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the beast of the field, and the bird of the heavens**
UST and animals and birds
(חֵיַ֤ת בָּרָא֙ וְעוֹף־שְׁמַיָ֔א)

Daniel is not referring to a specific **beast** or **bird**. He means beasts and birds in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the wild animals, and the birds of the sky]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **into your hand**
UST It seems as if you have power over
(בִּידָ֔ךְ)

Here, **your hand** represents your power and control. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [into your power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **You are the head of gold**
UST The golden head of the statue represents you
(אַנְתָּה־הוּא רֵאשָׁה דִּי דַהֲבָא)

Daniel is speaking of Nebuchadnezzar as if he were the head of gold on the statue. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You are like the head of gold]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the beast of	and animals
the heavens	and birds
and he has made you rule	He has made you the ruler of
gold	golden

Daniel 2:39

ULT	UST
And after you another kingdom will arise, earthward from you, and a third kingdom, another, of bronze, that will rule over all of the earth.	*But your kingdom will end, and afterward there will be another great kingdom{, which the silver part of the statue represents}. However, it will not be as great as yours. After that, there will be a third great kingdom, which the bronze part of the statue represents. Its king will rule over a very great territory.*

ULT earthward from you
UST However, it will not be as great as yours
(ארעא מְנָךְ)

Here, **earthward from you** represents being inferior. since the earth is generally below people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [inferior to you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kingdom	another great kingdom{, which the silver part of the statue represents}
bronze	which the bronze part of the statue represents
will rule	will rule
the earth	a … territory

Daniel 2:40

ULT	UST
And a fourth kingdom will be, strong as iron, all before that iron is crushing and shattering everything. And like iron that is breaking, it will crush and break all of these.	*After that, there will be a fourth great kingdom. The iron part of the statue represents that kingdom. It will be very strong, just as iron {is so strong that it} crushes and breaks whatever it strikes. The army of this kingdom will conquer the territory of the previous kingdoms as if it were an iron weapon smashing them.*

ULT strong as iron
UST The iron part of the statue represents that kingdom. It will be very strong
(תַּקִּיפָה כְּפַרְזְלָא)

The point of this comparison is that just as **iron** is strong and crushes other things, so **a fourth kingdom** will be strong and will crush the kingdoms before it. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [strong just as iron is strong]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT all before that … all of
UST just as … the territory of the previous kingdoms
(כָּל־קָבֵל דִּי & כָּל)

See the discussion of this phrase in the introduction to the book of Daniel. In this context, Daniel is using it to indicate that the first part of this sentence is equivalent to the second part. Alternate translation: [just as]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And a … kingdom	a … great kingdom
strong	It will be very strong
as iron	The iron part of the statue represents that kingdom

Daniel 2:41

ULT	UST
And that you saw the feet and the toes, some of them clay of a potter and some of them iron, it will be a divided kingdom. For some of the firmness of iron will be in it, all before that you saw iron mixed with the clay of mire.	*You saw that the feet and toes of the statue were partly clay and partly iron. That meant that this kingdom will divide into two parts. You saw that there was iron as well as clay, and that meant that this kingdom will still be somewhat strong like iron.*

ULT **the firmness of iron**
UST strong like iron
(נִצְבְּתָא דִּי פַרְזְלָא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **firmness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how firm iron is]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **For some of the firmness of iron will be in it**
UST this kingdom will still be somewhat strong like iron
(וּמִן־נִצְבְּתָא דִּי פַרְזְלָא לֶהֱוֵא־בַּהּ)

The expression **For some of the firmness of iron will be in it** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [This kingdom will have some of the strength of iron in it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **all before that**
UST and that meant that
(כָּל־קָבֵל דִּי)

See how you translated this expression in the similar context in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [just as]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
iron	iron
a … kingdom	this kingdom
iron	iron

Daniel 2:42

ULT	UST
And {as} the toes of the feet, some of them {were} iron and some of them {were} clay, some of the kingdom will be strong and some of it will be brittle.	*However, you saw that there was clay as well as iron in the toes of the statue. That meant that some of this kingdom will be weak{, like clay that breaks easily}, even though some of it will be strong {like iron}.*

ULT **And {as} the toes of the feet, some of them {were} iron and some of them {were} clay, some of the kingdom will be strong and some of it will be brittle**
UST However, you saw that there was clay as well as iron in the toes of the statue. That meant that some of this kingdom will be weak{, like clay that breaks easily}, even though some of it will be strong {like iron}
(וְאֶצְבְּעָת֙ רַגְלַיָּ֔א מנהון פַּרְזֶ֖ל ומנהון חֲסֵ֑ף מִן־קְצָ֤ת מַלְכוּתָא֙ תֶּהֱוֵ֣ה תַקִּיפָ֔ה וּמִנַּ֖הּ תֶּהֱוֵ֥ה תְבִירָֽה)

The point of this comparison is that just as **the toes of the feet** were **some iron and some clay**, so is the kingdom composed of both strong and brittle elements. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [Just as the toes of the feet were partly iron and partly clay, so will some of the kingdom be strong and some of it will be brittle]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **some of them {were} iron and some of them {were} clay**
UST However, you saw that there was clay as well as iron
(מנהון פַּרְזֶ֖ל ומנהון חֲסֵ֑ף)

In each part of the verse, you could put the **clay** before the **iron** in order to put the new information before the old information. The UST models one way to do that.

Support Reference: Information Structure

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{were} iron	iron
the kingdom	this kingdom
strong	strong {like iron}

Daniel 2:43

ULT	UST
That you saw the iron mixed with the clay of mire, they will be mixing themselves by the seed of man, but they will not be cleaving this with this, even as iron does not mix itself with clay.	*You saw iron and clay together {in the statue's feet and toes}. That meant that the rulers of the parts of this kingdom will try to join themselves together through marriage alliances. However, they will not succeed in uniting their realms. After all, iron does not mix with clay.*

ULT **they will be mixing themselves**
UST the rulers of the parts of this kingdom will try to join themselves together
(מִתְעָרְבִין לָהֲוֹן)

The pronoun **they** refers to the people of the divided kingdom, that is, its rulers. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the rulers of the divided kingdom will be mixing themselves]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **by the seed of man**
UST through marriage alliances
(בִּזְרַע אֲנָשָׁא)

Daniel is speaking of human descendants as if they were **seed** that a man plants. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [through their offspring]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **even as iron does not mix itself with clay**
UST After all, iron does not mix with clay
(הֵא־כְּדֵי פַרְזְלָא לָא מִתְעָרַב עִם־חַסְפָּא)

The point of this comparison is that just as **iron** does not mix itself with **clay**, so the rulers of this kingdom will not remain united with one another. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [just as iron does not stay mixed with clay, so those rulers will not remain united]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the iron	iron
by the seed of	through marriage alliances

Daniel 2:44

ULT	UST
And in the days of those kings, the God of the heavens will set up a kingdom that will not be destroyed to eternities, and the kingdom will not be left to another people. It will crush and finish all of these kingdoms, but it, it will stand to eternities.	*While those kings are ruling, God, who rules {everything} from heaven, will establish a kingdom that will never end. No one will ever defeat its king and take over his kingdom. He will completely destroy all those kingdoms, but his kingdom will last forever.*

ULT **a kingdom that will not be destroyed to eternities**
UST a kingdom that will never end
(מַלְכוּ דִּי לְעָלְמִין לָא תִתְחַבַּל)

The expression **a kingdom that will not be destroyed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [a kingdom that no one will ever destroy]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the kingdom will not be left to another people**
UST No one will ever defeat its king and take over his kingdom
(וּמַלְכוּתָהּ לְעַם אָחֳרָן לָא תִשְׁתְּבֵק)

The expression **the kingdom will not be left to another people** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and no other people will take over the kingdom]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but it, it will stand to eternities**
UST but his kingdom will last forever
(וְהִיא תְּקוּם לְעָלְמַיָּא)

Daniel is stating the pronoun **it** separately, even though the verb translated as **it will stand** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that this kingdom, unlike the kingdoms that came before it, will endure forever. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [but God's kingdom will stand forever]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And in the days	While … kings … ruling
kings	are
the God of	God
the heavens	who rules {everything} from heaven
will set up	will establish
a kingdom	a kingdom
will … be destroyed	will … end
to eternities	never
will … be left	will ever defeat its king and take over

Daniel 2:45

ULT	UST
All before that you saw that a stone was cut from a mountain, but not by hands, and it crushed the iron, the bronze, the clay, the silver, and the gold, the great God has made the king know that which will be after this. And the dream {is} certain and its interpretation {is} confirmed."	*You saw a rock that someone, but not a human, cut from a mountain. That rock crushed the iron, bronze, clay, silver, and gold parts of the statue. It represents this last king. Your Majesty, the great God has shown you what will happen in the future. Since I have told you what you actually dreamed, you can trust that I have also told you what it truly means."*

ULT **a stone was cut from a mountain, but not by hands**
UST a rock that someone, but not a human, cut from a mountain
(מְטוּרָא אִתְגְּזֶרֶת אֶבֶן דִּי־לָא בִידַיִן)

Daniel is speaking of the kingdom that God will establish as if it were a stone that was cut from a mountain, but not by hands. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God set up a kingdom, pictured as a stone cut from a mountain but not by human hands]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a stone was cut from a mountain**
UST a rock that someone … cut from a mountain
(מְטוּרָא אִתְגְּזֶרֶת אֶבֶן)

The expression **a stone was cut from a mountain** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone cut a stone from a mountain]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and its interpretation {is} confirmed**
UST you can trust that I have also told you what it truly means
(וּמְהֵימַן פִּשְׁרֵהּ)

The expression **confirmed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and God has confirmed what it means]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a stone	a rock

ULT	UST
the iron	the iron
the bronze	bronze
the silver	silver
and the gold	and gold parts of the statue
the … God	the … God
the king	Your Majesty … you
has made … know	has shown
the dream	Since I have told you what you … dreamed
its interpretation	I have also told you what it truly means
and … {is} confirmed	you can trust that

Daniel 2:46

ULT	UST
Then King Nebuchadnezzar fell on his face and worshiped Daniel, and he said to present an offering and incense to him.	*Then King Nebuchadnezzar bowed down in front of Daniel to honor him. He commanded his officials to give Daniel a grain offering and to burn incense to honor him.*

ULT fell on his face
UST bowed down in front of
(נָפַל עַל־אַנְפּוֹהִי)

Falling on his face was a symbolic action by which Nebuchadnezzar showed great honor and reverence toward Daniel. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [bowed down to the ground to show honor]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
worshiped	to honor him
and … Daniel	Daniel
and … an offering	a grain offering
and incense	and to burn incense to honor him

Daniel 2:47

ULT	UST
The king answered and was saying to Daniel, "In truth that your God is the God of gods and the Lord of kings and the revealer of mysteries, for you have been able to reveal this mystery."	*The king told Daniel, "Your God has enabled you to tell me the meaning of my dream. So he truly is greater than any of the gods that other nations worship. He is more powerful than any earthly king. He reveals secrets {that no one else could know}."*

ULT **the God of gods and the Lord of kings**
UST is greater than any of the gods that other nations worship. He is more powerful than any earthly king
(אֱלָהּ אֱלָהִין וּמָרֵא מַלְכִין)

The king is using **the God of gods and the Lord of kings** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Daniel's God is supreme over all other gods and over all kings. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [supreme over all other gods and over all kings]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The king	The king
to Daniel	Daniel
your God	Your God
gods	is greater than any of the gods that other nations worship
and the Lord of	He is more powerful than
kings	any earthly king
mysteries	secrets {that no one else could know}

Daniel 2:48

ULT	UST
Then the king made Daniel great, and he gave many great gifts to him, and he made him rule over all of the province of Babylon and chief of the governors over all of the wise men of Babylon.	*Then the king made Daniel a powerful royal official. He gave him many lavish gifts. He appointed him to rule the entire province of Babylon. He also made him the leader of the officials who governed the wise men of Babylon.*

ULT **and chief of the governors**

UST He also made him the leader of the officials who governed

(וְרַב־סַגְּנִין)

The author is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and he made him chief of the governors]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
Daniel	Daniel
and he made him rule	He appointed him
the province of	the … province of
Babylon	Babylon
and chief of	He also made him the leader of
the governors	the officials who governed
the wise men of	the wise men of

Daniel 2:49

ULT	UST
And Daniel sought from the king, and he appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego over the work of the province of Babylon. But Daniel {was} at the gate of the king.	*At Daniel's request, the king appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to important positions in the province of Babylon. Daniel himself worked in the king's palace.*

ULT **But Daniel {was} at the gate of the king**
UST Daniel himself worked in the king's palace
(וְדָנִיֵּאל בְּתַרַע מַלְכָּא)

Here, **the gate of the king** represents the king's court, where officials carried out the business of the government. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [But Daniel remained at the royal court]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Daniel	Daniel's
sought	At … request
the king	the king
and he appointed	appointed
the province of	the province of
Babylon	Babylon
{was} at the gate of	worked in the … palace

Daniel 3

Daniel 3 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Nebuchadnezzar orders his officials to worship his golden statue (1–7)
2. Officials report Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego for not worshiping (8–12)
3. Nebuchadnezzar threatens them, but they refuse (13–18)
4. Nebuchadnezzar has them thrown into a very hot furnace (19–23)
5. God sends an angel to rescue them (24–27)
6. Nebuchadnezzar honors God and promotes them (28–30)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Why did Nebuchadnezzar make a statue covered completely with gold?

When Daniel interprets Nebuchadnezzar's dream in chapter 2, he explains that the parts of the statue in his dream that were made of different metals represented different empires. Nebuchadnezzar's Babylonian empire was the head of gold. The dream, which Daniel said God gave Nebuchadnezzar to show him what would happen in the future, indicated that this empire would end and others would succeed it. By building a great statue like the one in his dream but covering it all in gold, Nebuchadnezzar was asserting instead that his empire would never end. Bowing down to the statue was an act of agreeing with him and disagreeing with what God had said in the dream. In many places, the law of Moses already forbade Israelites to bow down to any idols (for example, in the Ten Commandments in Exodus 20:4–5). But this was a further reason why these Judean young men had to refuse to worship the statue even if they were executed as a result.

Why does this chapter not describe Daniel refusing to worship the statue?

This chapter only describes Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego refusing to worship Nebuchadnezzar's golden statue. However, readers should not infer from this that

Daniel did worship it. The last verse of the previous chapter, which provides a transition into this chapter, says that Nebuchadnezzar “appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego over the work of the province of Babylon. But Daniel was at the gate of the king.” In other words, Daniel remained at the royal court, while his three friends had responsibilities out in the province of Babylon, and that is where Nebuchadnezzar set up his statue (3:1). So Daniel was not among the provincial officials who were summoned to the dedication of the statue. His actions in the rest of the book (for example, in chapter 6, where he continues to pray to God even though he would be executed for doing this) show that if he had been summoned, he too would have refused to worship the statue.

Daniel 3:1

ULT	UST
King Nebuchadnezzar made a statue of gold. Its height {was} sixty cubits. Its width {was} six cubits. He set it up on the Plain of Dura in the province of Babylon.	*King Nebuchadnezzar ordered his craftsmen to make a giant statue and cover it completely with gold. It was 27 meters high and 2.7 meters wide. They set it up on the Plain of Dura in the province of Babylon.*

ULT {was} sixty cubits. Its width {was} six cubits
UST 27 meters … and 2.7 meters wide
(אַמִּין שִׁתִּין פְּתָיֵהּ אַמִּין שֵׁת)

These **cubits** were a unit of measurement corresponding to the distance between an average person's elbow and middle fingertip, or about 46 centimeters or 18 inches. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express these measurements in modern units, either in the text or a footnote. Alternate translation: [about 27 meters. Its width {was} about 2.7 meters]

Support Reference: Biblical Distance

ULT on the Plain of Dura
UST on the Plain of Dura
(בְּבִקְעַת דּוּרָא)

The word **Dura** is the name of a plain.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
a statue	a giant statue
gold	and cover it completely with gold
He set it up	They set it up
in the province of	in the province of
Babylon	Babylon

Daniel 3:2

ULT	UST
And King Nebuchadnezzar sent to assemble the satraps, the prefects, and the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the judges, the magistrates, and all of the rulers of the provinces to come to the dedication of the statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up.	*Then the king sent messengers to the satraps, the prefects, the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the judges, the magistrates, and the other officials in the province. He ordered them to come to the dedication of the statue that he had set up.*

ULT **the satraps**
UST to the satraps
(לַאֲחַשְׁדַּרְפְּנַיָּא)

These **satraps** were provincial governors of the highest rank in the Babylonian Empire. If your readers would not be familiar with what satraps were, you could use the name of a similar kind of official that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [the highest provincial officials]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **to the dedication of the statue**
UST to the dedication of the statue
(לַחֲנֻכַּת צַלְמָא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **dedication**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to dedicate the statue]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	Then the king
And … Nebuchadnezzar	Then the king
to assemble	messengers
the prefects	the prefects
and the governors	the governors
the counselors	the counselors
the judges	the judges
the magistrates	the magistrates
the rulers of	officials in
the provinces	the province
to the dedication of	to the dedication of
the statue	the statue
had set up	had set up

Daniel 3:3

ULT	UST
Then the satraps, the prefects, and the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the judges, the magistrates, and all of the rulers of the provinces were assembling themselves for the dedication of the statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up. And they were standing before the statue that Nebuchadnezzar had set up.	*So the satraps, the prefects, the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the judges, the magistrates, and the other officials in the province came for the dedication of the statue that the king had set up. They all stood in front of that statue.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the prefects	the prefects
and the governors	the governors
the counselors	the counselors
the judges	the judges
the magistrates	the magistrates
the rulers of	officials in
the provinces	the province
were assembling themselves	came
for the dedication of	for the dedication of
the statue	the statue
King	the king
Nebuchadnezzar	the king
had set up	that

Daniel 3:4

ULT	UST
And a herald called out in strength, "One is commanding you, peoples, nations, and languages,	*Then a royal herald shouted loudly, "You people who come from many different nations and groups and who speak many different languages, listen to what the king has commanded!*

ULT **called out in strength**
UST shouted loudly
(קָרֵא בְּחָיִל)

Daniel is using **called out in strength** as a common expression of the culture to mean "loudly." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [called out with a loud voice]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **One is commanding you**
UST You … listen to what the king has commanded
(לְכוֹן אָמְרִין)

The pronoun **One** refers to King Nebuchadnezzar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [King Nebuchadnezzar is commanding you]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **peoples, nations, and languages**
UST people who come from many different nations and groups and who speak many different languages
(עַמְמַיָּא אֻמַּיָא וְלִשָּׁנַיָּא)

Here, **languages** represents the people who speak those languages. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [peoples, nations, and speakers of every language]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
called out	shouted
nations	and groups
and languages	and who speak many different languages

Daniel 3:5

ULT	UST
at the time when you hear the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, bagpipe, and all kinds of music, you shall fall down and worship the statue of gold that King Nebuchadnezzar has set up.	*When you hear the music of horns, flutes, lyres, zithers, harps, bagpipes, and other instruments, you must bow down to worship King Nebuchadnezzar's golden statue.*

ULT **trigon, harp, bagpipe**
UST zithers, harps, bagpipes
(סַבְּכָא פְּסַנְתֵּרִין סוּמְפֹנְיָה)

A **trigon**, a **harp**, and a **bagpipe** were kinds of musical instruments. If your readers would not be familiar with what these instruments were, you could use the names of similar instruments that your readers would recognize, or you could use more general terms. Alternate translation: [two kinds of stringed instruments and a wind instrument]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **you shall fall down and worship**
UST you must bow down to worship
(תִּפְּלוֹן וְתִסְגְּדוּן)

By **fall down and worship**, the herald means to lie facedown on the ground as an act of worship. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [you shall bow down to the ground and worship]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
at the time	When
the horn	horns
pipe	flutes
lyre	lyres
harp	harps
you shall fall down	you must bow down
you shall fall down	you must bow down
and worship	to worship
the statue of	statue
gold	golden
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar's

Daniel 3:6

ULT	UST
But who that does not fall down and worship, in that moment he will be thrown into the midst of a furnace of blazing fire.”	*The king’s soldiers will immediately throw anyone who does not do that into a furnace that is blazing with fire!”*

ULT But who that does not fall down and worship
UST anyone who does not do that
(וּמַן־דִּי־לָא יִפֹּל וְיִסְגֻּד)

The herald is not referring to a specific person with the phrase **who that does not fall down and worship**. He means anyone at all who does not do this. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [But anyone at all who does not fall down and worship]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT he will be thrown into the midst of a furnace of blazing fire
UST The king’s soldiers will … throw … into a furnace that is blazing with fire
(יִתְרְמֵא לְגוֹא־אַתּוּן נוּרָא יָקְדָתָא)

The expression **he will be thrown** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the king’s officials will throw him into the midst of a furnace of blazing fire]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
does … fall down	does … do that
and worship	does … do that
moment	immediately
a furnace of	a furnace

Daniel 3:7

ULT	UST
All before this, at that time in which all of the peoples heard the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp and all kinds of music, all of the peoples, nations, and languages, falling down, were worshiping the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up.	*So when the officials who had gathered there heard the music of horns, flutes, lyres, zithers, harps, and other instruments, they bowed down to worship King Nebuchadnezzar's golden statue.*

ULT All before this
UST So
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

See the discussion of this phrase in the introduction to the book of Daniel. In this context, the author is using it to indicate that follows is the result of what he has just described. Alternate translation: [As a result]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp
UST horns, flutes, lyres, zithers, harps
(קָרְנָא מַשְׁרוֹקִיתָא קיתרס שַׂבְּכָא פְּסַנְטֵרִין)

Some ancient manuscripts do not include the term "bagpipe" at the end of the list of instruments here. The ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts include the term, as in verses 5, 10, and 15. If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of the ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
time	when
the horn	horns
pipe	flutes
lyre	lyres
harp	harps
nations	they
and languages	they
were worshiping	to worship
golden	golden
the … statue	statue
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar's

ULT	UST
had set up	Nebuchadnezzar’s

Daniel 3:8

ULT	UST
All before this, at that time men, Chaldeans, approached and ate the pieces of the Jews.	*But because of something they saw, some of the king's advisors then went to him and said bad things about the Jews {who were provincial officials}.*

ULT **All before this**
UST But because of something they saw
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

See the discussion of this phrase in the introduction to the book of Daniel. In this context, the author is using it to indicate that follows is the result of what he has just described. Alternate translation: [Consequently]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **men, Chaldeans**
UST some of the king's advisors
(גֻּבְרִין כַּשְׂדָּאֵין)

Daniel is using the phrase **men, Chaldeans** to introduce a group of Chaldeans as new participants in the story. If your language has its own way of introducing new participants, you could use it here in your translation. Alternate translation: [certain Chaldeans]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **and ate the pieces of the Jews**
UST and said bad things about the Jews {who were provincial officials}
(וַאֲכַלוּ קַרְצֵיהֹון דִּי יְהוּדָיֵא)

The author is using **ate the pieces of the Jews** as a common expression of the culture to mean "brought malicious accusations against the Jews." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and brought malicious accusations against the Jews] or [and maliciously accused the Jews]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Chaldeans	some of the king's advisors
the Jews	the Jews {who were provincial officials}

Daniel 3:9

ULT	UST
They answered and were saying to King Nebuchadnezzar, "O king, live to eternities!	*They told King Nebuchadnezzar, "Your Majesty, we hope that you will live for a very long time!*

ULT They answered and were saying
UST They told
(עֲנוֹ וְאָמְרִין)

The Chaldeans had not been asked a question, but Daniel uses the expression **They answered and were saying** to introduce their speech. Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT live to eternities
UST we hope that you will live for a very long time
(לְעָלְמִין חֱיִי)

The Chaldeans are using **live to eternities** as a common expression of the culture to mean "may you live for a very long time." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [may you live many years]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
to … Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
O king	Your Majesty
to eternities	for a very long time

Daniel 3:10

ULT	UST
You, O king, have set a decree that every man who hears the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, and bagpipe and all kinds of music shall fall down and worship the golden statue	*You commanded all of us officials to bow down and worship your golden statue when we heard the music of horns, flutes, lyres, zithers, harps, bagpipes, and other instruments.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O king	You
a decree	commanded
the horn	horns
pipe	flutes
lyre	lyres
harp	harps
shall fall down	to bow down
and worship	and worship
golden	golden
the … statue	your … statue

Daniel 3:11

ULT	UST
and who that does not fall down and worship will be thrown into the midst of a furnace of blazing fire.	*You said that if anyone did not do that, you would command your solders to throw him into a furnace that was blazing with fire.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
does … fall down	did … do that
and worship	did … do that
a furnace of	a furnace

Daniel 3:12

ULT	UST
There are men, Jews, whom you have appointed them over the work of the province of Babylon, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These men do not set regard on you, O king. They are not serving your gods, and they are not worshiping the golden statue that you have set up."	*But there are some men who are not obeying your decree, Your Majesty. They are men from Judah whom you have appointed to be officials in the province of Babylon. Their names are Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. They refuse to worship your gods. They did not bow down to your golden statue."*

ULT **men, Jews**
UST They are men from Judah
(גֻּבְרִין יְהוּדָאִין)

The Chaldeans are identifying Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego as Jews. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [certain Jews]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **These men do not set regard on you**
UST some men who are not obeying your decree
(גֻּבְרַיָּא אִלֵּךְ לָא־שָׂמוּ עלַיִךְ & טָעֲם)

The Chaldeans are using **do not set regard on you** as a common expression of the culture to mean "do not respect you" or "do not obey you." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [These men do not respect you] or [These men do not obey you]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Jews	from Judah
you have appointed	you have appointed
the work of	to be officials in
the province of	the province of
Babylon	Babylon
regard	your decree
O king	Your Majesty
They are … serving	to worship
your gods	your gods
they are … worshiping	They did … bow down to
golden	golden

ULT	UST
and … the … statue	statue
you have set up	your

Daniel 3:13

ULT	UST
Then Nebuchadnezzar in rage and heat said to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. Then they brought these men before the king.	*When he heard that, Nebuchadnezzar became extremely angry. He commanded his soldiers to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to him. When those three men arrived,*

ULT in rage and heat
UST became extremely angry
(בְּרֻגְזָ֥ וַחֲמָ֖ה)

The terms **rage** and **heat** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [in furious anger]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
in rage	became extremely angry
the king	arrived

Daniel 3:14

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar answered and was saying to them, "{Is it} true, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, you are not serving my gods and not worshiping the golden statue that I have set up?	*Nebuchadnezzar said to them, "Is it true, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, that you refuse to worship my gods? Did you not bow down to my golden statue?*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
are … serving	to worship
my gods	that … my gods
worshiping	Did you … bow down to
golden	golden
and … the … statue	statue
I have set up	my

Daniel 3:15

ULT	UST
Now if you are ready, that at the moment when you hear the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, and bagpipe and all kinds of music, you fall down and worship the statue that I have made; but if you do not worship, in that moment you will be thrown into the midst of a furnace of blazing fire. And who is the god who will deliver you from my hand?"	*{I will not punish you} if you are willing to bow down and worship my statue when you hear the music of horns, flutes, lyres, zithers, harps, bagpipes, and other instruments. But if you do not bow down, I will immediately command my soldiers to throw you into a furnace that is blazing with fire. Then what god would be able to rescue you from my power?"*

ULT **you fall down and worship the statue that I have made; but if you do not worship**
UST to bow down and worship my statue … But if you do not bow down
(תִּפְלְחוּן וְתִסְגְּדוּן לְצַלְמָא דִּי־עֲבַדֵת וְהֵן לָא תִסְגְּדוּן)

Nebuchadnezzar is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [you fall down and worship the statue that I have made, then I will not punish you for not doing this before; but if you do not worship]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And who is the god who will deliver you from my hand**
UST Then what god would be able to rescue you from my power
(וּמַן־הוּא אֱלָהּ דִּי יְשֵׁיזְבִנָכוֹן מִן־יְדִי)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the question form to assert that no god will be able to rescue Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego from his power. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [And there is no god who will deliver you from my hand!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **my hand**
UST my power
(יְדִי)

Here, **my hand** represents Nebuchadnezzar's power to punish them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [my control]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
at the moment	when
the horn	horns
pipe	flutes
lyre	lyres
harp	harps
you fall down	to bow down
and worship	and worship
the statue	statue
a furnace of	a furnace
the god	god
will deliver you	to rescue you

Daniel 3:16

ULT	UST
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego answered and were saying to the king, "Nebuchadnezzar, we are not needing to answer you about this matter.	*Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego replied, "Nebuchadnezzar, we do not need to {make a decision about what to do and then} tell you whether we are willing to bow down to your statue.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the king	replied
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar

Daniel 3:17

ULT	UST
If it is, our God whom we are serving is able to deliver us from the furnace of blazing fire, and he will deliver us from your hand, O king.	*If that happened, our God, whom we worship, would be able to rescue us from the furnace. He could rescue us from your power, Your Majesty.*

ULT **If it is**
UST If that happened
(הֵן אִיתַי)

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are using **If it is** as a common expression of the culture to mean "if that happens," referring to their being thrown into the furnace. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [If we are thrown into the furnace] or [If that is what happens]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **your hand**
UST your power
(יְדָהּ)

Here, **your hand** represents the king's power. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [your control]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
our God	our God
are serving	worship
to deliver us	to rescue us
the furnace of	the furnace
he will deliver us	He could rescue us
O king	Your Majesty

Daniel 3:18

ULT	UST
But if not, may it be known to you, O king, that we will not be serving your gods, and we will not worship the golden image that you have set up."	*But we want you to know, Your Majesty, that even if he did not rescue us, we would never worship your gods. We would not bow down to your golden statue."*

ULT But if not
UST But … even if he did not rescue us
(וְהָן לָא)

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [But if he does not deliver us]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT may it be known to you
UST we want you to know
(יְדִיעַ לָהֳוֹא־לָךְ)

The expression **may it be known to you** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [you should know]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	we want … to know
O king	Your Majesty
be serving	would … worship
your gods	your gods
we will … worship	We would … bow down to
golden	golden
and … the … image	statue
you have set up	your

Daniel 3:19

ULT	UST
Then Nebuchadnezzar was filled {with} heat, and the image of his face was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. He answered and was saying to heat the furnace one seven more than had been seen to heat it.	*When Nebuchadnezzar heard that, he became extremely angry. He had been regarding Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego with a generous expression, but now he looked at them with a very hostile expression. He ordered his soldiers to heat the furnace as hot as possible, hotter than it had ever been before.*

ULT **was filled {with} heat**
UST he became extremely angry
(הִתְמְלִי חֲמָא)

Daniel is using **was filled {with} heat** as a common expression of the culture to mean "became furious." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [became furious]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **one seven more than had been seen to heat it**
UST as hot as possible, hotter than it had ever been before
(חַד־שִׁבְעָה עַל דִּי חָזֵה לְמַזֵּיהּ)

Daniel is using **one seven more** as a common expression of the culture to mean "seven times hotter" than it was usually heated. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [seven times hotter]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **than had been seen to heat it**
UST hotter than it had ever been before
(דִּי חָזֵה לְמַזֵּיהּ)

Daniel is using the phrase **than had been seen to heat it** as a common expression of the culture to mean "more than it had ever been heated before." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [than it had ever been heated before]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **than had been seen to heat it**
UST hotter than it had ever been before
(דִּי חֲזָה לְמַזְיֵהּ)

The expression **had been seen** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [than anyone had seen anyone heat it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **one seven more than had been seen to heat it**
UST as hot as possible, hotter than it had ever been before
(חַד־שִׁבְעָה עַל דִּי חֲזָה לְמַזְיֵהּ)

Here, **seven** might not be an exact number. It may represent completion. Alternate translation: [as many times hotter as possible, hotter than it had ever been heated before]

Support Reference: Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
the furnace	the furnace

Daniel 3:20

ULT	UST
And he told men, men of valor who {were} in his army, to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to throw {them} into the furnace of blazing fire.	*Then he commanded some of the strongest soldiers in his army to tie up Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego and throw them into that extremely hot furnace.*

ULT And he told men, men of valor

UST Then he commanded some of the strongest soldiers

(וְלִגְבָרִין גִּבָּרֵי־חַיִל֙ & אָמַ֔ר)

The author is using the expression **men, men of valor** to introduce these new participants in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [certain men of valor] or [certain strong soldiers]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
valor	strongest
to bind	to tie up
into the furnace of	into that … furnace

Daniel 3:21

ULT	UST
Then they bound these men in their cloaks, their tunics, their turbans, and their garments, and they threw {them} into the midst of the furnace of blazing fire.	*So those soldiers tied up the three men and threw them into the furnace. The men were still wearing their robes, tunics, turbans, and other clothes.*

ULT **their tunics**
UST tunics
(פטישיהון)

The term that the ULT translates as **tunics** refers to some kind of inner garment that people of this culture wore under their **cloaks**. Some interpreters understand it to mean “trousers.” However, since the exact meaning is uncertain, you may wish to use a general phrase in your translation. Alternate translation: [their inner garments]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
they bound	those soldiers tied up
their tunics	tunics
the furnace of	the furnace

Daniel 3:22

ULT	UST
All before this, from that the word of the king was being urgent and the furnace was extremely heated, those men who brought up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, the flame of the fire killed them.	*The king had given a very stern command, so his servants had made the furnace extremely hot. As a result, the heat of the furnace killed the strong soldiers who threw Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego into it.*

ULT **All before this**
UST As a result
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

The author is using **All before this** as a common expression of the culture to mean "because of this" or "on account of this." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Because of this] or [For this reason]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	The king
and the furnace	the furnace
killed	killed

Daniel 3:23

ULT	UST
And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell into the midst of the furnace of blazing fire bound.	*And those three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell into the roaring flames with ropes around them.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the furnace of	the … flames
bound	with ropes around them

Daniel 3:24

ULT	UST
Then King Nebuchadnezzar marveled, and he stood up in hastening himself. He answered and was saying to his counselors, "Did we not throw three men into the midst of the fire bound?" They answered and were saying to the king, "True, O king."	*But then King Nebuchadnezzar saw something that amazed him. He quickly jumped up and asked his advisors, "Did we not tie up three men and throw them into the furnace?" The advisors replied, "Yes, Your Majesty, we did."*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
to his counselors	his advisors

Daniel 3:25

ULT	UST
He answered and was saying, "Behold, I am seeing four men loosened walking about in the midst of the fire, and harm is not upon them. And the appearance of the fourth resembles a son of the gods."	*Nebuchadnezzar responded, "But look! I see four men! They have no ropes around them, and they are walking around in the flames. The fire is not hurting them! And the fourth man looks like a divine being!"*

ULT **Behold**
UST But look
(הָא)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **And the appearance of the fourth**
UST And the fourth man looks like
(וְרֵוֵהּ דִּי רביעיא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **appearance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And the fourth one]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a son of the gods**
UST a divine being
(לְבַר־אֱלָהִין)

Nebuchadnezzar is using **a son of the gods** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a god." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a god]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the gods	a divine being

Daniel 3:26

ULT	UST
Then Nebuchadnezzar approached to the door of the furnace of blazing fire. He answered and was saying, "Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, his servants of the Most High God, come out and come {here}!" Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were coming out from the midst of the fire.	*Then Nebuchadnezzar came closer to the opening of the furnace. He shouted, "Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, you men who worship the Supreme God, come out of there! Come over here!" So they stepped out of the furnace.*

ULT **his servants of the Most High God**
UST you men who worship the Supreme God
(עַבְדָּוֹהִי דִּי־אֱלָהָא עלְיָא)

It might seem that saying **his** in addition to the possessive phrase with **of** would be to express extra information in a way that would not be natural in your language. If so, you can shorten this expression. Alternate translation: [servants of the Most High God]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
the furnace of	the furnace
his servants	you men who worship
Most High	Supreme
the … God	the … God

Daniel 3:27

ULT	UST
And assembling themselves, the satraps, the prefects, the governors, and the counselors of the king were seeing these men, that the fire had not ruled over their bodies. For the hair of their heads was not singed and their cloaks had not changed and the smell of fire had not passed onto them.	*Then the satraps, prefects, governors, and royal counselors crowded around them. They saw that the flames had not harmed them. The flames had not even singed any of the hair on their heads or scorched any of their clothes! There was not even any smell of smoke on them!*

ULT **the fire had not ruled over their bodies**
UST the flames had not harmed them
(לָא־שְׁלֵט נוּרָא בִּגְשְׁמְהוֹן)

Daniel is speaking of **the fire** as if it were a living thing that could rule over the men's bodies. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the fire had not damaged their bodies]

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And assembling themselves	Then … crowded around them
the prefects	prefects
the governors	governors
and the counselors of	and … counselors
the king	royal
had … ruled	had … harmed

Daniel 3:28

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar answered and was saying, "Blessed {be} the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who sent his angel and delivered his servants who entrusted themselves to him and changed the word of the king and gave up their bodies that they might not serve and not worship any god except their God.	*Then Nebuchadnezzar said, "People should praise the God whom Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego worship! He sent one of his angels to rescue these three men who worship him and who trusted him {to protect them}. They were willing to die rather than worship any other god other than their own God. As a result, they made my punishment have no effect.*

ULT **Blessed {be} the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego**
UST People should praise the God whom Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego worship
(בְּרִיךְ אֱלָהֲהוֹן דִּי־שַׁדְרַךְ מֵישַׁךְ וַעֲבֵד נְגוֹ)

Nebuchadnezzar is praising God when he says **Blessed {be} the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego**. In your translation, use a form that people would recognize as an expression of praise or blessing in your language. You might express this as a declaration of praise, if that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [May the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego be praised]

Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **and gave up their bodies**
UST They were willing to die
(וְיַהֲבוּ גשמיהון)

Nebuchadnezzar is using **gave up their bodies** as a common expression of the culture to mean "were willing to die." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and were willing to die]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
Blessed {be}	People should praise
the God	the God
his angel	one of his angels
and delivered	to rescue
his servants	these three men who worship him
the king	my
worship	worship
god	god

ULT	UST
their God	their own God

Daniel 3:29

ULT	UST
And from me a decree is set that any people, nation, or language that says anything against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego will be made {into} limbs and its house be made a rubbish heap, all before that there is not another god that is able to rescue like this.”	*Therefore, I am now making this decree: ‘No person, no matter what nation or group he comes from or what language he speaks, may criticize the God whom Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego worship. If anyone does, I will order my soldiers to cut him into pieces. I will also order them to destroy his house completely. That is because there is no other god who can rescue people like this!’”*

ULT **And from me a decree is set**
UST Therefore, I am now making … decree
(וּמִנִּי֙ שִׂ֣ים טְעֵ֔ם)

The expression **And from me a decree is set** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And I am setting forth this decree]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **anything**
UST may criticize
(שלה)

The phrase **anything** is a translation of the standard written Hebrew text as we have it today. There is, however, a correction, “anything wrong,” in the margin of the text that Hebrew scribes have recommended. You may want to follow this correction in your translation, or you may want to follow the major translation in your area.

Support Reference: Alternative Readings

ULT **will be made {into} limbs and its house be made a rubbish heap**
UST I will order my soldiers to cut him into pieces. I will also order them to destroy his house completely
(הַדְּמִ֣ין יִתְעֲבֵ֔ד וּבַיְתֵ֖הּ נְוָלִ֣י יִשְׁתַּנֵּ֑ה)

The expressions **will be made {into} limbs** and **its house be made a rubbish heap** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I will have my soldiers cut them into limbs and make their house a rubbish heap]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **will be made {into} limbs**
UST I will order my soldiers to cut him into pieces
(הַדְּמִין יִתְעֲבֵד)

Nebuchadnezzar is using **will be made {into} limbs** as a common expression of the culture to mean "be cut into pieces." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will be cut into pieces]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **all before that**
UST That is because
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דִּי)

Nebuchadnezzar is using **all before that** as a common expression of the culture to mean "because." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [seeing that] or [because]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and its house be made a rubbish heap**
UST I will also order them to destroy his house completely
(וּבַיְתֵהּ נָוָלַי יִשְׁתַּוֵּה)

Nebuchadnezzar is speaking as if the offender's house were **a rubbish heap**. He means that it will be completely destroyed and reduced to ruins. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and its house be completely destroyed]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a decree	decree
nation	nation
or language	or what language he speaks
the God	the God
and its house	his house
god	god
to rescue	rescue people

Daniel 3:30

ULT	UST
Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the province of Babylon.	*Then the king gave Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego more important positions in the province of Babylon.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
in the province of	the province of
Babylon	Babylon

Daniel 4

Daniel 4 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter consists of a letter that King Nebuchadnezzar wrote to all the subjects in his empire. In this letter, he relates an experience he had that taught him that God, whom he calls “the Most High” and “the king of the heavens,” determines what people will reign over earthly kingdoms and for how long.

1. The greeting at the start of the letter (1–3)
2. Nebuchadnezzar has a dream and asks Daniel to interpret it (4–18)
3. Daniel explains the meaning of the dream (19–27)
4. What the dream depicted happens to Nebuchadnezzar (28–36)
5. The closing of the letter (37)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 4:3 and 4:34–35.

The tree as the king

The great tree of the dream represents Nebuchadnezzar himself (verse 22); keep the imagery while letting the interpretation identify him.

Daniel 4:1

ULT	UST
King Nebuchadnezzar, to all of the peoples, nations, and languages that are dwelling in all of the earth. May your peace abound.	*I, King Nebuchadnezzar, am writing to all of you people who live in my empire. You come from many different nations and groups, and you speak many different languages. I hope that all is well with you.*

ULT **the peoples, nations, and languages**
UST You come from many different nations and groups, and you speak many different languages
(עַמְמַיָּא אֻמַיָּא וְלִשָׁנַיָּא)

The terms **peoples**, **nations**, and **languages** mean similar things. Nebuchadnezzar is using the three terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the many different people groups]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and languages**
UST and you speak many different languages
(וְלִשָׁנַיָּא)

Here, **languages** represents the people who speak them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and language groups]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **May your peace abound**
UST I hope that all is well with you
(שְׁלָמְכוֹן יִשְׂגֵּא)

This is a conventional greeting at the start of a letter that expresses the hope that all is well with the recipients. (The term **peace** has the sense of "welfare" here.) Use the equivalent greeting from your culture. The UST models one way to do that.

Support Reference: Politeness

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	I … Nebuchadnezzar
nations	You come from many different nations
and languages	and you speak many different languages

ULT	UST
the earth	my empire
your peace	I hope that all is well with you

Daniel 4:2

ULT	UST
It has seemed good before me to make known the signs and wonders that the Most High God has done with me.	*I want you to know the wonderful things that the Supreme God has done for me.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
It has seemed good	I want
to make known	you to know
the signs	the wonderful things
and wonders	the wonderful things
Most High	Supreme
the … God	the … God

Daniel 4:3

ULT	UST
How great {are} his signs, and how mighty {are} his wonders! His kingdom {is} a kingdom of eternity, and his dominion {is} with generation and generation.	*He performs great miracles; yes, he does very wonderful things. His kingdom will last forever; indeed, he will rule over every generation of people.*

ULT **How great {are} his signs, and how mighty {are} his wonders**
UST He performs great miracles; yes, he does very wonderful things
(אָתּוֹהִי כְּמָה רַבְרְבִין וְתִמְהָוֹהִי כְּמָה תַקִּיפִין)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [How very great and mighty are his miraculous signs!]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **His kingdom {is} a kingdom of eternity**
UST His kingdom will last forever
(מַלְכוּתֵהּ מַלְכוּת עָלַם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [He rules as king forever]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **His kingdom {is} a kingdom of eternity, and his dominion {is} with generation and generation**
UST His kingdom will last forever; indeed, he will rule over every generation of people
(מַלְכוּתֵהּ מַלְכוּת עָלַם וְשָׁלְטָנֵהּ עִם־דָּר וְדָר)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Another approach would be to connect the phrases with a word that shows that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. See how you as a team have decided to translate the parallel phrases in poetry, and follow that approach here and throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, indeed, he rules over people from generation to generation]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **{is} with generation and generation**
UST over every generation of people
(עִם־דֹּ֥ר וָדֹֽר)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the phrase **with generation and generation** as a common expression of the culture to mean “for all generations” or “forever.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [continuing throughout all generations]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{are} his signs	miracles
mighty	very
and … {are} his wonders	wonderful things
His kingdom	His kingdom
eternity	forever
and his dominion	indeed, he will rule
generation	every generation of people

Daniel 4:4

ULT	UST
I, Nebuchadnezzar, was being secure in my house and prosperous in my palace.	*I, Nebuchadnezzar, was reigning firmly over my kingdom, and I was living comfortably in my palace.*

ULT **I, Nebuchadnezzar, was being secure in my house and prosperous in my palace**
UST I, Nebuchadnezzar, was reigning firmly over my kingdom, and I was living comfortably in my palace
(אֲנָה נְבוּכַדְנֶצַּר שְׁלֵוָה הֲוֵית בְּבֵיתִי וְרַעֲנַן בְּהֵיכְלִי)

Here Nebuchadnezzar is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **in my house**
UST over my kingdom
(בְּבֵיתִי)

In this context, **house** may represent "royal house" or "kingdom." The UST follows that interpretation.

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
in my house	over my kingdom
and prosperous	and I was living comfortably
in my palace	in my palace

Daniel 4:5

ULT	UST
I saw a dream and it frightened me. And the thoughts upon my bed and the visions of my head alarmed me.	*But one night I had a dream that scared me. What I saw in my dream as I was asleep in bed distressed me greatly.*

ULT **I saw a dream and it frightened me. And the thoughts upon my bed and the visions of my head alarmed me**

UST But one night I had a dream that scared me. What I saw in my dream as I was asleep in bed distressed me greatly

(חֶלֶם חָזִית וִידַחֲלִנֵּנִי וְהַרְהֹרִין עַל־מִשְׁכְּבִי וְחֶזְוֵי רֵאשִׁי יְבַהֲלֻנֵּנִי)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Another approach would be to connect the phrases with a word that shows that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. See how you as a team have decided to translate the parallel phrases in poetry, and follow that approach here and throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [I saw a dream that terrified and alarmed me as I lay on my bed]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **and the visions of my head**

UST What I saw

(וְחֶזְוֵי רֵאשִׁי)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the phrase **the visions of my head** as a common expression of the culture to mean “the things that he saw while he was dreaming.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the things I saw in my dream]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a dream	a dream
and it frightened me	that scared me
and the visions of	What … saw
alarmed me	distressed me greatly

Daniel 4:6

ULT	UST
And a decree was set from me to bring before me all of the wise men of Babylon, that they might make me know the interpretation of the dream.	*So I sent an order to all the wise men in Babylon to come and tell me what my dream meant.*

ULT **And a decree was set from me**
UST So I sent an order
(וּמִנִּי֙ שִׂ֣ים טְעֵ֔ם)

The expression **was set** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And I set a decree]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the interpretation of the dream**
UST what my dream meant
(פְּשַׁ֖ר חֶלְמָ֑א)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what the dream signified]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a decree	an order
the wise men of	the wise men in
Babylon	Babylon
they might make me know	tell me
the interpretation of	what … meant
the dream	my dream

Daniel 4:7

ULT	UST
Then the magicians, the enchanters, the Chaldeans, and the diviners were coming in, and I was telling the dream before them, but they were not making me know its interpretation.	*And various magicians, enchanters, advisors, and fortunetellers came to me. I told them what I had dreamed, but they could not tell me what it meant.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the magicians	various magicians
the Chaldeans	advisors
and the diviners	and fortunetellers
was telling	told
and … the dream	what I had dreamed
they were … making … know	they could … tell
but … its interpretation	but … what it meant

Daniel 4:8

ULT	UST
And until another came in before me, Daniel, whose name {is} Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god, and in whom {is} the spirit of the holy gods, and I told the dream before him.	*But finally a certain man, Daniel, came to me. One of my officials had given him the name Belteshazzar, which includes the name of one of my gods{, Bel}. The spirit of the holy gods is in him. I told him what I had dreamed.*

ULT **another came in before me, Daniel**
UST a certain man, Daniel, came to me
(אָחֳרִ֔ין עַל־קָ֖דָמַי דָּנִיֵּ֑אל)

Here Nebuchadnezzar is introducing **Daniel** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [a man named Daniel came in before me]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **whose name {is} Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god**
UST One of my officials had given him the name Belteshazzar, which includes the name of one of my gods{, Bel}
(דִּי־שְׁמֵ֤הּ בֵּלְטְשַׁאצַּר֙ כְּשֻׁ֣ם אֱלָהִ֔י)

The word **Belteshazzar** is the Babylonian name that Nebuchadnezzar gave to Daniel, based on the name of one of his own gods.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **{is} the spirit of the holy gods**
UST The spirit of the holy gods
(רוּחַ־אֱלָהִ֥ין קַדִּישִׁ֖ין)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the possessive form to describe a **spirit** that is characterized by **the holy gods**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a divine spirit from the holy gods]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
my god	one of my gods{, Bel}
{is} the spirit of	The spirit of
the … gods	the … gods

ULT	UST
and … the dream	what I had dreamed

Daniel 4:9

ULT	UST
“Belteshazzar, chief of the magicians, because I am knowing that the spirit of the holy gods {is} in you and every mystery is not constraining you, tell {me} the visions of my dream that I have seen and its interpretation.	*I said, “Belteshazzar, you are the leader of my advisors. I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in you, so no mystery is too hard for you to explain. So I will tell you the dream that I saw, and you tell me what it means.*

ULT **Belteshazzar, chief of the magicians**
UST I said, “Belteshazzar, you are the leader of my advisors
(בֶּלְטְשַׁאצַּר֙ רַב חַרְטֻמַּיָּ֔א)

Nebuchadnezzar begins to report the words that he spoke to Daniel without using a verb such as “said” to introduce them. In your translation, use a natural way of indicating direct quotations in your language.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **the visions of my dream**
UST I will tell you the dream
(חֶזְוֵ֥י חֶלְמִ֖י)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **visions**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [tell me what I saw in my dream]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and its interpretation**
UST what it means
(וּפִשְׁרֵ֖הּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and tell me what it means]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
chief of	you are the leader of
the magicians	my advisors
am knowing	know
the spirit of	the spirit of
holy	holy
the … gods	the … gods
mystery	mystery
tell {me}	and you tell me
the visions of	I will tell you the dream

ULT	UST
my dream and its interpretation	I will tell you the dream what it means

Daniel 4:10

ULT	UST
And the visions of my head upon my bed: I was looking, and behold, a tree in the midst of the earth, and its height {was} great.	*This is what I dreamed as I was lying in bed. In my dream, I saw a tree in the middle of the land. It was very tall.*

ULT **And the visions of my head**
UST This is what I dreamed
(וְחֶזְוֵי רֵאשִׁי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **visions**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what I saw in my mind]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **I was looking, and behold, a tree in the midst of the earth**
UST In my dream, I saw a tree in the middle of the land
(חָזֵה הֲוֵית וַאֲלוּ אִילָן בְּגוֹא אַרְעָא)

Nebuchadnezzar is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. He means that he saw a tree in his vision. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [I was looking, and listen, I saw a tree in the midst of the earth]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and behold**
UST I saw
(וַאֲלוּ)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [I saw]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the visions of	This is what I dreamed
the earth	the land

Daniel 4:11

ULT	UST
The tree became great, and it became strong, and its height reached to the heavens, and its sight, to the end of all of the earth.	*It grew very big, and it became strong. It seemed that its top reached up to the sky, so that everyone in the world could see it.*

ULT **became great, and it became strong**
UST grew very big, and it became strong
(רְבָה & וּתְקֻף)

The terms **became great** and **it became strong** mean similar things. Nebuchadnezzar is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [became very great]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and its height reached to the heavens, and its sight, to the end of all of the earth**
UST It seemed that its top reached up to the sky, so that everyone in the world could see it
(וְרוּמַהּ יְמָטֵא לִשְׁמַיָּא וַחֲזוֹתַהּ לְסוֹף כָּל־אַרְעָא)

Nebuchadnezzar says **its height reached to the heavens, and its sight, to the end of all of the earth** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [and it grew extremely tall, and it could be seen from very far away]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the heavens	to the sky
the earth	the world

Daniel 4:12

ULT	UST
Its foliage {was} beautiful, and its fruit {was} great, and food for all {was} in it. The beast of the field had shade beneath it, and the birds of the heavens dwelled in its branches, and all flesh was fed from it.	*It had beautiful leaves, and it produced much fruit for people to eat. Wild animals rested in the shade of that tree, and birds built nests in its branches. Many creatures came and got food from that tree.*

ULT **and all flesh was fed from it**
UST Many creatures came and got food from that tree
(וּמִנֵּהּ יִתְזִין כָּל־בְּשְׂרָא)

The expression **was fed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and all flesh got food from it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **all flesh**
UST Many creatures
(כָּל־בְּשְׂרָא)

Nebuchadnezzar is using **all flesh** to represent all living creatures. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [every living creature]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and its fruit	fruit
The beast of	animals
the heavens	and birds

Daniel 4:13

ULT	UST
I was looking in the visions of my head upon my bed, and behold, a watcher and a holy {one} was coming down from the heavens.	*But while I was still asleep and dreaming, I saw a holy angel coming down from heaven.*

ULT I was looking in the visions of my head upon my bed
UST But while I was still asleep and dreaming
(חֲזֵה הֲוֵית בְּחָזְוֵי רֵאשִׁי עַל־מִשְׁכְּבִי)

Nebuchadnezzar is using **I was looking in the visions of my head upon my bed** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I was dreaming." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I was dreaming] or [Images passed through my mind as I lay sleeping]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and behold
UST I saw
(וַאֲלוּ)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [I saw]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT a watcher and a holy {one}
UST a holy angel
(עִיר וְקַדִּישׁ)

This expression describes a holy being who watches (waits) for instructions from God, that is, a holy angel, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Hendiadys

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the visions of	and dreaming
and a holy {one}	holy
the heavens	heaven

Daniel 4:14

ULT	UST
He called out in strength, and thus he was saying, ‘Cut down the tree and cut off its branches, shake off its foliage, and scatter its fruit. Let the beast flee from beneath it, and the birds, from its branches.	*The angel shouted loudly, ‘Cut down that tree, and cut off its branches! Shake it until its leaves fall off, and throw away its fruit. Chase away the animals that are lying in its shade and the birds that are in its branches.*

ULT **and thus he was saying, ‘Cut down the tree**
UST The angel shouted … Cut down that tree
(וְכֵן אָמַר גְּדוּ אִילָנָא)

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [and thus he was ordering them to cut down the tree]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Let the beast flee from beneath it, and the birds, from its branches**
UST Chase away the animals that are lying in its shade and the birds that are in its branches
(תְּנֵד חֵיוְתָא מִן־תַּחְתּוֹהִי וְצִפְּרַיָּא מִן־עַנְפּוֹהִי)

The watcher is saying what he wants the beast and the birds to do. See the discussion in the introduction to this book about “let” and “may” and follow the decision of your team of how a speaker will express in this context what he wants someone to do. Alternate translation: [The beast must flee from beneath it, and the birds, from its branches]

Support Reference: Third-Person Imperatives

ULT **and the birds, from its branches**
UST and the birds that are in its branches
(וְצִפְּרַיָּא מִן־עַנְפּוֹהִי)

The watcher is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and let the birds flee from its branches]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **Cut down the tree and cut off its branches, shake off its foliage, and scatter its fruit. Let the beast flee from beneath it, and the birds, from its branches**

UST Cut down that tree, and cut off its branches! Shake it until its leaves fall off, and throw away its fruit. Chase away the animals that are lying in its shade and the birds that are in its branches

(גְּדוּ אִילָנָא וְקַצּוּ עַנְפּוֹהִי אַתְּרוּ עָפְיֵהּ וּבַדְּרוּ אִנְבֵּהּ תֶּנֶד חֵיוָתָא מִן־תַּחְתּוֹהִי וְצִפְּרַיָּא מִן־עַנְפּוֹהִי)

The implied word “you” in these commands is plural because the watcher is addressing the other heavenly beings who carry out his commands, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
He called out	The angel shouted
shake off	Shake it until … fall off
and scatter	and throw away
its … fruit	its fruit
the beast	the animals

Daniel 4:15

ULT	UST
But leave the stump of its roots in the earth, and with a band of iron and bronze, in the grass of the field. And let it be wet with the dew of the heavens, and {let} its portion {be} with the beast in the grass of the earth.	*But leave the stump of the tree with its roots in the ground where grass grows. Fasten a band of iron and bronze around the stump {to protect it from splitting}. Let the dew that forms from the air keep it damp.' {That tree seemed to represent a person, since the angel then said,} 'Make him eat grass from the ground as animals do.*

ULT **leave**
UST leave
(שְׁבֻקוּ)

The word "you" is implied in the command **leave** and is plural here because the watcher is speaking to the other heavenly beings, so use the plural form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **and with a band of iron and bronze**
UST Fasten a band of iron and bronze around the stump {to protect it from splitting}
(וּבֶאֱסוּר דִּי־פַרְזֶל וּנְחָשׁ)

The purpose of this **band** was to prevent the heat of the sun from splitting the tree and killing it completely. If the stump remained intact, it might send out new shoots. If your readers would not be familiar with the practice of banding a tree stump, you could explain it in the text of your translation or in a footnote.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **in the grass … in the grass of**
UST where grass grows … grass from
(בְּדִתְאָא & בַּעֲשַׂב)

The second instance of "grass" refers to grass in general. The first instance of "grass" refers to new grass or tender grass, that is, grass that has just started growing. If your language has its own term for this, it would be appropriate to use it here in your translation, here and in verse 23.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **And let it be wet with the dew of the heavens**
UST Let the dew that forms from the air keep it damp
(וּבְטַל שְׁמַיָּא יִצְטַבַּע)

The expression **be wet** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And let the dew of the heavens make it wet]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the earth	in the ground
iron	iron
and bronze	and bronze
the heavens	that forms from the air
the beast	animals do

Daniel 4:16

ULT	UST
Let his heart be changed from a man, and let the heart of a beast be given to him, and let seven times pass over him.	*For seven years, make him have the mind of an animal instead of the mind of a human being.*

ULT **Let his heart be changed from a man, and let the heart of a beast be given to him, and let seven times pass over him**

UST For seven years, make him have the mind of an animal instead of the mind of a human being

(לִבְבֵהּ מִן־אנושא יְשַׁנּוֹן וּלְבַב חֵיְוָה יִתְיְהֵב לֵהּ וְשִׁבְעָה עִדָּנִין יַחְלְפוּן עֲלוֹהִי)

The watcher is saying what he wants to happen to the man represented by the tree. See the discussion in the introduction to this book about “let” and “may” and follow the decision of your team of how a speaker will express in this context what he wants someone to do. Alternate translation: [I desire that his heart be changed from a man and that the heart of a beast be given to him and that seven times pass over him] or [His heart should be changed from a man’s, and the heart of a beast should be given to him, and seven years should pass over him]

Support Reference: Third-Person Imperatives

ULT **Let his heart be changed from a man, and let the heart of a beast be given to him**

UST make him have the mind of an animal instead of the mind of a human being

(לִבְבֵהּ מִן־אנושא יְשַׁנּוֹן וּלְבַב חֵיְוָה יִתְיְהֵב לֵהּ)

The expressions **be changed** and **be given** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Let them change his heart from a man, and let them give the heart of a beast to him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Let his heart be changed from a man**

UST instead of the mind of a human being

(לִבְבֵהּ מִן־אנושא יְשַׁנּוֹן)

The pronoun **his** refers to the man whom the tree represents. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Let the heart of the man whom the tree represents be changed from a man]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Let his heart be changed from a man**
UST instead of the mind of a human being
(לִבָּהּ מִן־אנושא יְשַׁנּוֹן)

Here the watcher is speaking as if the man's mind were his **heart**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Let his mind be changed from a man]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and let seven times pass over him**
UST For seven years
(וְשִׁבְעָה עִדָּנִין יַחְלְפוּן עֲלוֹהִי)

The implication is that **seven times** refers to a fixed period of time, either seven years or seven seasons. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and let seven fixed periods of time pass over him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a beast	an animal
times	years

Daniel 4:17

ULT	UST
The matter {is} by a decree of the watchers, and the decision {is} from a command of the holy ones, for the purpose that the living may know that the Most High is ruler over the kingdom of man, and to whom that he wishes, he gives it, and he sets up over it the lowest of men.'	*The holy angels have decided that this will be his punishment. They want people to know that the Supreme God rules over human kingdoms. He chooses who will be their kings. He even makes people who were not important into kings.'*

ULT **The matter {is} by a decree of the watchers, and the decision {is} from a command of the holy ones**
UST The holy angels have decided that this will be his punishment
(בִּגְזֵרַת עִירִין פִּתְגָמָא וּמַאמַר קַדִּישִׁין שְׁאֵלְתָא)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [The watchers and holy ones have decided this together]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **the living**
UST people
(חַיָּיא)

The speaker for **the watchers** is using the adjective **the living** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [people who are alive]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **and he sets up over it the lowest of men**
UST He even makes people who were not important into kings
(וּשְׁפַל אֲנָשִׁים יְקִים עליה)

The watcher is using the adjective **the lowest** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [and he sets up over it a man who is of the lowest status]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{is} by a decree of	that this will be his punishment
the holy ones	The holy angels

ULT	UST
may know	to know
the Most High	the Supreme God
is ruler	rules
over the kingdom of	over … kingdoms

Daniel 4:18

ULT	UST
I saw this dream, I, King Nebuchadnezzar. And you, Belteshazzar, tell the interpretation, all before that all of the wise men of my kingdom are not being able to make me know the interpretation. But you are being able because the spirit of the holy gods {is} in you."	*That is what I, King Nebuchadnezzar, saw in my dream. Now I want you, Belteshazzar, to tell me what it means. I am asking you because none of my other wise men could tell me what it meant. But I believe you can tell me because the spirit of the holy gods is in you."*

ULT **because the spirit of the holy gods {is} in you**
UST because the spirit of the holy gods is in you
(דִּי רוּחַ־אֱלָהִין קַדִּישִׁין בָּךְ)

The word translated as **because** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [since the spirit of the holy gods is in you]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **all before that all of the wise men of my kingdom**
UST I am asking you because none of my other wise men
(כָּל־קָבֵל דִּי ׀ כָּל־חַכִּימֵי מַלְכוּתִי)

Nebuchadnezzar is using **all before that ** as a common expression of the culture to mean "since." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [since all of the wise men of my kingdom]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dream	in my dream
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
tell	to tell me
the interpretation	what it means
the wise men of	wise men
my kingdom	my other
to make me know	tell me
the interpretation	what it meant
the spirit of	the spirit of
holy	holy

ULT	UST
the … gods	the … gods

Daniel 4:19

ULT	UST
Then Daniel, whose name {was} Belteshazzar, was appalled for a moment, and his thoughts alarmed him. The king answered and was saying, "Belteshazzar, may the dream and the interpretation not alarm you." Belteshazzar answered and was saying, "My lord, {may} the dream {be} for the ones hating you and its interpretation, for your enemies.	*But Daniel, whom we called Belteshazzar, did not say anything for a while. That was because he knew what the dream meant, and it distressed him. Finally I said to him, "Belteshazzar, do not let the dream and its meaning distress you." He replied, "Sir, I hope that what your dream shows will happen to your enemies, who hate you{, and not to you}.*

ULT **{may} the dream {be} for the ones hating you and its interpretation, for your enemies**
UST I hope that what your dream shows will happen to your enemies, who hate you{, and not to you}
(חֲלָמָא לשנאיך ופשרה לעריך)

Daniel is using the expression **for the ones hating you and its interpretation, for your enemies** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I wish that what the dream predicts would happen to your enemies rather than to you." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I wish that what the dream and its interpretation predict would happen to those who hate you, your enemies, rather than to you]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **My lord, {may} the dream {be} for the ones hating you and its interpretation, for your enemies**
UST Sir, I hope that what your dream shows will happen to your enemies, who hate you{, and not to you}
(מראי חֲלָמָא לשנאיך ופשרה לעריך)

Belteshazzar is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [My lord, may the dream be for the ones hating you and may its interpretation be for your enemies]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	But
for … moment	for … while
alarmed him	and it distressed him

ULT	UST
The king	I
the dream	the dream
and the interpretation	and its meaning
My lord	Sir
and its interpretation	what … shows
for your enemies	I hope that … will happen to your enemies

Daniel 4:20

ULT	UST
The tree that you saw, which became great and became strong, and its height reached to the heavens and its sight, to all of the earth,	*In your dream you saw a very tall, strong tree. It seemed that its top reached up to the sky, so that everyone in the world could see it.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the heavens	to the sky
the earth	the world

Daniel 4:21

ULT	UST
and its foliage {was} beautiful, and its fruit {was} great, and food for all {was} in it; under it the beast of the field dwelled, and in its branches the birds of the heavens resided,	*It had beautiful leaves, and it produced much fruit for people to eat. Wild animals rested in the shade of that tree, and birds built nests in its branches.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and its fruit	fruit
the beast of	animals
the heavens	and birds

Daniel 4:22

ULT	UST
it {is} you, O king, who have become great and have become strong. And your greatness has become great and has reached to the heavens, and your dominion, to the end of the earth.	*Your Majesty, that tree represents you! You have become great and strong. It is as if you rule everything from the ground up to the sky, all throughout the world.*

ULT it {is} you, O king
UST Your Majesty, that tree represents you
(אנתה־הִוּא מַלְכָּא)

Here Daniel is speaking as if the king were the tree that Nebuchadnezzar saw in his dream. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [that tree is a symbol of you, O king]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT And your greatness has become great
UST It is as if you rule everything
(וּרְבוּתָךְ רְבָת)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **greatness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And how great you are has increased]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT and your dominion, to the end of the earth
UST It is as if you rule everything … all throughout the world
(וְשָׁלְטָנֵךְ לְסוֹף אַרְעָא)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and your dominion has reached to the end of the earth]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O king	Your Majesty
to the heavens	the sky
and your dominion	It is as if you rule everything
the earth	the world

Daniel 4:23

ULT	UST
And that the king saw a watcher and a holy one coming down from the heavens and saying, ‘Cut down the tree and destroy it, but leave the stump of its roots in the earth, and with a band of iron and bronze, in the grass of the field, and let it be wet with the dew of the heavens, and let its portion be with the beast of the field until that seven times pass over him,’	*But in your dream, you saw a holy angel coming down from heaven. That angel said, ‘Cut down that tree so that it does not keep growing! But leave the stump of the tree with its roots in the ground where grass grows. Fasten a band of iron and bronze around the stump {to protect it from splitting}. Let the dew that forms from the air keep it damp. Make the person {whom that tree represents} eat what wild animals do for seven years.’*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	you
and a holy one	a … angel
the heavens	heaven
and destroy it	so that it does not keep growing
leave	leave
in the earth	in the ground
iron	iron
and bronze	and bronze
the heavens	the air
the beast of	animals
times	years

Daniel 4:24

ULT	UST
this {is} the interpretation, O king, and it {is} the decree of the Most High that has come upon my lord the king,	*This is what your dream means, Your Majesty. It shows what the Supreme God has decided will happen to you.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{is} the interpretation	is what your dream means
O king	Your Majesty
and … {is} the decree of	shows what … has decided
the Most High	the Supreme God
my lord	you
the king	you

Daniel 4:25

ULT	UST
that they will be driving you from man, and your dwelling will be with the beast of the field. And they will feed you grass like oxen, and they will be wetting you with the dew of the heavens. And seven times will pass over you until that you know that the Most High {is} ruler over the kingdom of man and to whom that he wishes, he gives it.	*{You will no longer have a human mind, and so} you will no longer live among people. Instead, you will live with wild animals. This will require you to eat grass as oxen do. The dew that forms from the air will make your body damp. You will live that way for seven years, until you recognize that the Supreme God rules over human kingdoms. He chooses who will be their kings.*

ULT **that they will be driving you from man … And they will feed you grass like oxen, and they will be wetting you with the dew of the heavens**

UST {You will no longer have a human mind, and so} you will no longer live among people … This will require you to eat grass as oxen do. The dew that forms from the air will make your body damp

(וְלָךְ טָרְדִין מִן־אֱנָשָׁא & וְעִשְׂבָּא כְתוֹרִין ו לָךְ יְטַעֲמוּן וּמִטַּל שְׁמַיָּא לָךְ מְצַבְּעִין)

In each of these instances, the pronoun **they** does not refer to specific people. Daniel is using it to describe what will happen to the king. In some languages, it may be natural to use passive verbal forms to express this meaning. Alternate translation: [you will be driven from men … And you will be fed grass like oxen, and you will be wetted with the dew of the heavens]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And they will feed you grass like oxen**

UST This will require you to eat grass as oxen do

(וְעִשְׂבָּא כְתוֹרִין ו לָךְ יְטַעֲמוּן)

The point of this comparison is that just as **oxen** eat **grass**, so the king will be made to eat grass. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [And they will make you eat grass, just as oxen eat grass]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **And seven times will pass over you**
UST You will live that way for seven years
(וְשִׁבְעָה עִדָּנִין יַחְלְפוּן עָלָיִךְ)

Daniel is using **And seven times will pass over you** as a common expression of the culture to mean “seven years will pass for you.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Seven years will go by for you] or [This will continue for seven years]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the beast of	animals
like oxen	as oxen do
the heavens	the air
times	years
you know	you recognize
the Most High	the Supreme God
{is} ruler	rules
over the kingdom of	over … kingdoms

Daniel 4:26

ULT	UST
And that they said to leave the stump of the roots of the tree, your kingdom {will be} enduring for you from that you know that the heavens {are} ruler.	*However, the angel said to leave the stump of the tree in the ground with its roots. That means that you will rule your kingdom again when you recognize that God rules over human kingdoms.*

ULT **And that they said to leave the stump of the roots of the tree, your kingdom {will be} enduring for you**

UST However, the angel said to leave the stump of the tree in the ground with its roots. That means that you will rule your kingdom again

(וְדִי אֲמַרוּ לְמִשְׁבַּק עִקַּר שָׁרְשׁוֹהִי דִּי אִילָנָא מַלְכוּתָךְ לָךְ קַיָּמָה)

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about the king's kingdom enduring before the information about leaving the stump of the roots of the tree. Alternate translation: [And your kingdom will be an enduring kingdom for you; that is what they meant when they said to leave the stump of the roots of the tree]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the heavens {are} ruler**

UST God rules over human kingdoms

(שַׁלְטָן שְׁמַיָּא)

Here, **the heavens** represents "God." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [God is ruler]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to leave	to leave … in the ground
your kingdom	your kingdom
{will be} enduring	will rule … again
you know	you recognize
the heavens	God
{are} ruler	rules over human kingdoms

Daniel 4:27

ULT	UST
Therefore, O king, may my counsel seem good to you, and may you break off your sin in righteousness and your iniquities by showing mercy to the poor, if there may be a prolonging of your prosperity."	*So that this does not happen to you, Your Majesty, please do what I advise. Stop sinning and do what is right. Stop doing oppressive things and help poor people. If you do that, perhaps you will continue to reign comfortably."*

ULT **and may you break off your sin in righteousness and your iniquities**
UST Stop sinning and do what is right. Stop doing oppressive things
(וחטיך בְּצִדְקָה פְרֻק וַעֲוֹיָתָךְ)

Here Daniel is speaking as if the king could **break off** his sin the way a person breaks off a branch from a tree. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and may you cease from your sin by doing what is right and from your iniquities]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **if**
UST If you do that, perhaps
(וְ)

Here, the term **if** marks a prolonging of your prosperity as the possible result of Nebuchadnezzar breaking off his sin to practice righteousness and his iniquity by showing mercy to the poor. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that Daniel is suggesting that this could be a result. Alternate translation: [so that]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in righteousness**
UST and do what is right
(בְּצִדְקָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **righteousness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [by doing what is right]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the poor**
UST poor people
(עֲנִיִּין)

Daniel is using the adjective **the poor** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [those who are poor]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O king	Your Majesty
my counsel	what I advise
may … seem good	please do
and … your sin	sinning
in righteousness	and do what is right
and your iniquities	doing oppressive things
by showing mercy to	and help
of your prosperity	to reign comfortably

Daniel 4:28

ULT	UST
The whole came upon King Nebuchadnezzar.	*But everything that the dream depicted happened to King Nebuchadnezzar.*

ULT The whole came upon King Nebuchadnezzar
UST But everything that the dream depicted happened to King Nebuchadnezzar
(כֻּלָּא מְטָא עַל־נְבוּכַדְנֶצַּר מַלְכָּא)

Nebuchadnezzar is the one telling this account, but he speaks of himself in the third person as **King Nebuchadnezzar**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [Everything from the dream came upon me, King Nebuchadnezzar]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar

Daniel 4:29

ULT	UST
At the end of 12 months, he was walking upon the palace of the kingdom of Babylon.	*A year later, he was walking around on the flat roof of his royal palace in Babylon.*

ULT At the end of 12 months
UST A year later
(לְקָצַת יַרְחִין תְּרֵי־עֲשַׂר)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the phrase translated as **At the end of 12 months** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
months	A year later
the palace of	the flat roof of his … palace
the kingdom	royal
Babylon	Babylon

Daniel 4:30

ULT	UST
The king answered and was saying, "{Is} this not the great Babylon, which I, I have built it for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power and for the glory of my majesty?"	*As he looked out over the city, he said aloud, "This is the great city of Babylon that I have built as the place where I rule! I have built it by my own great power to show people what a glorious king I am!"*

ULT **{Is} this not the great Babylon, which I, I have built it for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power and for the glory of my majesty**
UST This is the great city of Babylon that I have built as the place where I rule! I have built it by my own great power to show people what a glorious king I am
(הֲלָא דָא־הִיא בָּבֶל רַבְּתָא דִּי־אֲנָה בְנֵיתַהּ לְבֵית מַלְכוּ בְּתֻקֶף חִסְנִי וְלִיקָר הַדְרִי)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the question form to boast about what he has accomplished. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [This is indeed the great Babylon, which I myself have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power and for the glory of my majesty!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **which I, I have built it**
UST that I have built … I have built it
(דִּי־אֲנָה בְנֵיתַהּ)

It might seem that the expression **which I, I have built it** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [which I have built]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **I, I have built it**
UST I have built … I have built it
(אֲנָה בְנֵיתַהּ)

Nebuchadnezzar is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **have built** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he himself is the one who built this great city, showing his pride in his own achievement. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [which I myself have built it]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The king	he
the … Babylon	the … city of Babylon
for the house of	as the place where
the kingdom	I rule
by the might of	by my own … power
and for the glory of	glorious
my majesty	to show people what a … king I am

Daniel 4:31

ULT	UST
The word {was} still in the mouth of the king; a voice fell from the heavens: "To you they are saying, O King Nebuchadnezzar, 'The kingdom has passed from you.	*While he was still saying that, someone spoke to him from heaven. He said, "King Nebuchadnezzar, this decree is about you: you are no longer the ruler of this kingdom!*

ULT The word {was} still in the mouth of the king
UST While he was still saying that
(עֹוד מִלְּתָא בְּפֻם מַלְכָּא)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the expression **still in the mouth of the king** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the king was still speaking." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The king was still speaking these words]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	he
the heavens	heaven
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
The kingdom	this kingdom

Daniel 4:32

ULT	UST
And they will be driving you from man, and your dwelling will be with the beast of the field. They will feed you grass like oxen, and seven times will pass over you until that you know that the Most High {is} ruler over the kingdom of man, and to whom that he wishes, he gives it.’”	*You will no longer live among people. Instead, you will live with wild animals. This will require you to eat grass as oxen do. You will live that way for seven years, until you recognize that the Supreme God rules over human kingdoms. He chooses who will be their kings.”*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the beast of	animals
like oxen	as oxen do
times	years
you know	you recognize
the Most High	the Supreme God
{is} ruler	rules
over the kingdom of	over … kingdoms

Daniel 4:33

ULT	UST
In that moment, the word finished against Nebuchadnezzar. And he was driven from man, and he ate grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of the heavens until that his hair had become great like eagles and his nails, like birds.	*Immediately what this person had said happened to me, Nebuchadnezzar. I no longer lived among people. Instead, I ate grass as oxen do. The dew that forms from the air made my body damp. I lived like that until my hair became as long as eagles' feathers. My fingernails became like birds' claws.*

ULT **And he was driven from man, and he ate grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of the heavens**

UST I no longer lived among people. Instead, I ate grass as oxen do. The dew that forms from the air made my body damp

(וּמִן־אֲנָשָׁא טְרִיד וְעִשְׂבָּא כְתוֹרִין יֵאכֻל וּמִטַּל שְׁמַיָּא גִּשְׁמֵהּ יִצְטַבַּע)

The expressions **was driven** and **was wet** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And people drove him away from man, and he ate grass like oxen, and the dew of the heavens made his body wet]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his hair had become great like eagles and his nails, like birds**

UST my hair became as long as eagles' feathers. My fingernails became like birds' claws

(שַׂעֲרֵהּ כְּנִשְׁרִין רְבָה וְטִפְרוֹהִי כְּצִפְּרִין)

The point of this comparison is that just as **eagles** have long feathers and **birds** have long claws, so the king's hair and nails grew very long. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [his hair had grown very long, as long as the feathers of eagles, and his nails had grown very long, as long as the claws of birds]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
moment	Immediately
Nebuchadnezzar	to
like oxen	as oxen do
the heavens	the air
like eagles	eagles' feathers

Daniel 4:34

ULT	UST
But at the end of the days, I, Nebuchadnezzar, raised my eyes toward the heavens, and my reason returned to me. And I blessed the Most High, and I praised and glorified the one living forever. For his dominion is a dominion of eternity, and his kingdom {is} with generation and generation.	*But at the end of those seven years, I, Nebuchadnezzar, prayed to God, and he gave me a human mind again. Then I worshiped the Supreme God, and I praised and honored him, who lives forever. He will rule forever; indeed, he will be the king of every generation of people.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the days	those seven years
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
toward the heavens	to God
I blessed	I worshiped
And … the Most High	Then … the Supreme God
I praised	and I praised
and glorified	and honored
and glorified	and honored
forever	forever
his dominion	He will rule
is a dominion of	He will rule
eternity	forever
and his kingdom	indeed, he will be the king
generation	every generation of people

Daniel 4:35

ULT	UST
And all of the dwellers of the earth are being regarded {as} nothing, and as he wishes, he is doing among the army of the heavens and the dwellers of the earth. And there is none who strikes his hand or says to him, "What are you doing?"	*Compared with him, all the people in the world are insignificant. He does whatever he wants with the angels in heaven and with us people who live on the earth. No one can stop him from doing what he wants or tell him, "You may not do that."*

ULT **And all of the dwellers of the earth are being regarded {as} nothing**
UST Compared with him, all the people in the world are insignificant
(וְכָל־דארי אַרְעָא֙ כְּלָ֣ה חֲשִׁיבִ֔ין)

The expression **are being regarded** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And God regards all of the dwellers of the earth as nothing]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **among the army of the heavens**
UST with the angels in heaven
(בְּחֵ֣יל שְׁמַיָּ֔א)

Here Nebuchadnezzar is speaking as if the beings in the heavens were an **army**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [among the beings who live in the heavens]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And there is none who strikes his hand**
UST No one can stop him from doing what he wants
(וְלָ֤א אִיתַי֙ דִּֽי־יְמַחֵ֣א בִידֵ֔הּ)

Nebuchadnezzar is using the expression **strikes his hand** as a common expression of the culture to mean "restrains him or stops him from acting." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And there is none who holds him back]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **What are you doing**
UST You may not do that
(מָה עֲבַדְתְּ)

Anyone who would say this to God would be using the question form to challenge or rebuke him. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You have no right to do this!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the earth	the world
the heavens	in heaven

Daniel 4:36

ULT	UST
At that time my reason returned to me, and for the glory of my kingdom, my majesty and my splendor returned to me. And my counselors and my nobles sought me, and my kingdom was established to me, and exceeding greatness was added to me.	*Then I was able to think reasonably again. I became the very powerful ruler of a glorious kingdom once more. My advisors and my nobles treated me respectfully again. Once more I ruled my kingdom firmly, and I became much more powerful than I had been before.*

ULT **and my kingdom was established to me, and exceeding greatness was added to me**
UST Once more I ruled my kingdom firmly, and I became much more powerful than I had been before
(וְעַל־מַלְכוּתִי הָתְקְנַת וּרְבִו יַתִּירָה הוֹסְפַת לִי)

The expressions **was established** and **was added** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and God established my kingdom for me and gave exceeding greatness to me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
time	Then
and for the glory of	glorious
my kingdom	of a … kingdom
my majesty	became the very powerful ruler
and my splendor	became the very powerful ruler
And my counselors	My advisors
and my nobles	and my nobles
sought	treated … respectfully again
my kingdom	my kingdom
was established	I ruled … firmly

Daniel 4:37

ULT	UST
Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, am praising and exalting and glorifying the King of the heavens, for all of his deeds are truth and his ways are justice, and {those} who are walking about in pride, he is able to humble.	*Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, greatly praise and honor God, the king who rules in heaven. Everything that he does is right, and he always treats people fairly. When people become too proud, he is able to humble them.*

ULT **am praising and exalting and glorifying**
UST greatly praise and honor
(מְשַׁבַּח וּמְרוֹמֵם וּמְהַדַּר)

The terms **praising** and **exalting** and **glorifying** mean similar things. Nebuchadnezzar is using the three terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [am greatly praising the King of the heavens]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **all of his deeds are truth**
UST Everything that he does is right
(כָּל־מַעֲבָדוֹהִי קְשׁוֹט)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **truth**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [all of his deeds are true]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and his ways are justice**
UST and he always treats people fairly
(וְאׇרְחָתֵהּ דִּין)

Here Nebuchadnezzar is speaking as if the way God acts were the **ways** or paths on which God travels. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and everything he does is just]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT and {those} who are walking about in pride
UST When people become too proud
(וְדִי֙ מַהְלְכִ֣ין בְּגַוָּֽה)

Here Nebuchadnezzar is speaking as if the ways people behave were **walking about**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and those who conduct themselves with pride]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
am praising	greatly praise
and exalting	greatly praise
and glorifying	and honor
the King of	God, the king
the heavens	who rules in heaven
are justice	fairly
in pride	proud
to humble	to humble them

Daniel 5

Daniel 5 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. At a feast that Belshazzar gives, a hand writes something on the palace wall (1–6)
2. No one else can read the writing, but the queen mother recommends Daniel (7–12)
3. Daniel reads and interprets the writing (13–28)
4. Belshazzar rewards Daniel, but he is killed that night by the invading Persians (29–30)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Why did Belshazzar want to drink from vessels from the Jerusalem temple?

Belshazzar and his guests used vessels from the Jerusalem temple to drink toasts in honor of the gods their idols represented. This was most likely a deliberate act repudiating the God of that temple in favor of traditional Babylonian gods. Daniel reminds Belshazzar that he knew all about how his grandfather Nebuchadnezzar had come to honor and worship that God as the true God. But many interpreters suggest that, with the Babylonians now under dire threat from the Persians, Belshazzar believed that if he returned to his traditional gods, they would rescue him and his kingdom. In this culture, when one kingdom conquered another, it would take the idols of the conquered kingdom and put them in the temple of one of its own gods as trophies of victory. There were no idols representing Yahweh, so the Babylonians took the vessels from his temple instead. It appears that Nebuchadnezzar had kept these in a temple and not used them for common purposes. Belshazzar, by using them at a banquet to drink toasts to false gods, was defiling them. That is why he came under such serious and immediate judgment.

Translation Issues in This Chapter

Mene, Mene, Tekel, and Parsin

No one could read what the writing on the wall said, so it is probable that it was written in some language and script other than the Aramaic that was spoken in Babylon. God enabled Daniel to understand what the writing was saying, and he translated it into Aramaic words. The meaning of these words is evident from what Daniel says about them: “mene” means to “number,” “tekel” means to “weigh,” and “peres” means to “divide.” (The term “mene” is probably repeated for emphasis, to show the certainty of God’s judgment against Belshazzar. “Parsin” in verse 25 is the plural of “peres” in verse 28.) The ULT and UST texts write these Aramaic words with English letters, spelling them the way they sound in English. Translators are encouraged to write these words with the letters of their own alphabets and to spell them the way they sound in their own languages.

Daniel 5:1

ULT	UST
King Belshazzar made a great feast for his nobles, a thousand, and he drank wine before the thousand.	*King Belshazzar {of Babylon} invited a thousand of his officials to a great feast. He drank a lot of wine with them.*

ULT Belshazzar
UST Belshazzar {of Babylon}
(בֵּלְשַׁאצַּר)

The word **Belshazzar** is the name of a man.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT a thousand
UST a thousand of
(אֶלֶף)

Daniel is using the adjective **thousand** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [a thousand of them]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT King Belshazzar made a great feast for his nobles, a thousand
UST King Belshazzar {of Babylon} invited a thousand of his officials to a great feast
(בֵּלְשַׁאצַּר מַלְכָּא עֲבַד לְחֶם רַב לְרַבְרְבָנוֹהִי אֶלֶף)

Belshazzar is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. He means that he made a feast for a thousand of his nobles. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [King Belshazzar made a great feast for a thousand of his nobles]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
a … feast	a … feast
for his nobles	his officials
wine	a lot of wine

Daniel 5:2

ULT	UST
Belshazzar said in the taste of the wine to bring the vessels of gold and silver that Nebuchadnezzar his father had taken out from the temple that {was} in Jerusalem so that the king and his nobles, his wives and his concubines might drink from them.	*He became drunk, and he commanded his servants to bring the gold and silver cups that his grandfather, Nebuchadnezzar, had taken from the temple in Jerusalem. He wanted to drink from them with his officials, his wives, and his concubines.*

ULT **in the taste of the wine**
UST became drunk
(בְּטַעֲם חַמְרָא)

Daniel is using the phrase **in the taste of the wine** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Belshazzar was under the influence of the wine that he had been drinking. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Belshazzar became drunk and said] or [while under the influence of the wine]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Belshazzar said in the taste of the wine**
UST He became drunk, and he commanded his servants
(בֵּלְשַׁאצַּר אֲמַר ׀ בְּטַעֲם חַמְרָא)

Elsewhere in Daniel and Ezra, in the Aramaic portions of Scripture, the term that the ULT translates here as **taste** means “command” or “decree.” While many interpreters favor “taste” here, the sense of “command” would also suit the context and have the same basic meaning. Alternate translation: [Belshazzar said by command of the wine]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Nebuchadnezzar his father**
UST his grandfather, Nebuchadnezzar
(נְבוּכַדְנֶצַּר אֲבוּהִי)

Belshazzar is using the term **father** to mean “grandfather,” or more generally, “ancestor.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Nebuchadnezzar his grandfather]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **so that the king and his nobles, his wives and his concubines might drink from them**

UST He wanted to drink from them with his officials, his wives, and his concubines
(וְיִשְׁתְּוֹן בְּהוֹן מַלְכָּא וְרַבְרְבָנוֹהִי שַׁגְלַתֵּהּ וּלְחַנָתֵהּ)

Drinking from these **vessels** was a symbolic action by which the king mocked the God whose temple was in Jerusalem. Verse 4 makes clear that the Belshazzar wanted to honor his own idols rather than God, whom his grandfather Nebuchadnezzar had learned to fear and honor. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text or in a footnote.

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wine	became drunk
gold	gold
and silver	and silver
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar
the temple	the temple
{was} in Jerusalem	in Jerusalem
the king	He
and his nobles	with his officials
and his concubines	and his concubines

Daniel 5:3

ULT	UST
Then they brought the vessels of gold that he had taken out from the temple of the house of God that {was} in Jerusalem, and the king and his nobles, his wives and his concubines drank from them.	*So his servants brought in the gold cups that Nebuchadnezzar's solders had taken from the temple where God had been present in Jerusalem. Then the king, his officials, his wives, and his concubines drank wine from those cups.*

ULT **Then they brought**
UST So his servants brought in
(בֵּאדַיִן הַיְתִיו)

The pronoun **they** refers to the servants of the king. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Then the king's servants brought]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the temple of the house of God**
UST the temple where God had been present
(הֵיכְלָא דִי־בֵית אֱלָהָא)

Daniel is using the possessive form to describe a **temple** that is characterized by being a **house** for **God**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the temple that was the house of God]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
the temple	the temple
the house of God	God had been present
{was} in Jerusalem	in Jerusalem
the king	the king
and his nobles	his officials
and his concubines	and his concubines

Daniel 5:4

ULT	UST
They drank wine, and they praised the gods of gold and silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone.	*They drank toasts to honor their gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone idols.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
They drank	They drank
wine	toasts
and they praised	to honor
the gods of	their … idols
gold	gold
and silver	silver
bronze	bronze
iron	iron
and stone	and stone

Daniel 5:5

ULT	UST
In that moment, the fingers of the hand of a man came out, and they were writing, before the lampstand, on the plaster of the wall of the palace of the king. And the king was seeing the palm of the hand that was writing.	*Suddenly the fingers of a man's hand appeared. They started writing on the plaster of a section of the wall of the royal palace. A lamp was shining on that section, so the king could see the palm of the hand as it was writing.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
moment	Suddenly
the lampstand	A lamp was shining on that section
the palace	the … palace
the king	royal
the palm of	the palm of

Daniel 5:6

ULT	UST
Then the king, his splendors changed {for} him, and his thoughts alarmed him. And the joints of his loins were loosened, and his knees knocked, this to this.	*That made him very afraid, and his face turned pale. His knees started shaking, and his legs became so weak that he could not stand up.*

ULT his splendors changed {for} him
UST and his face turned pale
(זִיוָהִי שְׁנֹוהִי)

Daniel is using the phrase **his splendors changed** as a common expression of the culture to mean that the king's face turned pale. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the color drained from his face]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT And the joints of his loins were loosened
UST and his legs became so weak that he could not stand up
(וְקִטְרֵי חַרְצֵהּ מְשְׁתָּרַיִן)

Daniel is using the phrase **the joints of his loins were loosened** as a common expression of the culture to mean that the king suddenly became weak with fear. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And his body became weak with terror]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT were loosened
UST and his legs became so weak that he could not stand up
(מְשְׁתָּרַיִן)

The expression **were loosened** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [grew weak] or [came loose]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and his knees knocked, this to this**
UST His knees started shaking
(וְאַרְכֻבָתֵּהּ דָּא לְדָא נָקְשָׁן)

Daniel is using the phrase **his knees knocked, this to this** as a common expression of the culture to mean that the king's knees struck against each other because he was so afraid. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and his knees banged together in fear]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	him
his splendors	and his face
alarmed him	That made … very afraid
his loins	and his legs became so weak that he could not stand up

Daniel 5:7

ULT	UST
The king called out in strength to bring in the enchanters, the Chaldeans, and the diviners. The king answered and was saying to the wise men of Babylon that, "Any man who reads this writing and shows me its interpretation shall wear purple, and a chain of gold {shall be} around his neck, and he shall rule {as} the third in the kingdom."	*He shouted loudly to tell his servants to bring in his magicians, advisors, and fortunetellers. He said, "If any of them can read this writing and tell me what it means, I will give him a purple robe to wear. I will also give him a gold chain to put around his neck. I will also make him the most powerful ruler in my kingdom except for me and the crown prince."*

ULT **The king called out in strength**
UST He shouted loudly
(קָרֵא מַלְכָּא בְּחַיִל)

Daniel is using the phrase **The king called out in strength** as a common expression of the culture to mean that the king raised his voice. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The king called out with a loud voice]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Any man who reads this writing**
UST any … can read this writing
(כָּל־אֱנָשׁ דִּי־יִקְרֵה כְתָבָה דְנָה)

The king is not referring to a specific **man**. He means people in general. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use an expression that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Whoever reads this writing]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **and shows me its interpretation**
UST and tell me what it means
(וּפִשְׁרֵהּ יְחַוִּנַנִי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and shows me what it means]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **shall wear purple, and a chain of gold {shall be} around his neck**
UST I will give him a purple robe to wear. I will also give him a gold chain to put around his neck
(אַרְגְּוָנָא יִלְבַּשׁ והמונכא דִּי־דַהֲבָא עַל־צַוְּארֵהּ)

These were symbols of high rank and authority. Alternate translation: [shall be granted high rank]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and he shall rule {as} the third in the kingdom**
UST I will also make him the most powerful ruler in my kingdom except for me and the crown prince
(וְתַלְתָּי בְּמַלְכוּתָא יִשְׁלַט)

If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **third**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [and only two others shall rule above him in the kingdom]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The king	He
called out	shouted
the Chaldeans	advisors
and the diviners	and fortunetellers
to the wise men of	of them
Babylon	of them
and … its interpretation	what it means
purple	a purple robe
gold	gold
he shall rule	I will also make him the … ruler
in the kingdom	in my kingdom

Daniel 5:8

ULT	UST
Then all of the wise men of the king were coming in, but they were not being able to read the writing or to make the king know the interpretation.	*Then all the wise men whom the king had summoned came in. But none of them could read the writing or tell him what it meant.*

ULT **or to make the king know the interpretation**
UST or tell him what it meant
(ופשרא לְהוֹדָעָה לְמַלְכָּא)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [or to tell the king what it meant]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wise men of	the wise men
the king	whom the king had summoned
to make … know	tell
or … the interpretation	or … what it meant

Daniel 5:9

ULT	UST
Then King Belshazzar was being alarmed greatly, and his splendors were changing upon him, and his nobles were being perplexed.	*This made King Belshazzar even more afraid. His face became even paler. The officials he had invited to the feast did not know what to do.*

ULT **King Belshazzar was being alarmed greatly, and his splendors were changing upon him, and his nobles were being perplexed**

UST This made King Belshazzar even more afraid. His face became even paler. The officials he had invited to the feast did not know what to do

(מַלְכָּא בֵלְשַׁאצַּר שַׂגִּיא מִתְבָּהַל וְזִיוֵהִי שָׁנַיִן עֲלֹוהִי וְרַבְרְבָנוֹהִי מְשְׁתַּבְּשִׁין)

The expressions **was being alarmed** and **were being perplexed** are passive verbal forms. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express these ideas in active form or in another way that would be more natural in your language. Alternate translation: [King Belshazzar felt great alarm, and his splendors were changing upon him, and his nobles felt perplexity]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
was being alarmed	This made … afraid
and his splendors	His face
and his nobles	The officials he had invited to the feast

Daniel 5:10

ULT	UST
The queen came in to the house of the banquet because of the words of the king and his nobles. The queen answered and said, "O king, live to eternities! May your thoughts not alarm you, and may your splendors not be changed.	*The king's mother learned that the king and his nobles were talking about what to do. So she came into the room where they were having the feast. She said to Belshazzar, "Your Majesty, I hope that you will live for a very long time! Please do not let this frighten you and make your face turn pale.*

ULT **The queen**
UST The king's mother
(מַלְכְּתָּא)

The implication is that this woman was the queen mother, that is, the mother of the king, since the king's wives were already present at the feast. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [The mother of the king came in]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **O king, live to eternities**
UST Your Majesty, I hope that you will live for a very long time
(מַלְכָּא לְעָלְמִין חֱיִי)

The queen is using the expression **live to eternities** as a common expression of the culture to express a respectful wish that the king would have a long and prosperous life. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [O king, may you enjoy long life and prosperity]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and may your splendors not be changed**
UST and make your face turn pale
(וְזִיוָיךְ אַל־יְשַׁתַּנּוֹ)

The expression **may your splendors not be changed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and do not let your face lose its color]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The queen	The king’s mother
to the house of	the room where they were having
the banquet	the feast
the king	the king
and his nobles	and his nobles
to eternities	for a very long time
May … alarm you	do … let this frighten you
your splendors	and … your face

Daniel 5:11

ULT	UST
There is a man in your kingdom in whom {is} the spirit of the holy gods. And in the days of your father, light and understanding and wisdom like the wisdom of the gods were found in him. And King Nebuchadnezzar, your father, your father the king, set him up {as} chief of the magicians, enchanters, Chaldeans, diviners,	*There is a man in your kingdom who has the spirit of the holy gods in him. When your grandfather Nebuchadnezzar was ruling, they discovered that this man could understand many things. He was very wise, like the gods. Your grandfather King Nebuchadnezzar, who was one of the kings before you, made him the leader of all the different wise men of Babylon.*

> ULT **{is} the spirit of the holy gods**
> UST the spirit of the holy gods
> (רוּחַ אֱלָהִין קַדִּישִׁין)

The queen is using the possessive form to describe a **spirit** that is characterized by coming from **the holy gods**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [is a spirit that comes from the holy gods]

Support Reference: Possession

> ULT **light and understanding and wisdom**
> UST could understand many things. He was very wise
> (נְהִירוּ וְשָׂכְלְתָנוּ וְחָכְמָה)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **light**, **understanding**, and **wisdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [abilities to enlighten and to understand and to be wise]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **light**
> UST could understand many things
> (נְהִירוּ)

The queen is speaking as if the ability to understand things were **light**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [insight]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and wisdom like the wisdom of the gods**
UST He was very wise, like the gods
(וְחָכְמָה כְּחָכְמַת־אֱלָהִין)

The point of this comparison is that just as **the gods** were thought to have perfect wisdom, so this man had extraordinary **wisdom**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and wisdom as extraordinary as the wisdom that the gods were thought to have]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **were found in him**
UST they discovered that this man
(הִשְׁתְּכַחַת בֵּהּ)

The expression **were found in him** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [showed themselves in him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And King Nebuchadnezzar, your father, your father the king**
UST Your grandfather King Nebuchadnezzar, who was one of the kings before you
(וּמַלְכָּא נְבֻכַדְנֶצַּר אֲבוּךְ אֲבוּךְ מַלְכָּא)

The queen is repeating the information that Nebuchadnezzar was an illustrious predecessor of Belshazzar in order to emphasize the qualifications of Daniel. If your language can repeat information for emphasis, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the emphasis. Alternate translation: [And your grandfather, King Nebuchadnezzar, that great emperor]

Support Reference: Reduplication

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in your kingdom	in your kingdom
{is} the spirit of	the spirit of
holy	holy
the … gods	the … gods
And in the days of	When … was ruling
and understanding	could understand many things
and wisdom	He was very wise
like the wisdom of	like
the gods	the gods
And King	King
Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar

ULT	UST
your father	Your grandfather
the king	who was one of the kings
{as} chief of	the leader of
the magicians	all the different wise men of Babylon
Chaldeans	all the different wise men of Babylon
diviners	all the different wise men of Babylon

Daniel 5:12

ULT	UST
all before that an excellent spirit and knowledge and understanding, interpreting of dreams and solving of riddles and loosening of knots, were found in him, Daniel, whom the king made his name Belteshazzar. Now let Daniel be called, and he will show the interpretation."	*Nebuchadnezzar did that because he has very good character. He can learn and understand many things. He is able to say what dreams mean. He can solve puzzles and explain things that are very difficult to understand. That man is Daniel. The king gave him a new name, Belteshazzar. If you summon Daniel, he will tell you what this writing means."*

ULT **all before that**
UST Nebuchadnezzar did that because
(כָּל־קָבֵל דִּי)

Here, the phrase **all before that** introduces the reason why the queen says the king should summon Daniel, namely that Daniel has these exceptional abilities. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a reason.

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **and loosening of knots**
UST and explain things that are very difficult to understand
(וּמְשָׁרָא קִטְרִין)

Here the queen is speaking as if solving difficult problems were **loosening of knots**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [untangling difficult problems] or [solving difficult problems]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Belteshazzar**
UST Belteshazzar
(בֶּלְטְשַׁאצַּר)

The word **Belteshazzar** is the Babylonian name of Daniel.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Now**
UST If
(כְּעַן)

The queen is using the term **Now** to focus her listeners' attention on what she is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [So]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **let Daniel be called**
UST you summon Daniel
(דָּנִיֵּאל יִתְקְרֵי)

The expression **let Daniel be called** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [have someone call Daniel]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an … spirit	has very good character
and knowledge	He can learn
and understanding	and understand many things
interpreting of	He is able to say what … mean
dreams	dreams
Daniel	That man is Daniel
the king	The king
let … be called	you summon

Daniel 5:13

ULT	UST
Then Daniel was brought in before the king. The king answered and was saying to Daniel, "Are you Daniel, who {is} from the sons of the captivity of Judah that my father the king brought from Judah?	*So the king had his servants bring Daniel to him. The king said to him, "You must be Daniel. I understand that you are one of the Judeans whom the soldiers of my grandfather Nebuchadnezzar brought here as prisoners from Judah.*

ULT **Then Daniel was brought in**
UST So the king had his servants bring Daniel
(בֱּאַדַיִן דָּנִיֵּאל הֵעַל)

The expression **Then Daniel was brought in** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Then they brought Daniel in]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the sons of the captivity of Judah that**
UST the Judeans whom … as prisoners
(בְּנֵי גָלוּתָא דִּי יְהוּד דִּי)

The king is using the phrase **the sons of the captivity of Judah** as a common expression of the culture to refer to the people who had been taken away from Judah as captives. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the Judean captives whom]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Are you Daniel, who {is} from the sons of the captivity of Judah that my father the king brought from Judah**
UST You must be Daniel. I understand that you are one of the Judeans whom the soldiers of my grandfather Nebuchadnezzar brought here as prisoners from Judah
(אנתה־הוּא דָּנִיֵּאל דִּי־מִן־בְּנֵי גָלוּתָא דִּי יְהוּד דִּי הַיְתֵי מַלְכָּא אֲבִי מִן־יְהוּד)

The king is using the question form to express his certainty about Daniel's identity, not to request information. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [So you are Daniel, who is from the sons of the captivity of Judah that my father the king brought from Judah!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the king	him
the sons of the captivity	as prisoners
Judah	the Judeans

Daniel 5:14

ULT	UST
Now I have heard about you that the spirit of the gods {is} in you and light and understanding and excellent wisdom are found in you.	*I have heard that the spirit of the gods is in you, that you are very intelligent, and that you are very wise.*

ULT **Now I have heard about you**
UST I have heard
(וְשִׁמְעַת עֲלַיִךְ)

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **are found in you**
UST you are … you are
(הִשְׁתְּכַחַת בָּךְ)

The expression **are found in you** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [belong to you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the spirit of	the spirit of
the gods	the gods
and understanding	that … very intelligent
and … wisdom	and that … very wise

Daniel 5:15

ULT	UST
And now, the wise men, the enchanters, have been brought in before me that they might read this writing and make me know its interpretation, but they are not being able to show the interpretation of the matter.	*I want you to know that I brought in my wise men, such as my enchanters, to read this writing and tell me what it means. But they have not been able to do that.*

ULT **And now**
UST I want you to know that
(וּכְעַן)

Belshazzar is using the term **And now** to focus Daniel's attention on what he is about to say. The king introduces a major point and then his main point. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [So]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **have been brought in before me**
UST I brought in
(הַעֲלוּ קָדָמַי)

The expression **have been brought in before me** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [my servants have brought in before me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the interpretation of**
UST to do that
(פְּשַׁר)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how to interpret]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wise men	my wise men
make me know	and tell me
and … its interpretation	what it means

Daniel 5:16

ULT	UST
But I, I have heard about you, that you are able to interpret interpretations and to loosen knots. And now, if you are able to read the writing and to make me know its interpretation, you shall wear purple and a chain of gold {shall be} around your neck and you shall rule {as} the third in the kingdom."	*But then someone told me about you. You are able to say what dreams mean and explain things that are very difficult to understand. If you really can read this writing and tell me what it means, I will give you a purple robe to wear. I will also give you a gold chain to put around your neck. I will also make you the most powerful ruler in my kingdom except for me and the crown prince"*

ULT **And now**
UST really
(כְּעַן)

Again, Belshazzar is using the term **And now** to focus Daniel's attention on what he is about to say. This time he will deliver his main point. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [And so]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **But I, I have heard**
UST But then someone told me
(וַאֲנָה שְׁמַעְתְּ)

Belshazzar is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **I have heard** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that, unlike his wise men who were not able to interpret the writing, he himself has heard that Daniel is able to interpret it. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [But I myself have heard]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to interpret interpretations**
UST to say what dreams mean
(פְּשָׁרִין לְמִפְשַׁר)

The king is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root: **interpret interpretations**. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [give interpretations of difficult things]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **and to loosen knots**
UST and explain things that are very difficult to understand
(וְקִטָּרִין לְמִשְׁרֵא)

Belshazzar is speaking as if difficult problems were **knots** that needed to be loosened. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [untangle complicated problems] or [solve extremely difficult problems]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and … its interpretation**
UST what it means
(וּפִשְׁרֵהּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and interpret it]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **you shall wear purple and a chain of gold {shall be} around your neck**
UST I will give you a purple robe to wear. I will also give you a gold chain to put around your neck
(אַרְגְּוָנָא תִלְבַּשׁ והמונכא דִּי־דַהֲבָא עַל־צַוְּארָךְ)

Wearing purple clothing and a gold chain around one's neck was a symbolic action by which the king showed that Daniel would receive great honor and authority. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [I will honor you by having you wear purple and by putting a chain of gold around your neck]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to interpret	to say what … mean
to make me know	and tell me
purple	a purple robe
gold	gold
you shall rule	I will also make you the … ruler
in the kingdom	in my kingdom

Daniel 5:17

ULT	UST
Then Daniel answered and was saying before the king, "Let your gifts be for yourself, and give your rewards to another. Nevertheless, I will read the writing to the king and make him know the interpretation.	*Then Daniel replied to the king, "You may keep your gifts or give them to someone else. But I will read this writing for you and tell you what it means.*

ULT **Let your gifts be for yourself, and give your rewards to another**
UST You may keep your gifts or give them to someone else
(מַתְּנָתָךְ֙ לָךְ לֶהֱוֵ֔ן וּנְבָזְבְּיָתָ֖ךְ לְאָחֳרָ֣ן הַ֑ב)

Daniel is saying what he wants the king to do. See the discussion in the introduction to this book about "let" and follow the decision of your team of how a speaker will express in this context what he wants someone to do. Alternate translation: [You may keep your gifts for yourself, and I want you to give your rewards to another]

Support Reference: Third-Person Imperatives

ULT **and … the interpretation**
UST what it means
(וּפִשְׁרָ֖א)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [make him know what it means]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the king	the king
and … your rewards	or … them
make him know	and tell you
and … the interpretation	what it means

Daniel 5:18

ULT	UST
{As for} you, O king, the Most High God gave the kingdom and greatness and honor and majesty to Nebuchadnezzar your father.	*Your Majesty, this is why the hand wrote that for you. The Supreme God made Nebuchadnezzar, one of the men who ruled before you, a great king. People honored him and admired him.*

ULT **the kingdom and greatness and honor and majesty**
UST a great king. People honored him and admired him
(מַלְכוּתָא וּרְבוּתָא וְיֵקָרָא וְהַדְרָה)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **greatness**, **honor**, and **majesty**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the kingdom and everything that made him great and honored and majestic]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O king	Your Majesty
Most High	Supreme
the … God	The … God
the kingdom	a … king
and honor	People honored him
and majesty	and admired him
to Nebuchadnezzar	Nebuchadnezzar

Daniel 5:19

ULT	UST
And from the greatness that he gave to him, all peoples, nations, and languages were trembling and fearing from before him. Whom he was wishing, he was killing, and whom he was wishing, he was letting live. And whom he was wishing, he was lifting up, and whom he was wishing, he was humbling.	*Because God made him such a powerful king, people who came from many different nations and groups and who spoke many different languages were very afraid of him. If he wanted someone to die, he could command his soldiers to execute that person. If he wanted someone to live, he could command his soldiers not to harm that person. If he wanted to give someone an important position, he could do that. If he wanted to make someone unimportant, he could do that too.*

ULT **peoples, nations, and languages**
UST people who came from … nations and groups and who spoke … languages
(עַמְמַיָּא אֻמַּיָּא וְלִשָּׁנַיָּא)

Here, **languages** represents the people who speak those languages. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [peoples, nations, and speakers of every language]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **trembling and fearing**
UST very afraid
(זאעין וְדָחֲלִין)

The terms **trembling** and **fearing** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [extremely afraid]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **Whom he was wishing, he was killing, and whom he was wishing, he was letting live. And whom he was wishing, he was lifting up, and whom he was wishing, he was humbling**

UST If he wanted someone to die, he could command his soldiers to execute that person. If he wanted someone to live, he could command his soldiers not to harm that person. If he wanted to give someone an important position, he could do that. If he wanted to make someone unimportant, he could do that too

(דִּי־הֲוָה צָבֵא הָוָא קְטֵל וְדִי־הֲוָה צָבֵא הָוָה מַחֵא וְדִי־הֲוָה צָבֵא הָוָה מָרֵים וְדִי־הֲוָה צָבֵא הָוָה מַשְׁפִּיל)

Daniel is referring to Nebuchadnezzar's complete power over everyone by naming opposite actions: whom **he was killing** and whom **he was letting live**, and whom **he was lifting up** and whom **he was humbling**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [He had complete power over everyone, deciding whether they lived or died and whether they became important or unimportant]

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
nations	people who came from … nations
and languages	and who spoke … languages
trembling	very afraid
and fearing	very afraid
killing	to die, he could command his soldiers to execute that person
humbling	to make … unimportant, he could do that too

Daniel 5:20

ULT	UST
But because his heart lifted {itself} up and his spirit became strong to be proud, he was brought down from the throne of his kingdom and they removed his glory from him.	*However, he began to think of himself as very great. He became stubborn, and he acted arrogantly. As a result, God made him no longer the king. He was not glorious anymore.*

ULT **his heart lifted {itself} up and his spirit became strong to be proud**
UST he began to think of himself as very great. He became stubborn, and he acted arrogantly
(רֻם לִבְּבֵהּ וְרוּחֵהּ תְּקִפַת לַהֲוָדָה)

Daniel is speaking of Nebuchadnezzar becoming proud and arrogant as if **his heart lifted** itself **up and his spirit became strong to be proud**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he became very proud and stubbornly arrogant]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **he was brought down**
UST As a result, God made him no longer
(הָנְחַת)

The expression **he was brought down** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God brought him down]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the throne of his kingdom**
UST the king
(כָּרְסֵא מַלְכוּתֵהּ)

Here, **the throne of his kingdom** represents his royal power and authority as king. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [his royal authority as king]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and they removed his glory**
UST was not glorious anymore
(וְיֵקָרֵה הֶעְדִּיוּ)

Here, Daniel uses the pronoun **they** in an impersonal sense to indicate that God removed Nebuchadnezzar's glory. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and God removed his glory]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and his spirit	He became stubborn
to be proud	and he acted arrogantly
the throne of	the king
his kingdom	the king
and … his glory	glorious

Daniel 5:21

ULT	UST
And he was driven from the sons of man, and his heart resembled with an animal, and his dwelling {was} with the wild donkeys. They fed him grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of the heavens, until that he knew that the Most High God {is} ruler over the kingdom of man and whom that he wishes, he sets up over it.	*He no longer lived among people. He had a mind like an animal. He lived among wild donkeys. He ate grass as oxen do. The dew that forms from the air made his body damp. He lived that way until he recognized that the Supreme God rules over human kingdoms. He chooses who will be their kings.*

ULT **he was driven**
UST He no longer lived among
(טָרַיד)

The expression **he was driven** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God drove him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And he was driven from the sons of man, and his heart resembled with an animal, and his dwelling {was} with the wild donkeys. They fed him grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of the heavens, until that he knew that the Most High God {is} ruler over the kingdom of man and whom that he wishes, he sets up over it**
UST He no longer lived among people. He had a mind like an animal. He lived among wild donkeys. He ate grass as oxen do. The dew that forms from the air made his body damp. He lived that way until he recognized that the Supreme God rules over human kingdoms. He chooses who will be their kings
(וּמִן־בְּנֵי֙ אֲנָשָׁ֣א טְרִ֔יד וְלִבְבֵ֖ה ׀ עִם־חֵיוָתָ֣א שׁוּי֑ וְעִם־עָרְדַיָּ֣א מְדוֹרֵ֗ה עִשְׂבָּ֤א כְתוֹרִין֙ יַטְעֲמ֔וּנֵּה וּמִטַּ֥ל שְׁמַיָּ֖א גִּשְׁמֵ֣ה יִצְטַבַּ֑ע עַ֚ד דִּֽי־יְדַ֣ע דִּי־שַׁלִּ֔יט אֱלָהָ֖א עִלָּ֣יא בְּמַלְכ֣וּת אֲנָשָׁ֑א וּלְמַן־דִּ֥י יְצַבֶּ֖ה יְהָקֵ֥ים עֲלֵֽיהּ)

The pronoun **he** refers to Nebuchadnezzar, while the pronoun **he** in **whom that he wishes, he sets up over it** refers to God. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And Nebuchadnezzar was driven from the sons of man and his heart resembled with an animal and his dwelling was with the wild donkeys. They fed him grass like oxen and his body was wet with the dew of the heavens until Nebuchadnezzar knew that the Most High God is ruler over the kingdom of man and whomever God wishes, God sets up over it]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **the sons of man**
> UST people
> (בְּנֵי֮ אֲנָשָׁ֨א)

Daniel is using the phrase **the sons of man** as a common expression of the culture to mean human beings in general. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [humanity]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **and his heart resembled with an animal**
> UST He had a mind like an animal
> (וְלִבְבֵ֣הּ ׀ עִם־חֵיוְתָ֣א שוי)

The point of this comparison is that just as an **animal** thinks and acts without human reason, so Nebuchadnezzar's **heart**, or mind, became like that. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and his mind lost human reason and became like that of an animal]

Support Reference: Simile

> ULT **They fed him grass like oxen**
> UST He ate grass as oxen do
> (עִשְׂבָּ֤א כְתוֹרִין֙ יְטַ֣עֲמוּנֵּ֔הּ)

The point of this comparison is that just as **oxen** eat grass, so Nebuchadnezzar was fed **grass** to eat. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [They fed him grass to eat, just as oxen eat grass]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
an animal	an animal
the wild donkeys	wild donkeys
like oxen	as oxen do
the heavens	the air
he knew	he recognized
Most High	Supreme
the … God	the … God
{is} ruler	rules
over the kingdom of	over … kingdoms

Daniel 5:22

ULT	UST
But you, his son, Belshazzar, have not humbled your heart, all before that you knew all of this.	*You, Belshazzar, have now become the king. You knew all these things, but you have not been humble.*

ULT **But you**
UST You
(ואנתה)

Daniel uses the word **But** here to indicate a contrast between what Belshazzar knew about Nebuchadnezzar and his own failure to humble himself. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Nonetheless, you]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **have not humbled your heart**
UST you have not been humble
(לָא הַשְׁפַּלְתְּ לִבָּךְ)

Daniel is speaking of Belshazzar's refusal to become humble as if he could physically lower his own **heart**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [have not become humble]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **all before that**
UST but
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דִּי)

Daniel is using **all before that** as a common expression of the culture to mean "although." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [even though] or [despite the fact that]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
have … humbled	you have … been humble
you knew	You knew

Daniel 5:23

ULT	UST
But you have lifted yourself up against the Lord of the heavens. And the vessels of his house have been brought before you, and you and your nobles, your wives and your concubines have been drinking wine from them, and the gods of silver and gold, bronze, iron, wood, and stone, which are not seeing and are not hearing and are not knowing, you have praised, but the God who, your breath {is} in his hand and all of your ways {are} to him, you have not honored.	*Instead, you have considered yourself to be greater than God, who reigns in heaven. You have commanded your servants to bring you the cups from his temple in Jerusalem. You, your officials, your wives, and your concubines have been drinking from those cups. You have been making toasts in honor of your own gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone idols. Those idols represent gods that {are not real. They} cannot see, hear, or know anything! You have not honored the God who keeps you alive and who controls everything that happens to you.*

ULT **But you have lifted yourself up against the Lord of the heavens**
UST Instead, you have considered yourself to be greater than God, who reigns in heaven
(וְעַל מָרֵא־שְׁמַיָּא ׀ הִתְרוֹמַמְתָּ)

Daniel is speaking of Belshazzar's arrogance toward God as if he had physically **lifted** himself **up against the Lord of the heavens**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But you have acted arrogantly toward the Lord of the heavens]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **have been brought**
UST You have commanded your servants to bring
(הַיְתִיו)

The expression **have been brought** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [they have brought]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **your breath {is} in his hand**
UST keeps you alive
(נִשְׁמְתָךְ בִּידֵהּ)

Here, **your breath** represents your life, and being **in his hand** represents being under his control. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [your life is under his control]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and all of your ways {are} to him**
UST and who controls everything that happens to you
(וְכָל־אָרְחָתָךְ לֵהּ)

Daniel is speaking of everything Belshazzar does as if his actions were **ways**, or paths, that belong to God. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and everything that you do he determines]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
But … the Lord of	God, who reigns in
the heavens	heaven
his house	his temple in Jerusalem
and your nobles	your officials
and your concubines	and your concubines
wine	You have been making toasts
and the gods of	your own … idols
silver	silver
and gold	gold
bronze	bronze
iron	iron
and stone	and stone
are … knowing	know anything
you have praised	in honor of
but the God	the God
your breath	keeps you alive
you have … honored	You have … honored

Daniel 5:24

ULT	UST
Then from before him the palm of a hand was sent, and this writing was inscribed.	*So God sent this hand to write this message to you.*

ULT **was sent**
UST sent
(שְׁלַח)

The expression **was sent** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [came]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **was inscribed**
UST to write … to you
(רְשִׁים)

The expression **was inscribed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [appeared]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Daniel 5:25

ULT	UST
And this {is} the writing that was inscribed: ‘Mene,’ ‘Mene,’ ‘Tekel,’ and ‘Parsin.’	*The hand wrote these words: ‘Mene,’ ‘Mene,’ ‘Tekel,’ and ‘Parsin.’*

ULT **Mene,’ ‘Mene,’ ‘Tekel,’ and ‘Parsin**
UST Mene,’ ‘Mene,’ ‘Tekel,’ and ‘Parsin
(מְנֵא מְנֵא תְּקֵל וּפַרְסִין)

The words **Mene**, **Mene**, **Tekel**, and **Parsin** are words in the original language. You will need to decide if you will use these words in their original form or if you will instead translate their meaning into your language. Either approach has broad support. If you use the original words, you could spell them the way they sound in your language and then put the translation in a footnote. Alternate translation: [‘Numbered,’ ‘Numbered,’ ‘Weighed,’ ‘Divided.’]

Support Reference: Copy or Borrow Words

Daniel 5:26

ULT	UST
This {is} the interpretation of the matter. 'Mene': God has numbered your kingdom and ended it.	*This is what these words mean. 'Mene' means 'counted.' This means that God has counted how many days you have been king, and he has decided that there should not be any more.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
your kingdom	how many days you have been king

Daniel 5:27

ULT	UST
'Tekel': you have been weighed on the scales and found deficient.	*'Tekel' means 'weighed.' It is as if God has weighed you on a scale and found that you do not weigh what you should.*

ULT you have been weighed on the scales and found deficient
UST It is as if God has weighed you on a scale and found that you do not weigh what you should
(תְּקֵילְתָּה בְמֹאזְנַיָּא וְהַשְׁתְּכַחַתְּ חַסִּיר)

Daniel is speaking of God judging Belshazzar as if God had **weighed** him **on the scales and found** him **deficient**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [God has examined you and determined that you do not meet his standard]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT you have been weighed
UST It is as if God has weighed you
(תְּקֵילְתָּה)

The expression **you have been weighed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God weighed you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT and found deficient
UST and found that you do not weigh what you should
(וְהַשְׁתְּכַחַתְּ חַסִּיר)

The expression **found deficient** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he has found you deficient]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

Daniel 5:28

ULT	UST
‘Peres’: your kingdom has been divided and given to the Mede and the Persian.”	*‘Peres’ means ‘separated.’ God is going to separate your kingdom from you. The Medes and the Persians will conquer it, and they will rule it instead of you.”*

ULT **your kingdom has been divided and given to the Mede and the Persian**
UST God is going to separate your kingdom from you. The Medes and the Persians will conquer it, and they will rule it instead of you
(פְּרִיסַת מַלְכוּתָךְ וְיהִיבַת לְמָדַי וּפָרָס)

The implication is that God is the one who has divided the kingdom and that the Medes and the Persians will take control of it, which happened soon afterward. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [God has divided your kingdom and has given it to the Medes and the Persians, who will soon rule over it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **has been divided**
UST God is going to separate
(פְּרִיסַת)

The expression **has been divided** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [has broken apart] or [God has divided]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and given**
UST will conquer it, and they will rule it instead of you
(וְיהִיבַת)

The expression **given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and God has given it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **to the Mede and the Persian**
UST The Medes and the Persians
(לְמָדַי וּפָרָס)

In this verse, the word **Mede** is singular in form, but it refers to all of the Medes as a group, and the word **Persian** refers to all of the Persians as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "Mede" and "Persian." Alternate translation: [to the Medes and the Persians]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your kingdom	your kingdom from you
to the Mede	The Medes

Daniel 5:29

ULT	UST
Then Belshazzar spoke, and they clothed Daniel {with} purple and a chain of gold around his neck, and they made a proclamation about him, that he would be the third ruler in the kingdom.	*Then Belshazzar ordered his servants to put a purple robe on Daniel and a gold chain around his neck. He proclaimed that Daniel would be the most powerful ruler in his kingdom except for him and the crown prince*

ULT **and they clothed Daniel**
UST to put … on Daniel
(וְהַלְבִּישׁוּ לְדָנִיֵּאל)

Here, the pronoun **they** refers to the servants of Belshazzar. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and his servants clothed Daniel]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they made a proclamation**
UST He proclaimed
(וְהַכְרֵזוּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **proclamation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and they had it announced]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
{with} purple	a purple robe
gold	gold
and they made a proclamation	He proclaimed
the … ruler	the … ruler
in the kingdom	in his kingdom

Daniel 5:30

ULT	UST
In it, in the night, Belshazzar, the king {of} the Chaldeans, was killed,	*But that same night, enemy soldiers got into the city and killed Belshazzar, the king of the Chaldeans.*

ULT was killed
UST enemy soldiers got into the city and killed
(קְטִיל)

The expression **was killed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [met his death]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king {of}	the king of
the Chaldeans	the Chaldeans
was killed	enemy soldiers got into the city and killed

Daniel 5:31

ULT	UST
and Darius the Mede received the kingdom as a son of 62 years.	*Darius the Mede became the king instead. He was 62 years old.*

ULT **as a son of 62 years**
UST He was 62 years old
(כְּבַר שְׁנַיִן שִׁתִּין וְתַרְתֵּין)

Daniel is using the phrase **a son of 62 years** as a common expression of the culture to mean that Darius was 62 years old. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when he was 62 years old]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and Darius	Darius
the Mede	the Mede
received	became … instead
the kingdom	the king
years	years

Daniel 6

Daniel 6 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. King Darius appoints high officials and wants Daniel to be the highest (1–3)
2. The other officials get Darius to make a law forbidding prayer (4–9)
3. Daniel continues to pray to God, and the officials insist that Darius punish him (10–16)
4. Daniel is thrown into a den of lions, but God protects him (16–23)
5. The other officials are thrown into the den and killed, and Darius honors God (24–28)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 6:26–27.

Daniel 6:1

ULT	UST
It seemed good before Darius, and he set up 120 satraps over the kingdom, who would be in all of the kingdom,	*King Darius decided to appoint 120 satraps to govern the different parts of his kingdom.*

ULT It seemed good before Darius
UST King Darius decided
(שְׁפַר֙ קֳדָם֙ דָּרְיָ֔וֶשׁ)

The author is using **It seemed good before Darius** as a common expression of the culture to mean "Darius decided this." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Darius thought it best]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT satraps
UST satraps
(לַאֲחַשְׁדַּרְפְּנַיָּא)

Satraps were provincial governors in the ancient Persian empire, each of whom ruled one region on behalf of the king. If your readers would not be familiar with what satraps were, you could use the name of a similar kind of official that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [provincial governors]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
It seemed good	decided
Darius	King Darius
and he set up	to appoint
the kingdom	his kingdom

Daniel 6:2

ULT	UST
and above from them three sareks, among whom Daniel {was} one, to whom these satraps were to be giving account, that the king might not be suffering loss.	*He also appointed three sareks to supervise those satraps. To make sure that none of them cheated the king, those satraps had to give them regular accounts of their work. Daniel was one of the sareks.*

ULT **three sareks**
UST three sareks
(סָרְכִ֣ין תְּלָתָ֑א)

Sareks were high officials who supervised the satraps in the ancient Persian empire. If your readers would not be familiar with what sareks were, you could use the name of a similar kind of official that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [three chief administrators]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
that the king	the king
be suffering loss	To make sure that … cheated

Daniel 6:3

ULT	UST
Then this Daniel was distinguishing himself above the sareks and the satraps all before that an excellent spirit {was} in him, and the king was minded to set him up over all of the kingdom.	*Daniel had very good character, so he soon showed that he was more capable than all the satraps and the other sareks. As a result, the king planned to put him in charge of the whole kingdom.*

> ULT **all before that**
> UST so
> (כָּל־קֳבֵ֗ל דִּ֣י)

The expression **all before that** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [because]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **an excellent spirit {was} in him**
> UST had very good character
> (רֽוּחַ יַתִּירָא֙ בֵּ֔הּ)

Here, **an excellent spirit** represents "exceptional character and ability." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [he had outstanding character and ability]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
distinguishing himself	he … showed that he was more capable
an … spirit	character
and the king	As a result, the king
was minded	planned
the kingdom	the … kingdom

Daniel 6:4

ULT	UST
Then the sareks and the satraps were seeking to find an occasion against Daniel regarding the kingdom, but they were not being able to find any occasion or corrupted {thing}, all before that he could be trusted, and any negligence or corrupted {thing} was not found in him.	*Then the satraps and other sareks tried to find something they could accuse Daniel of doing wrong in his work for the king. But Daniel was very reliable, so he had not done anything negligent or corrupt. So the other royal officials could not find anything they could accuse him of doing wrong.*

ULT to find an occasion against Daniel
UST to find something they could accuse Daniel of doing wrong
(עִלָּה לְהַשְׁכָּחָה לְדָנִיֵּאל)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **occasion**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to find some way to accuse Daniel]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT all before that
UST so
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

Daniel is using **all before that** as a common expression of the culture to mean "because." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [because]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT was not found in him
UST he had not done
(לָא הִשְׁתְּכַחַת עֲלוֹהִי)

The expression **was not found in him** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [they did not find in him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
seeking	tried
against Daniel	Daniel
the kingdom	the king
or corrupted {thing}	of doing wrong
could be trusted	was very reliable

ULT	UST
or corrupted {thing}	or corrupt

Daniel 6:5

ULT	UST
Then these men were saying that, "We will not find any occasion against this Daniel unless we find {something} against him regarding the law of his God."	*So they concluded, "The only thing we will find to accuse Daniel about will be something that he has to do to obey his God."*

ULT were saying that
UST concluded
(אֲמְרִין דִּי)

Here, the word **that** introduces a direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of indicating direct quotations in your language.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT We will not find any occasion against this Daniel unless we find {something} against him
UST The only thing we will find to accuse Daniel about will be something that he has to do
(לָא נְהַשְׁכַּח לְדָנִיֵּאל דְּנָה כָּל־עִלָּא לָהֵן הַשְׁכַּחְנָה עֲלוֹהִי)

If it would appear in your language that these men were making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this as a positive statement. Alternate translation: [The only occasion we will find against this Daniel will be something]

Support Reference: Connect — Exception Clauses

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
against … Daniel	Daniel
regarding the law of	to obey
his God	his God

Daniel 6:6

ULT	UST
Then these sareks and satraps thronged to the king, and thus they were saying to him, "King Darius, live to eternities!	*So the sareks and satraps went together to the king and told him, "King Darius, we hope that you will live for a very long time!*

ULT live to eternities
UST we hope that you will live for a very long time
(לְעָלְמִין חֱיִי)

The officials are using **live to eternities** as a common expression of the culture to mean "may you live a very long time." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [may you live long]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
King	King
Darius	Darius

Daniel 6:7

ULT	UST
All of the sareks of the kingdom, the prefects and the satraps, the counselors and the governors, have consulted together that the king should establish a statute and make strong a decree that anyone who petitions a petition from any god or man for 30 days, except from you, O king, shall be thrown into a den of lions.	*All of your sareks, rulers satraps, counselors, and governors have agreed that you should make a law and enforce it strictly. Your Majesty, the law would be that for the next 30 days, no one may ask any god or man except you for anything. If anyone does that, your servants will throw him into a pit full of lions.*

ULT **petitions a petition**
UST may ask … anything
(יִבְעֵ֣ה בָּעוּ)

The officials are using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root, **petitions a petition**. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this.

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **shall be thrown into a den of lions**
UST your servants will throw him into a pit full of lions
(יִתְרְמֵ֕א לְגֹ֖ב אַרְיָוָתָ֑א)

The expression **shall be thrown into a den of lions** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [is someone whom your servants shall throw into a den of lions]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the kingdom	your
the prefects	rulers
the counselors	counselors
and the governors	and governors
the king	you
a statute	a law
a decree	strictly
god	god
days	the … days
O king	Your Majesty

ULT	UST
lions	lions

Daniel 6:8

ULT	UST
Now, O king, set up the decree and sign the writing so that one shall not change {it}, according to the law of the Mede and the Persian, which does not pass away."	*So, Your Majesty, please make this law. Have one of your scribes write it out, and then sign it. No one will then be able to change it, because the laws of the Medes and Persians are permanent."*

ULT **which does not pass away**
UST are permanent
(דִּי־לָא תֶעְדֵּא)

The officials are using **which does not pass away** as a common expression of the culture to mean "which cannot be revoked." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [which is without end]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
O king	Your Majesty
set up	please make
the decree	this law
and sign	and then sign it
according to the law of	because the laws of
the Mede	the Medes

Daniel 6:9

ULT	UST
All before this, King Darius signed the writing and the decree.	*So King Darius made the law, and when one of his scribes wrote it out, he signed it.*

ULT All before this
UST So
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

Daniel is using **All before this** as a common expression of the culture to mean “so” or “therefore.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [So then] or [Therefore]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
Darius	Darius
and the decree	made the law

Daniel 6:10

ULT	UST
And Daniel, when that he knew that the writing had been signed, went in to his house (now the windows to him in his upper chamber were opened toward Jerusalem), and three times in a day he was kneeling on his knees and praying and thanking before his God, all before that he was doing from before this.	*When Daniel learned that the king had made that law and signed it, he went home. He went to his upstairs room and opened the windows so that he could look toward Jerusalem. He knelt down and prayed and gave thanks to God. He did that three times each day, just as he had done before.*

ULT **the writing had been signed**
UST the king had made that law and signed it
(רְשִׁים כְּתָבָא)

The expression **the writing had been signed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [the king had signed the writing]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **now the windows to him in his upper chamber were opened toward Jerusalem**
UST He went to his upstairs room and opened the windows so that he could look toward Jerusalem
(וְכַוִּין פְּתִיחָן לֵהּ בְּעִלִּיְתֵּהּ נֶגֶד יְרוּשְׁלֶם)

Here the author is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **all before that**
UST He did that … just as
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דְּנָה)

Daniel is using **all before that** as a common expression of the culture to mean “just as.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [just as] or [in the same way as]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And Daniel	Daniel
he knew	learned

ULT	UST
to his house	home
Jerusalem	Jerusalem
and … times	times
in a day	each day
was kneeling	knelt
and praying	and prayed
his God	God

Daniel 6:11

ULT	UST
Then these men thronged and found Daniel petitioning and entreating before his God.	*Then the royal officials came to his house together, and they saw that he was praying to God and asking him to help him.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	he
his God	God

Daniel 6:12

ULT	UST
Then they approached and were saying before the king about the decree of the king: "Did you not sign a decree that any man who petitions from any god or man for thirty days, except from you, O king, shall be thrown into a den of lions?" The king answered and was saying, "The matter {is} certain, according to the law of the Mede and the Persian, which does not pass away."	*So they went back to the king and talked with him about the law he had made. They said, "Your Majesty, you signed a law that for the next 30 days, no one may ask any god or man except you for anything. The law said that if anyone did that, your servants would throw him into a pit full of lions." The king replied, "Yes, I made that law. And the laws of the Medes and Persians are permanent."*

ULT **Did you not sign a decree that any man who petitions from any god or man for thirty … from you, O king, shall be thrown into a den of lions**

UST Your Majesty, you signed a law that for … next 30 … no one may ask any god or man … you for anything. The law said that if anyone did that, your servants would throw him into a pit full of lions

(הֲלָא אֱסָר רְשִׁמְתְּ דִּי כָל־אֱנָשׁ דִּי־יִבְעֵהּ מִן־כָּל־אֱלָהּ וֶאֱנָשׁ עַד & תְּלָתִין & מִנָּךְ מַלְכָּא יִתְרְמֵא לְגֻב אַרְיָוָתָא)

The men are using the question form to remind the king of a decree he already made, implying that he must enforce it. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You signed a decree that any man who petitions from any god or man for thirty days, except from you, O king, shall be thrown into a den of lions!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **shall be thrown into a den of lions**

UST your servants would throw him into a pit full of lions

(יִתְרְמֵא לְגֻב אַרְיָוָתָא)

The expression **shall be thrown into a den of lions** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
the decree of	the law
a decree	a law
god	god
days	the … days
lions	lions
according to the law of	And the laws of

ULT	UST
the Mede	the Medes

Daniel 6:13

ULT	UST
Then they answered and were saying before the king that, "Daniel, who {is} from the sons of the captivity of Judah, does not set regard on you, O king, or on the decree that you have signed, but three times in a day he is petitioning his petition."	*Then they told the king, "Your Majesty, that man Daniel, who is one of the Judeans whom our soldiers brought here as prisoners, is disregarding you. He is not obeying the law that you signed. He is still praying to his God three times each day!"*

ULT **the sons of the captivity of Judah**
UST the Judeans whom our soldiers brought here as prisoners
(בְּנֵי גָלוּתָא דִּי יְהוּד)

The officials are using **the sons of the captivity of Judah** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the people who were taken away from Judah as captives." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the people who were taken away from Judah as captives]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **does not set regard on you, O king**
UST Your Majesty … is disregarding you
(לָא־שָׂם עליך מַלְכָּא טְעֵם)

The officials are using **does not set regard on you** as a common expression of the culture to mean "pays no attention to you." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [does not respect you] or [does not obey you]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
Daniel	that man Daniel
the captivity	whom our soldiers brought here as prisoners
Judah	the Judeans
the decree	the law
but … times	times
in a day	each day

Daniel 6:14

ULT	UST
Then the king, when that he heard the matter, it was greatly displeasing to him, and he set his heart on Daniel to deliver him. And until the setting of the sun, he was exerting himself to rescue him.	*When the king heard that, it distressed him greatly. He determined to save Daniel. For the rest of that day, he tried hard to find a way to rescue him.*

ULT **and he set his heart on Daniel to deliver him**
UST He determined to save Daniel
(וְעַל דָּנִיֵּאל שָׂם בֶּל לְשֵׁיזָבוּתֵהּ)

The author is using **he set his heart on Daniel to deliver him** as a common expression of the culture to mean “the king was determined to rescue Daniel.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he resolved to rescue Daniel]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
Daniel	Daniel
to deliver him	to save
to rescue him	to find a way to rescue him

Daniel 6:15

ULT	UST
Then these men thronged to the king and were saying to the king, "Know, O king, that {it is} a law to the Mede and the Persian that any decree or statute that the king establishes, one shall not change."	*But in the evening, those royal officials went back to the king together and told him, "Your Majesty, you know what our Median and Persian laws require. If the king makes any rule or law, no one can change it."*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
Know	you know
{it is} a law	our … laws require
to the Mede	Median
decree	or law

Daniel 6:16

ULT	UST
Then the king was speaking, and they brought Daniel and threw {him} into a den of lions. The king answered and was saying to Daniel, "Your God, whom you are serving him in continuance, he, may he deliver you."	*So the king gave a command, and his servants brought Daniel to him. The king told him, "I hope that your God, whom you obey so faithfully, will rescue you!" Then the servants threw Daniel into a pit full of lions.*

ULT **Then the king was speaking, and they brought Daniel and threw {him} into a den of lions. The king answered and was saying to Daniel, "Your God, whom you are serving him in continuance, he, may he deliver you**

UST So the king gave a command, and his servants brought Daniel to him. The king told him, "I hope that your God, whom you obey so faithfully, will rescue you!" Then the servants threw Daniel into a pit full of lions

(בֵּאדַ֫יִן מַלְכָּ֥א אֲמַ֗ר וְהַיְתִיו֙ לְדָ֣נִיֵּ֔אל וּרְמ֕וֹ לְגֻבָּ֖א דִּ֣י אַרְיָוָ֑תָא עָנֵ֤ה מַלְכָּא֙ וְאָמַ֣ר לְדָנִיֵּ֔אל אֱלָהָ֗ךְ דִּ֣י אנתה פָּלַ֤ח־לֵהּ֙ בִּתְדִירָ֔א הֽוּא יְשֵׁיזְבִנָּֽךְ)

You could put the information about the king speaking to Daniel before the information that they threw Daniel into the den of lions. The UST models one way to do that.

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **whom you are serving him**

UST whom you obey

(דִּ֣י אנתה פָּלַ֤ח־לֵהּ֙)

It might seem that the expression **whom you are serving him** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [whom you are serving]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
Daniel	Daniel
lions	lions
Your God	your God
are serving	obey
he, may … deliver you	I hope that … will rescue you

Daniel 6:17

ULT	UST
And a stone was brought and set over the mouth of the den, and the king sealed it with his signet ring and with the signet rings of his nobles so that the purpose should not change regarding Daniel.	*They put a large stone across the top of the pit. Then the king sealed the stone with the ring he wore that had his royal seal on it. His nobles also sealed it with their rings. That kept anyone from removing the stone and rescuing Daniel.*

ULT **And a stone was brought and set over the mouth of the den**
UST They put a large stone across the top of the pit
(וְהֵיתָ֨יִת אֶ֣בֶן חֲדָ֔ה וְשֻׂמַ֖ת עַל־פֻּ֣ם גֻּבָּ֑א)

The expression **a stone was brought and set over the mouth of the den** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And servants brought a stone and set it over the mouth of the den]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
stone	large stone
the king	the king
and … sealed it	Then … sealed the stone
his nobles	His nobles
regarding Daniel	Daniel

Daniel 6:18

ULT	UST
Then the king went to his palace and spent the night fasting. And one did not bring musical instruments before him, and his sleep departed from him.	*Then the king returned to his palace. {To show how sorry he was for Daniel,} he did not eat any food that evening, and he did not have anyone play music for him. He did not sleep that night.*

ULT **and his sleep departed from him**
UST He did not sleep that night
(וְשִׁנְתֵּהּ נִדַּת עֲלוֹהִי)

The author is speaking of **his sleep** as if it were a living thing that could depart from the king. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he was unable to sleep]

Support Reference: Personification

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
to his palace	to his palace
fasting	{To show how sorry he was for Daniel,} he did not eat any food

Daniel 6:19

ULT	UST
Then the king arose at first light, at dawn, and went in haste to the den of lions.	*As soon as it became light the next morning, the king got up and went quickly to the pit of lions.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
lions	lions

Daniel 6:20

ULT	UST
And as he came near to the den, to Daniel, he cried out in a pained voice. The king answered and was saying to Daniel, "Daniel, servant of the living God, has your God, whom you are serving him in continuance, been able to deliver you from the lions?"	*As he arrived at the pit where Daniel was, he cried out in distress. He said, "Daniel, the God whom you worship is really alive! Has your God, whom you obey so faithfully, been able to save you from the lions?"*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to Daniel	where Daniel was
he cried out	he cried out
The king	He
servant of	whom you worship
the … God	the God
are serving	obey
to deliver you	to save you
the lions	the lions

Daniel 6:21

ULT	UST
Then Daniel was speaking with the king, "O king, live to eternities!	*Daniel responded, "Your Majesty, I hope that you will live for a very long time!*

ULT **live to eternities**
UST I hope that you will live for a very long time
(לְעָלְמִין חֱיִי)

Daniel is using **live to eternities** as a common expression of the culture to mean "may you live a very long time." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [may you live long]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the king	responded
to eternities	for a very long time

Daniel 6:22

ULT	UST
My God sent his angel and shut the mouth of the lions, and they have not harmed me, all before that innocence was found to me before him, and also before you, O king, I have done no harm."	*Yes, my God sent an angel to keep the lions from harming me. They did not hurt me at all. God rescued me because he knows that I did not do anything sinful. He also knows that I have not done anything that hurt you, Your Majesty!"*

ULT **innocence was found to me before him**
UST he knows that I did not do anything sinful
(קֳדָמוֹהִי זָכוּ הִשְׁתְּכַחַת לִי)

The expression **innocence was found to me before him** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he found me to be innocent]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **all before that**
UST God rescued me because
(כָּל־קֳבֵל דִּי)

Daniel is using **all before that** as a common expression of the culture to mean "because." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [because]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
My God	Yes, my God
his angel	an angel
the lions	the lions
O king	Your Majesty

Daniel 6:23

ULT	UST
Then the king rejoiced greatly about him, and he said to bring Daniel up from the den. And Daniel was brought up from the den, and any harm was not found in him, because he had trusted in his God.	*This made the king very happy. He commanded his servants to lift Daniel up out of the pit. When they did that, they saw that the lions had not wounded him at all. Daniel had trusted God, and so God had protected him.*

ULT **And Daniel was brought up from the den**
UST When they did that
(וְהַשֵּׁק דָּנִיֵּאל מִן־גֻּבָּא)

The expression **Daniel was brought up from the den** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And the king's servants brought Daniel up from the den]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and any harm was not found in him**
UST they saw that the lions had not wounded him at all
(וְכָל־חַבָל לָא־הִשְׁתְּכַח בֵּהּ)

The expression **any harm was not found in him** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and they found no harm in him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
rejoiced	happy
and … Daniel	Daniel
he had trusted	Daniel had trusted
in his God	God

Daniel 6:24

ULT	UST
And the king spoke, and they brought those men who had eaten the pieces of Daniel, and they threw them, their sons, and their wives into the den of lions. And they had not reached the bottom of the den before that the lions overpowered them and crushed all of their bones.	*Then the king commanded his soldiers to arrest the men who had said bad things about Daniel. They threw them into the pit where the lions were. They also threw in their wives and children. While they were still tumbling toward the bottom of the pit, the lions leaped on them and tore them apart.*

ULT **who had eaten the pieces of Daniel**
UST who had said bad things about Daniel
(דִּי־אֲכַלוּ קַרְצֹוהִי דִּי דָנִיֵּאל)

The author is using **who had eaten the pieces of Daniel** as a common expression of the culture to mean “who had maliciously accused Daniel.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who had maliciously accused Daniel]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	the king
Daniel	Daniel
lions	where the lions were

Daniel 6:25

ULT	UST
Then King Darius wrote to all of the peoples, nations, and languages that were dwelling in all of the earth, "May your peace abound.	*Then King Darius sent a letter to the people who lived in his empire. They were from many different nations and groups, and they spoke many different languages. He wrote, "I hope that all is well with you.*

ULT **wrote to all of the peoples, nations, and languages that were dwelling in all of the earth, "May your peace abound**
UST sent a letter to the people who lived in his empire. They were from many different nations and groups, and they spoke many different languages. He wrote, "I hope that all is well with you
(כְּתַב לְכָל־עַמְמַיָּא אֻמַיָּא וְלִשָׁנַיָּא דִּי־דארין בְּכָל־אַרְעָא שְׁלָמְכוֹן יִשְׂגֵּא)

The quotation of the letter from King Darius may begin with **to all of the peoples** rather than with **May your peace abound**. (Compare the start of the letter from King Nebuchadnezzar in 4:1.) Alternate translation: [wrote, "To all of the peoples, nations, and languages that are dwelling in all of the earth, may your peace abound"]

Support Reference: Direct and Indirect Quotations

ULT **and languages**
UST and they spoke many different languages
(וְלִשָׁנַיָּא)

Here, **languages** represents "the people who speak those languages." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and speakers of different languages]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in all of the earth**
UST in his empire
(בְּכָל־אַרְעָא)

The author says **in all of the earth** as an extreme statement for emphasis. The people addressed lived throughout the king's empire. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [throughout the entire empire]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

> ULT **May your peace abound**
> UST I hope that all is well with you
> (שְׁלָמְכוֹן יִשְׂגֵּא)

The king is using **May your peace abound** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I wish you great well-being." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [May you prosper greatly]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
King	King
Darius	Darius
nations	They were from many different nations
and languages	and they spoke many different languages
the earth	his empire
your peace	I hope that all is well with you

Daniel 6:26

ULT	UST
From before me a decree is set that in all of the dominion of my kingdom, they shall be trembling and fearing from before the God of Daniel, for he {is} the living God and enduring to eternities, and his kingdom {is one} that will not be destroyed, and his dominion {will be} to the end,	*I am making a decree that throughout my empire, people should show great respect to the God whom Daniel worships. He is the God who is really alive, and he lives forever. No one will ever destroy his kingdom; he will rule forever.*

ULT **From before me a decree is set**
UST I am making a decree
(מִן־קֳדָמַי֙ שִׂ֣ים טְעֵ֔ם)

The expression **From before me a decree is set** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [I am making this decree]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **trembling and fearing**
UST people should show great respect
(זאעין וְדָחֲלִ֔ין)

The terms **trembling** and **fearing** mean similar things. The king is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [deeply afraid]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and enduring to eternities**
UST and he lives forever
(וְקַיָּ֖ם לְעָלְמִ֑ין)

The king is using **enduring to eternities** as a common expression of the culture to mean "existing forever." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he exists forever]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and his kingdom {is one} that will not be destroyed, and his dominion {will be} to the end**
UST No one will ever destroy his kingdom; he will rule forever
(וּמַלְכוּתֵהּ דִּי־לָא תִתְחַבַּל וְשָׁלְטָנַהּ עַד־סוֹפָא)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [and his kingdom and his rule will never come to an end]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **will not be destroyed**
UST No one will ever destroy
(לָא תִתְחַבַּל)

The expression **will not be destroyed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [no power can destroy]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a decree	a decree
the dominion of	my empire
my kingdom	my empire
trembling	people should show great respect
and fearing	people should show great respect
the God	the God
Daniel	Daniel
and enduring	and he lives
to eternities	forever
will … be destroyed	will ever destroy
and his dominion	he will rule

Daniel 6:27

ULT	UST
delivering and rescuing and doing signs and wonders in the heavens and on the earth, who delivered Daniel from the hand of the lions."	*He certainly rescues {people who trust him}. He performs great miracles in heaven and on earth. He rescued Daniel by keeping the lions from attacking him!"*

ULT **delivering and rescuing**
UST He certainly rescues {people who trust him}
(מְשֵׁיזַב וּמַצִּיל)

The terms **delivering** and **rescuing** mean similar things. The king is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [powerfully saving people]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **signs and wonders**
UST great miracles
(אָתַיִן וְתִמְהִין)

The terms **signs** and **wonders** mean similar things. The king is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [amazing miracles]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **in the heavens and on the earth**
UST in heaven and on earth
(בִּשְׁמַיָּא וּבְאַרְעָא)

The king is referring to all of creation by naming two major components, **the heavens** and **the earth**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [everywhere in creation]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **from the hand of the lions**
UST by keeping the lions from attacking him
(מִן־יַד אַרְיָוָתָא)

Here, **hand** represents "power" or "control." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from the power of the lions]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
delivering	He certainly rescues {people who trust him}
and rescuing	He certainly rescues {people who trust him}
signs	great miracles
and wonders	great miracles
in the heavens	in heaven
and on the earth	and on earth
delivered	He rescued
Daniel	Daniel
the lions	the lions

Daniel 6:28

ULT	UST
And this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.	*After this, Daniel was successful for the rest of the time that Darius was king. He was also successful during the time when Cyrus the Persian was king.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … Daniel	After this, Daniel … He
prospered	was successful … was also successful
in the reign of	for the rest of the time that … was king
Darius	Darius
Cyrus	Cyrus

Daniel 7

Daniel 7 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Narrative introduction: Daniel has a dream about four beasts (1)
2. Daniel describes his dream (2–15)
3. Daniel tells how a character in the dream explained its meaning to him (16–27)
4. Daniel concludes this account personally (28)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 7:9–10 and 7:13–14.

Translation issues in this chapter

Should translations try to identify what the beasts in this dream represent?

The character in the dream who explains its meaning to Daniel tells him, “These great beasts, which are four, are four kings arising from the earth” (7:17). Interpreters have certain understandings of what kingdoms these beasts represent, for example, that the lion represents the Babylonian Empire under Nebuchadnezzar, that the bear represents the empire of the Medes and Persians, and so forth. However, we recommend that you do not put anything in the text of your translation or even in a footnote tentatively identifying these kingdoms. Their identity is not certain, and moreover it is not the task of translators to interpret the text, only to represent what it says accurately in their own languages. We recommend similarly that you not offer interpretations of the symbols in chapters 8–12. See the discussion in the introduction to the book of Daniel, “The meaning of Daniel’s visions.”

Daniel 7:1

ULT	UST
In the year of one to Belshazzar, the king of Babylon, Daniel saw a dream and visions of his head upon his bed. Then he wrote the dream; he told the head of the matters.	*During the first year that Belshazzar was the king of Babylon, Daniel saw things in a dream one night as he was lying on his bed. The next morning, he wrote down the main points of what he had dreamed.*

ULT **In the year of one to Belshazzar, the king of Babylon**
UST During the first year that Belshazzar was the king of Babylon
(בִּשְׁנַת חֲדָה לְבֵלְאשַׁצַּר מֶלֶךְ בָּבֶל)

Daniel is using the time reference **In the year of one to Belshazzar, the king of Babylon** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **In the year of one to Belshazzar**
UST During the first year that Belshazzar
(בִּשְׁנַת חֲדָה לְבֵלְאשַׁצַּר)

In the original language, the number here is a cardinal number, **one**, that has the sense of an ordinal number, “first.” If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **one**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [In the first year of the reign of Belshazzar]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **to Belshazzar**
UST that Belshazzar
(לְבֵלְאשַׁצַּר)

The word **Belshazzar** is the name of a man.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **Daniel saw a dream and visions of his head upon his bed. Then he wrote the dream; he told the head of the matters**
UST Daniel saw things in a dream one night as he was lying on his bed. The next morning, he wrote down the main points of what he had dreamed
(דָּנִיֵּאל֙ חֵ֣לֶם חֲזָ֔ה וְחֶזְוֵ֥י רֵאשֵׁ֖הּ עַֽל־מִשְׁכְּבֵ֑הּ בֵּאדַ֨יִן֙ חֶלְמָ֣א כְתַ֔ב רֵ֥אשׁ מִלִּ֖ין אֲמַֽר)

Even though Daniel is the one who is reporting this vision, he is speaking of himself in the third person as **Daniel**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [I saw a dream and visions of my head upon my bed. Then I wrote the dream; I told the head of the matters]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and visions of his head**
UST things
(וְחֶזְוֵ֥י רֵאשֵׁ֖הּ)

Daniel is using **visions of his head** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the things that he saw while he was sleeping." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and things that he saw while sleeping]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **he told the head of the matters**
UST he wrote down the main points of
(רֵ֥אשׁ מִלִּ֖ין אֲמַֽר)

Daniel is using **the head of the matters** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the most important parts of what he had seen." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he recounted the essential points of what he had seen]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In the year of	During the … year
the king of	was the king of
Babylon	Babylon
Daniel	Daniel
a dream	in a dream

ULT	UST
and visions of	things

Daniel 7:2

ULT	UST
Daniel answered and was saying, "I was looking in my vision by night, and behold, the four winds of the heavens were stirring up the Great Sea.	*Daniel wrote, "This is what I saw in the dream I had last night. Strong winds were blowing from four directions and making big waves in the Great Sea.*

ULT **Daniel answered and was saying**
UST Daniel wrote
(עֲנֵה דָנִיֵּאל וְאָמַר)

Daniel is using the words **answered and was saying** to introduce a direct quotation of his own report, which continues to the end of this chapter. In your translation, use a natural way of indicating direct quotations in your language.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **the four winds of the heavens**
UST Strong winds were blowing from four directions
(אַרְבַּע רוּחֵי שְׁמַיָּא)

Daniel is referring to all of the directions by naming **the four winds of the heavens**, that is, the winds that blow from the four points of the compass. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [winds blowing from all directions across the sky]

Support Reference: Merism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
in my vision	in the dream I had
the … winds of	Strong winds were blowing
the heavens	Strong winds were blowing
the Great Sea	the Great Sea

Daniel 7:3

ULT	UST
And four great beasts were coming up from the sea, this being different from this.	*I saw four great beasts coming up out of the water. Each one was different from the others.*

ULT **And four great beasts were coming up from the sea**
UST I saw four great beasts coming up out of the water
(וְאַרְבַּע חֵיוָן֙ רַבְרְבָ֔ן סָלְקָ֖ן מִן־יַמָּֽא׃)

Here, **four great beasts** represent four kings and the kingdoms that they rule, as the interpretation later in this chapter explains. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could include this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [And four great beasts, which represented four kings, were coming up from the sea]

Support Reference: Symbolic Language

ULT **this being different from this**
UST Each one was different from the others
(שְׁנֵ֥ן דָּ֖א מִן־דָּֽא׃)

Daniel is using **this being different from this** as a common expression of the culture to mean “each one was different from the others.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [each one being unlike the rest]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beasts	great
the sea	the water

Daniel 7:4

ULT	UST
The first {was} like a lion, but the wings of an eagle {were} to it. I was looking until that its wings were pulled off, and it was raised from the ground, and on two feet it was stood like a man, and the heart of a man was given to it.	*The first beast looked a lion. However, it had wings like an eagle's wings. But as I watched, someone tore off its wings. Then this beast reared up and stood on two legs, as people do. It also became able to think as people do.*

ULT **The first {was} like a lion, but the wings of an eagle {were} to it. I was looking until that its wings were pulled off, and it was raised from the ground, and on two feet it was stood like a man, and the heart of a man was given to it**
UST The first beast looked a lion. However, it had wings like an eagle's wings. But as I watched, someone tore off its wings. Then this beast reared up and stood on two legs, as people do. It also became able to think as people do
(קַדְמָיְתָא כְאַרְיֵה וְגַפִּין דִּי־נְשַׁר לַהּ חָזֵה הֲוַית עַד דִּי־מְרִיטוּ גַפַּיהּ וּנְטִילַת מִן־אַרְעָא וְעַל־רַגְלַיִן כְּאֱנָשׁ הֳקִימַת וּלְבַב אֱנָשׁ יְהִיב לַהּ)

These events did not all happen at the same time; they happened one after another. Your language may have a connecting phrase that you can use to show this. Alternate translation: [The first was like a lion, but it had the wings of an eagle. I kept watching until its wings were torn off. Next, it was lifted up from the ground. After that, it was made to stand on two feet like a man. Finally, it was given the mind of a man]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **The first {was} like a lion**
UST The first beast looked a lion
(קַדְמָיְתָא כְאַרְיֵה)

The point of this comparison is that just as a **lion** is strong and majestic, so was **The first** beast that Daniel saw. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [The first was as strong and majestic as a lion]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **its wings were pulled off**
UST someone tore off its wings
(מְרִיטוּ גַפַּיהּ)

The expression **were pulled off** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone pulled off its wings]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and it was raised from the ground, and on two feet it was stood like a man**
UST Then this beast reared up and stood on two legs, as people do
(וְנִטַּיְלַת מִן־אַרְעָא וְעַל־רַגְלַיִן כְּאֱנָשׁ הֳקִימַת)

The expressions **was raised** and **was stood** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and someone raised it from the ground and made it stand on two feet like a man]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and it was raised from the ground, and on two feet it was stood like a man**
UST Then this beast reared up and stood on two legs, as people do
(וְנִטַּיְלַת מִן־אַרְעָא וְעַל־רַגְלַיִן כְּאֱנָשׁ הֳקִימַת)

The point of this comparison is that just as **a man** stands upright on two feet, so did this beast once its wings were gone. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and it was raised from the ground, and it was made to stand upright on two feet, in the way that a man stands]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and on two feet**
UST and … on two legs
(וְעַל־רַגְלַיִן)

The expression **two feet** is the dual of "feet." If your language has a dual form, it would be appropriate to use it here.

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **like a man**
UST as people do
(כְּאֱנָשׁ)

Here the masculine term **man** has a generic sense that includes both men and women. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use language in your translation that is clearly inclusive of both men and women. Alternate translation: [like a human being]

Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **and the heart of a man was given to it**
UST It also became able to think as people do
(וּלְבַב אֱנָשׁ יְהִיב לַהּ)

The expression **was given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and someone gave it the heart of a man]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the heart of a man was given to it**
UST It also became able to think as people do
(וּלְבַב אֱנָשׁ יְהִיב לַהּ)

Here Daniel is speaking as if the ability to think as a human being does were **the heart of a man**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it was given the ability to think as a man does]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{was} like a lion	looked a lion
an eagle	an eagle’s wings

Daniel 7:5

ULT	UST
And behold, another beast, a second, resembling a bear. And on one side, it was raised up. And three ribs {were} in its mouth between its teeth, and thus they were saying to it, 'Arise, devour much flesh.'	*The second beast that I saw looked like a bear. One of its sides was higher than the other. It was holding three ribs in its mouth with its teeth. Someone told it, 'Go and eat as much meat as you want!'*

ULT **resembling a bear**
UST looked like a bear
(דָּמְיָה לְדֹּב)

The point of this comparison is that just as a **bear** is heavy and powerful, so was this second beast. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [resembling a bear, which is heavy and powerful]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **And on one side, it was raised up**
UST One of its sides was higher than the other
(וְלִשְׁטַר־חַד הָקִמַת)

The expression **it was raised up** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And it raised up one of its sides]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And on one side, it was raised up**
UST One of its sides was higher than the other
(וְלִשְׁטַר־חַד הָקִמַת)

The implication is either that the beast reared up on one side as if it were ready to attack or that one of its sides was higher than the other. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And it was rearing up on one side, ready to attack]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and thus they were saying to it, ‘Arise, devour much flesh**
UST Someone told it, ‘Go and eat as much meat as you want
(וְכֵן֙ אָמְרִ֣ין לַֽהּ קוּמִ֔י אֱכְלִ֖י בְּשַׂ֥ר שַׂגִּֽיא)

There is a direct quotation inside a direct quotation here. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [and thus they were telling it to arise and devour much flesh]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **and thus they were saying to it**
UST Someone told it
(וְכֵן֙ אָמְרִ֣ין לַֽהּ)

The pronoun **they** refers to speakers whom Daniel does not identify. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and thus voices were saying to it]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Arise**
UST Go
(קוּמִ֔י)

These speakers are using **Arise** as a common expression of the culture to mean “Go ahead.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Go ahead]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beast	The … beast
a bear	a bear
devour	and eat

Daniel 7:6

ULT	UST
After this I was looking, and behold, another, like a leopard, and to it {were} the four wings of a bird upon its back. And four heads {were} to the beast, and dominion was given to it.	*The next beast that I saw looked like a leopard, but it had four wings like bird's wings on its back. It had four heads. It received authority to rule many people.*

ULT **like a leopard**
UST looked like a leopard
(כְּנָמֵר)

The point of this comparison is that just as a **leopard** is swift, so was this beast. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [as swift as a leopard]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and dominion was given to it**
UST It received authority to rule many people
(וְשָׁלְטָן יְהִיב לַהּ)

The expression **was given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and God gave dominion to it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and dominion**
UST authority to rule many people
(וְשָׁלְטָן)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **dominion**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the right to rule over others]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
like a leopard	looked like a leopard
{were} to the beast	It had
and dominion	authority to rule many people

Daniel 7:7

ULT	UST
After this I was looking in visions of the night, and behold, a fourth beast, making afraid and terrible and exceedingly strong. And great teeth of iron {were} to it. It devoured and crushed, and it was trampling the rest with its feet. And it was being different from all of the beasts that {were} before it, and ten horns (were) to it.	*The next thing I saw in my dream last night was a fourth beast. It was very powerful and very terrifying. It had huge iron teeth. It killed the other beasts and devoured them, and then it trampled on their carcasses. It was different from the other three beasts. It had ten horns on its head.*

ULT **making afraid and terrible**
UST and very terrifying
(דְּחִילָה וְאֵימְתָנִי)

The expressions **making afraid** and **terrible** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two expressions together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [extremely terrifying]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **and it was trampling the rest with its feet**
UST and then it trampled on their carcasses
(וּשְׁאָרָא ברגליה רָפָסָה)

The implication is that **the rest** refers either to whatever this beast did not devour or to the other beasts. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and it was trampling with its feet whatever was left over]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and ten horns**
UST ten horns on its head
(וְקַרְנַיִן עֲשַׂר)

Here, **ten horns** represent ten kings, as the interpretation in verse 24 explains. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could include this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and ten horns representing ten kings]

Support Reference: Symbolic Language

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in visions of	in my dream
a … beast	was a … beast
making afraid	and very terrifying
iron	iron

ULT	UST
It devoured	and devoured them
it was trampling	and then it trampled on
and … horns	horns on its head

Daniel 7:8

ULT	UST
I was considering the horns, and behold, another horn, little, was coming up among them, and three of the first horns were uprooted from before it. And behold, eyes like the eyes of a man {were} in this horn, and a mouth speaking great {things}.	*I was looking at those horns, and I saw a little horn grow up in the middle of them. It tore out three of the other horns. I saw that this little horn had eyes that were like humans eyes. It also had a mouth, and it was speaking very boastfully.*

ULT **another horn, little, was coming up among them**
UST a little horn grow up in the middle of them
(קֶרֶן אָחֳרִי זְעֵירָה סְלֶקֶת ביניהון)

Here, **another horn, little** represents another king who comes to power after those ten kings. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could include this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: [another horn, little, was coming up among them, which represented another king]

Support Reference: Symbolic Language

ULT **and three of the first horns were uprooted from before it**
UST It tore out three of the other horns
(וּתְלָת מִן־קַרְנַיָּא קַדְמָיָתָא אתעקרו מִן־קדמיה)

The expression **were uprooted** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and it pulled out three of the first horns]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and three of the first horns were uprooted from before it**
UST It tore out three of the other horns
(וּתְלָת מִן־קַרְנַיָּא קַדְמָיָתָא אתעקרו מִן־קדמיה)

Here Daniel is speaking as if three kings losing their power were three horns being **uprooted** like plants pulled out of the ground. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and three of the first horns were removed from before it]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **eyes like the eyes of a man**
UST eyes that were like humans eyes
(עֵינִין כְּעֵינֵי אֲנָשָׁא)

The point of this comparison is that just as **the eyes of a man** show intelligence and awareness, so did the **eyes** of this horn. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [eyes that showed intelligence and awareness]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and a mouth speaking great {things}**
UST It also had a mouth, and it was speaking very boastfully
(וּפֻם מְמַלֵּל רַבְרְבָן)

Here, **a mouth** represents the ability to speak. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and it was able to speak arrogant words]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **great {things}**
UST very boastfully
(רַבְרְבָן)

The implication is that the **great** things that this horn speaks are boastful claims that it makes about itself. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [arrogant boasts about itself]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the horns	at those horns

Daniel 7:9

ULT	UST
I was looking until that thrones were set, and the Ancient of Days sat down. His clothing {was} white as snow, and the hair of his head {was} like pure wool. His throne {was} flames of fire; its wheels {were} burning fire.	*Then, as I watched, some beings brought in some thrones. God, who has always existed, sat on one of the thrones. His clothes were as white as snow, and his hair was as white as pure wool. His throne {was like a chariot; it} was blazing with fire, and its wheels were also blazing with fire.*

ULT **thrones were set**
UST some beings brought in some thrones
(כָּרְסָוָן֙ רְמִ֔יו)

The expression **were set** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone set up thrones]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the Ancient of Days**
UST God, who has always existed
(וְעַתִּ֣יק יוֹמִ֑ין)

Daniel is using **the Ancient of Days** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the one who has always existed," that is, God. If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the eternal God]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **His clothing {was} white as snow**
UST His clothes were as white as snow
(לְבוּשֵׁ֣ה ׀ כִּתְלַ֣ג חִוָּ֗ר)

The point of this comparison is that just as **snow** is bright white, so was **His clothing**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [His clothing was gleaming, bright white]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and the hair of his head {was} like pure wool**
UST and his hair was as white as pure wool
(וּשְׂעַר רֹאשֹׁהּ כַּעֲמַר נְקֵא)

The point of this comparison is that just as **pure wool** is white, so was **the hair of his head**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and the hair of his head was white, like pure wool]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **His throne {was} flames of fire**
UST His throne {was like a chariot; it} was blazing with fire
(כָּרְסְיֵהּ שְׁבִיבִין דִּי־נוּר)

Here Daniel is speaking as if this throne were **flames of fire**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [His throne appeared to be on fire]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **fire; its wheels {were} burning fire**
UST fire, and its wheels were also blazing with fire
(נּוּר גַּלְגְּלוֹהִי נוּר דָּלִק)

The implication is that the mention of **its wheels** pictures this throne as a chariot. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [fire; it was like a chariot, and its wheels were burning fire]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
thrones	some thrones
Days	God, who has always existed
was … as snow	as snow
pure	pure
His throne	His throne {was like a chariot … }

Daniel 7:10

ULT	UST
A river of fire was flowing and coming out from before him; a thousand of thousands served him, and a myriad of myriads stood before him. The court sat, and books were opened.	*A stream of fire was rushing out in front of him. Many thousands of people were there serving him, and millions of other people were standing in front of him {ready to serve him}. Judges began a court session, and they opened books {that recorded what people had done}.*

ULT **A river of fire was flowing and coming out from before him**
UST A stream of fire was rushing out in front of him
(נְהָר דִּי־נוּר נָגֵד וְנָפֵק מִן־קֳדָמֹוהִי)

Here Daniel is speaking as if the fire coming out from God's presence were a stream of water that **was flowing** like a **river**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Fire was continuously coming out from before him in great quantity]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **a thousand of thousands served him, and a myriad of myriads stood before him**
UST Many thousands of people were there serving him, and millions of other people were standing in front of him {ready to serve him … }
(אֶלֶף אלפים יְשַׁמְּשׁוּנֵּהּ וְרִבְבָו רבון קֳדָמֹוהִי יְקוּמֻוּן)

The expressions **a thousand of thousands** and **a myriad of myriads** indicate very large numbers of beings. Translate these numbers according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [a million served him, and a hundred million stood before him]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **a thousand of thousands served him, and a myriad of myriads stood before him**
UST Many thousands of people were there serving him, and millions of other people were standing in front of him {ready to serve him … }
(אֶלֶף אלפים יְשַׁמְּשׁוּנֵּהּ וְרִבְבָו רבון קֳדָמֹוהִי יְקוּמָוּן)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Another approach would be to connect the phrases with a word that shows that the second phrase is repeating the first one, not saying something additional. See how you as a team have decided to translate the parallel phrases in poetry, and follow that approach here and throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: [an extremely large number of people served him and stood before him]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **stood before him**
UST were standing in front of him {ready to serve him}
(קֳדָמֹוהִי יְקוּמָוּן)

Here Daniel is speaking as if being ready to serve someone were to have **stood before him**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [waited in his presence, ready to serve him]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **The court sat**
UST Judges began a court session
(דִּינָא יְתֵב)

Here Daniel is speaking as if beginning a session of judgment were simply to have **sat** down. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The court convened to render judgment]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and books were opened**
UST and they opened books {that recorded what people had done}
(וְסִפְרִין פְּתִיחוּ)

The expression **were opened** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and the attendants opened the books]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and books were opened**
UST and they opened books {that recorded what people had done}
(וְסִפְרִין פְּתִיחוּ)

The implication is that these **books** contain the records of what people have done, which the court uses in judging them. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and they opened the records of everything people had done, in order to judge them by those records]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
served him	were there serving him
The court	Judges

Daniel 7:11

ULT	UST
I was looking then from the sound of the great words that the horn was speaking. I was looking until that the beast was killed and its body was destroyed and it was given to the burning fire.	*I heard the little horn speaking very boastfully, so I looked over at it. As I watched, someone killed the fourth beast and threw its body into the fire to burn it up completely.*

ULT **from**
UST I heard
(מִן)

The word translated as **from** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [Because of]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the beast was killed and its body was destroyed and it was given to the burning fire**
UST someone killed the fourth beast and threw its body into the fire to burn it up completely
(קְטִילַת חֵיוְתָא וְהוּבַד גִּשְׁמַהּ וְיהִיבַת לִיקַדַת אֶשָּׁא)

The expressions **was killed**, **was destroyed**, and **was given** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the ideas in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God killed the beast and destroyed its body and put it into the burning fire]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the horn	the little horn
the beast	the fourth beast
was killed	someone killed
and … was destroyed	to burn it up completely

Daniel 7:12

ULT	UST
And the rest of the beasts, they took away their dominion, but a prolonging in life was given to them for a season and a time.	*The other three beasts lost their authority to rule, but they were able to continue living for a little while.*

> ULT **And the rest of the beasts, they took away their dominion**
> UST The other three beasts lost their authority to rule
> (וּשְׁאָר֙ חֵיוָתָ֔א הֶעְדִּ֖יו שָׁלְטָנְהֹ֑ון)

Daniel mentions **the rest of the beasts** first and then says what was done to them. If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about what was done to these beasts together with the mention of the beasts themselves. Alternate translation: [And they took away the dominion of the rest of the beasts]

Support Reference: Information Structure

> ULT **they took away their dominion**
> UST lost their authority to rule
> (הֶעְדִּ֖יו שָׁלְטָנְהֹ֑ון)

The pronoun **they** refers to beings whom Daniel does not identify, not to the beasts. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [they lost their dominion to certain beings whom Daniel does not name]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **but a prolonging in life was given to them for a season and a time**
> UST but they were able to continue living for a little while
> (וְאַרְכָ֣ה בְחַיִּ֛ין יְהִ֥יבַת לְהֹ֖ון עַד־זְמַ֥ן וְעִדָּֽן)

The expression **was given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but God prolonged their lives for a season and a time]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **but a prolonging in life**
> UST but … to continue living
> (וְאַרְכָ֣ה בְחַיִּ֛ין)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **a prolonging**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [but a longer time to live]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for a season and a time**
UST for a little while
(עַד־זְמַן וְעִדָּן)

Daniel is using **for a season and a time** as a common expression of the culture to mean "for a limited period of time that he does not specify." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for a certain period of time]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the beasts	The … beasts
their dominion	their authority to rule
and a time	a little while

Daniel 7:13

ULT	UST
I was looking in visions of the night, and behold, with the clouds of the heavens one like a son of man was coming, and he reached to the Ancient of Days, and they brought him near before him.	*The next thing I saw in my dream last night was someone who resembled a human being. He was riding on the clouds in the sky. He got to where God was, the one who has always existed, and God's servants brought him to his throne.*

ULT **with the clouds of the heavens**
UST on the clouds in the sky
(עִם־עֲנָנֵי שְׁמַיָּא)

Here, **the clouds of the heavens** represent coming from heaven, where God dwells. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from God's dwelling place in heaven]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **one like a son of man was coming**
UST was someone who resembled a human being. He was riding
(כְּבַר אֱנָשׁ אָתֵה הֲוָה)

The point of this comparison is that just as **a son of man** has a human form, so did this **one** whom Daniel saw. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [one who had a human form was coming]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and they brought him near before him**
UST and God's servants brought him to his throne
(וּקְדָמוֹהִי הַקְרִבוּהִי)

The pronoun **they** refers to attendants whom Daniel does not identify, the first **him** refers to the one like a son of man, and the second **him** refers to the Ancient of Days. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and attendants brought him near before the Ancient of Days]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in visions of	in my dream
the heavens	in the sky
like a son of man	was someone who resembled a human being

ULT	UST
Days	God … the one who has always existed

Daniel 7:14

ULT	UST
And to him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him. His dominion {is} a dominion of eternity that will not pass away, and his kingdom {is one} that will not be destroyed.	*God honored him and gave him the authority to rule as king. People from every nation and group and who speak every language will obey him. He will rule forever; he will never stop ruling. No one will ever destroy the kingdom that he rules.*

ULT **And to him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him. His dominion {is} a dominion of eternity that will not pass away, and his kingdom {is one} that will not be destroyed**
UST God honored him and gave him the authority to rule as king. People from every nation and group and who speak every language will obey him. He will rule forever; he will never stop ruling. No one will ever destroy the kingdom that he
(וְלֵהּ יְהִיב שָׁלְטָן וְיֵקָר וּמַלְכוּ וְכָל עַמְמַיָּא אֻמַיָּא וְלִשָׁנַיָּא לֵהּ יִפְלְחוּן שָׁלְטָנֵּהּ שָׁלְטָן עָלַם דִּי־לָא יֶעְדֵּה וּמַלְכוּתֵהּ דִּי־לָא תִתְחַבַּל)

Here, **that** marks **all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him** as the goal or purpose of giving him **dominion and glory and a kingdom**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose.

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **And to him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom**
UST God honored him and gave him the authority to rule as king
(וְלֵהּ יְהִיב שָׁלְטָן וְיֵקָר וּמַלְכוּ)

The expression **was given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And the Ancient of Days gave him dominion and glory and a kingdom]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **dominion and glory and a kingdom**
UST God honored … the authority to rule as king
(שָׁלְטָן וְיֵקָר וּמַלְכוּ)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **dominion**, **glory**, and **a kingdom**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [the ability to rule and to be honored and to reign as king]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **that all peoples, nations, and languages**
UST People from every nation and group and who speak every language
(וְכָל עַמְמַיָּא אֻמַיָּא וְלִשָּׁנַיָּא)

The terms **peoples**, **nations**, and **languages** mean similar things. Daniel is using the three terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [that everyone in the whole world]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **His dominion {is} a dominion of eternity that will not pass away, and his kingdom {is one} that will not be destroyed**
UST He will rule forever; he will never stop ruling. No one will ever destroy the kingdom that he
(שָׁלְטָנֵּהּ שָׁלְטָן עָלַם דִּי־לָא יֶעְדֵּה וּמַלְכוּתֵהּ דִּי־לָא תִתְחַבַּל)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [His royal rule will certainly endure forever]

Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **{is} a dominion of eternity**
UST He will rule forever
(שָׁלְטָן עָלַם)

Daniel is using the possessive form to describe a **dominion** that is characterized by **eternity**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [is a dominion that lasts forever]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **{is one} that will not be destroyed**
UST No one will ever destroy the kingdom that he
(דִּי־לָא תִתְחַבַּל)

The expression **will not be destroyed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [is one that nothing will ever destroy]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
dominion	the authority to rule
and glory	God honored

ULT	UST
and a kingdom	as king
nations	nation
and languages	and who speak every language
should serve	will obey
eternity	forever
and his kingdom	the kingdom that he
will … be destroyed	will ever destroy

Daniel 7:15

ULT	UST
My spirit was distressed, I, Daniel, in the midst of the body, and the visions of my head were alarming me.	*As for me, Daniel, what I saw in my dream scared me. I felt very upset inside.*

ULT **My spirit was distressed, I, Daniel, in the midst of the body**
UST As for me, Daniel … I felt very upset inside
(אֶתְכְּרִיַּ֥ת רוּחִ֛י אֲנָ֥ה דָנִיֵּ֖אל בְּג֥וֹא נִדְנֶֽה)

Daniel interrupts his statement about his spirit in order to identify himself. If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **I, Daniel** before the information about his spirit being distressed. Alternate translation: [As for me, Daniel, my spirit within my body was distressed]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **My spirit was distressed, I, Daniel, in the midst of the body**
UST As for me, Daniel … I felt very upset inside
(אֶתְכְּרִיַּ֥ת רוּחִ֛י אֲנָ֥ה דָנִיֵּ֖אל בְּג֥וֹא נִדְנֶֽה)

Daniel is using **My spirit was distressed** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I was deeply troubled within myself." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I, Daniel, was deeply troubled]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
My spirit	I
was distressed	felt very upset
Daniel	Daniel
and the visions of	what I saw in my dream
were alarming me	scared me

Daniel 7:16

ULT	UST
I approached to one of the ones standing, and I sought from him the truth about all of this. And he told me, and he made me know the interpretation of the matters.	*I went up to one of those who were standing in front of God's throne. I asked him to tell me what all of this meant. So he told me what the things in my dream meant so that I could understand them.*

ULT **one of the ones standing**
UST one of those who were standing in front of God's throne
(חַד מִן־קָאֲמַיָּא)

Here Daniel is introducing **one of the ones standing** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [a certain man who was standing there]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **one of the ones standing**
UST one of those who were standing in front of God's throne
(חַד מִן־קָאֲמַיָּא)

The implication is that this is one of the many beings who were standing before God, as verse 10 describes. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [one of the ones standing before God]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he made me know the interpretation of the matters**
UST what the things in my dream meant so that I could understand them
(וּפְשַׁר מִלַּיָּא יְהוֹדְעִנְנִי)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the interpretation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and he made me know what the matters meant]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I sought	I asked
he made me know	so that I could understand them
and … the interpretation of	what … meant

Daniel 7:17

ULT	UST
‘These great beasts, which are four, {are} four kings arising from the earth.	*He said, “The four great beasts represent four kingdoms that will become powerful in the world.*

ULT **These great beasts**
UST He said, “The … great beasts
(אִלֵּין֙ חֵיוָתָ֣א רַבְרָבָ֔תָּא)

This is the beginning of what the **one of the ones standing** told Daniel. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could introduce this as a direct quotation of him. Alternate translation: [He told me, ‘These great beasts]

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **These great beasts, which are four, {are} four kings arising from the earth**
UST He said, “The four great beasts represent four kingdoms that will become powerful in the world
(אִלֵּין֙ חֵיוָתָ֣א רַבְרָבָ֔תָּא דִּ֥י אִנִּ֖ין אַרְבְּעָ֣ה מַלְכִ֑ין יְקוּמ֖וּן מִן־אַרְעָֽא)

If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [He told me that those great beasts, which were four, were four kings arising from the earth]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **{are} four kings arising from the earth**
UST represent four kingdoms that will become powerful in the world
(אַרְבְּעָ֣ה מַלְכִ֑ין יְקוּמ֖וּן מִן־אַרְעָֽא)

Here, **four kings** represent the four kingdoms that these kings rule. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [are four kingdoms that will arise on the earth]

Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **arising from the earth**
> UST that will become powerful in the world
> (יְקוּמִ֖ון מִן־אַרְעָֽא)

The attendant is using **arising from the earth** as a common expression of the culture to mean “coming to power in the world.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who will come to power in the world]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beasts	beasts
kings	represent … kingdoms
the earth	the world

Daniel 7:18

ULT	UST
But the saints of the Most High will receive the kingdom, and they will possess the kingdom to eternity and to eternity of eternities.'	*But the Supreme God will give power to his people to rule, and they will rule forever and ever."*

ULT **But … will receive**
UST But … will give power
(וְיִקַּבְּלוּן)

The attendant uses the word **But** here to indicate a contrast between the four kings who arise from the earth and the holy people of God who receive the kingdom. In your translation, indicate this contrast in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [However,]

Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **But the saints of the Most High will receive the kingdom**
UST But the Supreme God will give power to his people to rule
(וְיִקַּבְּלוּן מַלְכוּתָא קַדִּישֵׁי עֶלְיוֹנִין)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the kingdom**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [But the saints of the Most High will start to reign]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the saints of the Most High**
UST the Supreme God … to his people
(קַדִּישֵׁי עֶלְיוֹנִין)

The attendant is using the possessive form to describe **the saints** who belong to **the Most High**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the holy people who belong to the Most High]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the saints of the Most High**
UST the Supreme God … to his people
(קַדִּישֵׁי עֶלְיוֹנִין)

The implication is that **the saints** are the people whom God has set apart as holy for himself. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the people whom God has set apart as holy for himself]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to eternity and to eternity of eternities**
UST forever and ever
(עַד־עָלְמָא וְעַד עָלַם עָלְמַיָּא)

The expressions **to eternity** and **to eternity of eternities** mean similar things. The attendant is using the two expressions together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [forever without end]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the saints of	to his people
the Most High	the Supreme God
But … will receive	But … will give power
the kingdom	to rule
and they will possess	and they will rule
eternity	forever

Daniel 7:19

ULT	UST
Then I wished to be certain about the fourth beast, which was being different from all of them, making afraid exceedingly, its teeth of iron and its claws of bronze, devouring, crushing, and trampling the rest with its feet,	*Then I wanted to know exactly what the fourth beast represented. That beast was different from the other three beasts. It was very terrifying. It had iron teeth and bronze claws. It killed the other beasts and devoured them, and then it trampled on their carcasses.*

ULT **which was being different from all of them, making afraid exceedingly, its teeth of iron and its claws of bronze, devouring, crushing, and trampling the rest with its feet**

UST That beast was different from the other three beasts. It was very terrifying. It had iron teeth and bronze claws. It killed the other beasts and devoured them, and then it trampled on their carcasses

(דִּי־הֲוָת שָׁנְיָה מִן־כלהון דְּחִילָה יַתִּירָה שניה דִּי־פַרְזֶל וְטִפְרֵיהּ דִּי־נְחָשׁ אָכְלָה מַדֵּקָה וּשְׁאָרָא בְּרַגְלֵיהּ רָפְסָה)

Daniel gives a long series of descriptions of **the fourth beast** within one sentence. If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about what this beast looked like and what it did into separate sentences. Alternate translation: [which was different from all of them. It was exceedingly frightening. Its teeth were iron and its claws were bronze. It devoured and crushed, and it trampled the rest with its feet]

Support Reference: Information Structure

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … beast	the … beast
making afraid	It was … terrifying
iron	iron
bronze	bronze
devouring	and devoured them
and trampling	their carcasses

Daniel 7:20

ULT	UST
and about the ten horns that {were} on its head and the other that came up and three fell from before it, even that horn that eyes {were} to it and a mouth speaking great {things} and its appearance {was} greater than its fellows.	*I also wanted to know about the ten horns on its head and the little horn that grew up in the middle of them. It tore out three of the other horns. It had {human} eyes and a mouth. It spoke very boastfully, and it looked more powerful than the other horns.*

ULT **and a mouth speaking great {things}**
UST and a mouth. It spoke very boastfully
(וְפֻם֙ מְמַלֵּ֣ל רַבְרְבָ֔ן)

Daniel is using **speaking great things** as a common expression of the culture to mean "boasting arrogantly." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a mouth that boasted proudly] or [a mouth that spoke arrogant words]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and its appearance {was} greater than its fellows**
UST and it looked more powerful than the other horns
(וְחֶזְוֵ֖הּ רַ֥ב מִן־חַבְרָתֵ֑הּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **its appearance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and it looked more imposing than its fellows]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the … horns	the … horns

Daniel 7:21

ULT	UST
I was looking, and this horn was making war with the saints, and it was prevailing against them,	*In my dream, I saw this horn attack God's people. It was defeating them,*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and … horn	horn
the saints	God's people

Daniel 7:22

ULT	UST
until that the Ancient of Days came, and judgment was given for the saints of the Most High. And the time came, and the saints possessed the kingdom.	*but then God, who has always existed, came and decided in favor of the people who belonged to him, the Supreme God. Then it was time for them to receive authority to rule.*

ULT **and judgment was given for the saints of the Most High**
UST and decided in favor of the people who belonged to him, the Supreme God
(וְדִינָא יְהַב לְקַדִּישֵׁי עֶלְיוֹנִין)

The expression **was given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he gave judgment for the saints of the Most High]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and judgment was given for the saints of the Most High**
UST and decided in favor of the people who belonged to him, the Supreme God
(וְדִינָא יְהַב לְקַדִּישֵׁי עֶלְיוֹנִין)

The implication is either that the court ruled in favor of God's holy people or that the authority to judge was given to God's holy people. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the court ruled in favor of the saints of the Most High]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Days	God, who has always existed
and judgment	and decided
for the saints of	in favor of the people who belonged
the Most High	to him, the Supreme God
And the time	Then … time
possessed	to receive
and … the kingdom	authority to rule

Daniel 7:23

ULT	UST
Thus he was saying, 'The fourth beast will be a fourth kingdom on the earth, which will be different from all of the kingdoms. And it will devour all of the earth, and it will trample it and crush it.	*The one I was speaking with told me, "The fourth beast represents a fourth empire that will become powerful in the world. That empire will be different from the other empires that were before it. Its army will conquer other kingdoms throughout the world. It will defeat them badly and destroy them.*

ULT **Thus he was saying, 'The fourth beast will be a fourth kingdom on the earth**
UST The one I was speaking with told me, "The fourth beast represents a fourth empire that will become powerful in the world
(כֵּן֙ אָמַ֔ר חַיְוָתָ֖א רְבִיעָיְתָ֣א מַלְכ֣וּ רביעיא תֶּהֱוֵ֑א בְּאַרְעָ֔א)

There is a direct quotation inside a direct quotation here. If it would be clearer in your language, you could translate this so that there is not a quotation within a quotation. Alternate translation: [Thus he was saying that the fourth beast will be a fourth kingdom on the earth]

Support Reference: Quotes within Quotes

ULT **Thus he was saying**
UST The one I was speaking with told me
(כֵּן֙ אָמַ֔ר)

The pronoun **he** refers to the one standing whom Daniel approached, as verse 16 describes. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Thus the one standing there was saying]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And it will devour all of the earth, and it will trample it and crush it**
UST Its army will conquer other kingdoms throughout the world. It will defeat them badly and destroy them
(וְתֵאכֵ֤ל כָּל־אַרְעָא֙ וּתְדוּשִׁנַּ֔הּ וְתַדְקִנַּ֖הּ)

Here the attendant is speaking as if this kingdom were a beast that would **devour** the nations it conquered and **trample** and **crush** them. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And it will conquer all of the earth, and it will defeat and destroy every nation]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **all of the earth**
UST other kingdoms throughout the world
(כָּל־אַרְעָא)

The attendant says **all of the earth** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [a vast expanse of land]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The … beast	The … beast
a … kingdom	represents a … empire
on the earth	in the world
And it will devour	Its army will conquer
and it will trample it	It will defeat them badly

Daniel 7:24

ULT	UST
And the ten horns, from this kingdom, ten kings will arise, and another will arise after them. And he will be different from the first {ones}, and he will humble three kings.	*The ten horns of this beast represent ten kings who will rule that empire. Another king will succeed them. He will be different from the previous kings, and he will conquer three other kings.*

ULT And the ten horns, from this kingdom, ten kings will arise
UST The ten horns of this beast represent ten kings who will rule that empire
(וְקַרְנַיָּא עֲשַׂר מִנַּהּ מַלְכוּתָה עֲשָׂרָה מַלְכִין יְקוּמוּן)

The attendant mentions **the ten horns** first and then explains in a new clause what they represent. If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about the ten kings together with the mention of the ten horns. Alternate translation: [And from this kingdom, ten kings, who are the ten horns, will arise]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT And he will be different from the first {ones}
UST He will be different from the previous kings
(וְהוּא יִשְׁנֵא מִן־קַדְמָיָא)

The attendant is using the adjective **first** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [And he will be different from the kings who ruled before him]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the … horns	The … horns of this beast
kingdom	who will rule that empire
kings	represent … kings
he will humble	he will conquer
kings	kings

Daniel 7:25

ULT	UST
And he will speak words against the Most High, and he will wear out the saints of the Most High. And he will intend to change the times and the law. And they will be given into his hand for a time and times and half of a time.	*He will say insulting things about the Supreme God, and he will oppress the people who belong to him. He will try to change their religious festivals and laws. He will have power over them for a time, times, and half a time.*

ULT **And he will speak words against the Most High**
UST He will say insulting things about the Supreme God
(וּמִלִּין לְצַד עִלָּיָא יְמַלֵּל)

The implication is that these **words against the Most High** are defiant and insulting. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And he will speak arrogant insults against the Most High]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the Most High**
UST the Supreme God
(עליא)

The first instance of **the Most High** is singular, while the second instance is plural.

This is an Aramaic plural of excellence. It does not mean that there is more than one God, but that the one true God is supremely glorious and powerful. If your language can use its plural form for intensification, not just for number, it would be appropriate to use it here. Other languages may have other ways to show this intensification. Alternate translation: [the Most High … the Almighty God]

Support Reference: Unusual Uses of the Plural

ULT **and he will wear out the saints of the Most High**
UST and he will oppress the people who belong to him
(וּלְקַדִּישֵׁי עֶלְיוֹנִין יְבַלֵּא)

Here the attendant is speaking as if oppressing God's holy people relentlessly were to **wear out** a garment until it fell apart. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he will continually afflict the holy people of the Most High until they are exhausted]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to change the times and the law**
UST to change their religious festivals and laws
(לְהַשְׁנָיָה זִמְנִין וְדָת)

The implication is that **the times** are the festivals that God appointed for his people and that **the law** is the law that God gave them. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to change the appointed festivals and the law that God gave his people]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And they will be given into his hand**
UST He will have power over them
(וְיִתְיַהֲבוּן בִּידֵהּ)

The expression **will be given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And God will put the times and the law into his hand]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And they will be given into his hand**
UST He will have power over them
(וְיִתְיַהֲבוּן בִּידֵהּ)

The pronoun **they** refers to the **saints of the Most High**, not to **the times and the law**. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the saints will be given]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And they will be given into his hand**
UST He will have power over them
(וְיִתְיַהֲבוּן בִּידֵהּ)

Here, **his hand** represents the power and control of this king. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And they will be given over to his power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **for a time and times and half of a time**
UST for a time, times, and half a time
(עַד־עִדָּן וְעִדָּנִין וּפְלַג עִדָּן)

The attendant is using **a time and times and half of a time** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a limited period that God has determined." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for a limited period that God has determined]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Most High	the Supreme God
and … the saints of	and … the people who belong to
the times	their religious festivals
and the law	and laws
a time	a time

Daniel 7:26

ULT	UST
But the court will sit, and they will take away his dominion, to consume and destroy {it} to the end,	*But then there will be a session of the heavenly court. The court will take away that king's authority. That will be the end of his kingdom forever.*

ULT **to consume and destroy {it} to the end**
UST That will be the end of his kingdom forever
(לְהַשְׁמָדָה וּלְהוֹבָדָה עַד־סוֹפָא)

Here, **to** marks **consume and destroy** as the goal or purpose of taking away his dominion. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose. Alternate translation: [totally consuming and destroying it]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **to consume and destroy {it}**
UST That will be the end of his kingdom
(לְהַשְׁמָדָה וּלְהוֹבָדָה)

The terms **consume** and **destroy** mean similar things. The attendant is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [to utterly destroy it]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **to the end**
UST forever
(עַד־סוֹפָא)

The attendant is using **to the end** as a common expression of the culture to mean "completely and finally." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [completely and finally]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
But the court	the heavenly court
and … his dominion	that king's authority
to consume	That will be the end of his kingdom
and destroy {it}	That will be the end of his kingdom

Daniel 7:27

ULT	UST
and the kingdom and the dominion and the greatness of the kingdoms under all of the heavens will be given to the people of the saints of the Most High. His kingdom {will be} a kingdom of eternity, and all dominions will serve and make themselves hear him.'	*Then the people who belong to the Supreme God will receive great honor and the power to rule every kingdom in the world. The kingdom of the Supreme God will last forever. All earthly rulers will be his subjects."*

ULT **and the kingdom and the dominion and the greatness of the kingdoms**
UST Then … great honor and the power to rule … kingdom
(וּמַלְכוּתָה וְשָׁלְטָנָא וּרְבוּתָא דִּי מַלְכָוָת)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **the kingdom**, **the dominion**, and **the greatness**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [and the right to reign and to rule gloriously over the kingdoms]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **under all of the heavens**
UST every … in the world
(תְּחוֹת כָּל־שְׁמַיָּא)

The attendant says **under all of the heavens** as an extreme statement for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [throughout the entire earth]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **will be given to the people of the saints of the Most High**
UST the people who belong to the Supreme God will receive
(יְהִיבַת לְעַם קַדִּישֵׁי עֶלְיוֹנִין)

The expression **will be given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God will give to his people, the saints of the Most High]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and all dominions will serve and make themselves hear him**
UST All earthly rulers will be his subjects
(וְכֹל֙ שָׁלְטָנַיָּ֣א לֵֽהּ יִפְלְחֻ֖ון וְיִשְׁתַּמְּעֽוּן)

Here, **all dominions** represent the rulers who hold that authority. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and all rulers will serve and make themselves hear him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **will serve and make themselves hear him**
UST will be his subjects
(לֵֽהּ יִפְלְחֻ֖ון וְיִשְׁתַּמְּעֽוּן)

In this context, the term **hear** has the sense of "obey." While the form is reflexive in the original, in many languages an active form will convey the meaning accurately. Alternate translation: [will serve and obey him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **will serve and make themselves hear him**
UST will be his subjects
(לֵֽהּ יִפְלְחֻ֖ון וְיִשְׁתַּמְּעֽוּן)

The terms **serve** and **make themselves hear him** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [will diligently obey him] or [will obey him completely]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and the kingdom	Then … to rule
and the dominion	and the power
the heavens	in the world
the saints of	who belong to
the Most High	the Supreme God
eternity	forever
will serve	will be … subjects
will serve	will be … subjects

Daniel 7:28

ULT	UST
To here {is} the end of the matter. I, Daniel, my thoughts were alarming me greatly, and my splendors changed upon me. But I kept the matter in my heart."	*That is what I saw in my dream. As I, Daniel, thought about these things, they really scared me. My face became pale. But I did not tell anyone about the dream I had."*

ULT **To here {is} the end of the matter**
UST That is what I saw in my dream
(עַד־כָּה סוֹפָא דִּי־מִלְּתָא)

The words **To here** signal the end of Daniel's report of what he saw in his vision. Use the natural form in your language for expressing the conclusion of an account. Alternate translation: [That is the end of my report]

Support Reference: End of Story

ULT **and my splendors changed upon me**
UST My face became pale
(וְזִיוִי יִשְׁתַּנּוֹן עֲלַי)

Daniel is using **my splendors changed upon me** as a common expression of the culture to mean "my face turned pale." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and my face turned pale]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **But I kept the matter in my heart**
UST But I did not tell anyone about the dream I had
(וּמִלְּתָא בְּלִבִּי נְטָרֵת)

Here Daniel is speaking as if his **heart** were a container in which he could keep something. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But I did not tell anyone what I had seen]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
were alarming me	they … scared me
and my splendors	My face

Daniel 8

Daniel 8 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Daniel sees a vision of a ram, a goat, and a horn that became great (1–14)
2. The angel Gabriel explains the vision to Daniel (15–27)

Translation issues in this chapter

The meaning of the animals in this vision

In the case of this vision, the interpretation that a figure gives to Daniel does specify what the animals represent. Gabriel tells Daniel, “The ram that you saw … is the kings of Media and Persia” (8:20) and “The male goat is the king of Javan” (that is, Greece, 8:21). There is no reason not to include this specific information in your translation. However, the identity of the king in verses 23–25 is not certain, and we recommend that you not suggest in your translation who this might be.

Daniel 8:1

ULT	UST
In the year of three to the reign of King Belshazzar, a vision appeared to me, me, Daniel, after the one having appeared to me at the first.	*During the third year that Belshazzar was the king of Babylon, I, Daniel, had a vision, after the one that I had earlier.*

ULT **In the year of three to the reign of**
UST During the third year that … Babylon
(בִּשְׁנַת שָׁלֹושׁ לְמַלְכוּת)

The expression **In the year of three** uses a number in a form that means the third year of Belshazzar's reign. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as this, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [In the third year of the reign of]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **King Belshazzar**
UST Belshazzar was the king of
(בֵּלְאשַׁצַּר הַמָּלְךְ)

The word **Belshazzar** is the name of a man.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **a vision appeared to me, me, Daniel**
UST I, Daniel, had a vision
(חָזוֹן נִרְאָה אֵלַי אֲנִי דָּנִיֵּאל)

Daniel is stating the pronoun **me** separately, even though the expression **to me** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that the vision he is describing is one that he saw personally. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [to me, Daniel, personally]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to me, me, Daniel**
UST I, Daniel
(אֵלַי אֲנִי דָּנִיֵּאל)

Daniel is repeating forms of the word **me** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [to me indeed, Daniel]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **after the one having appeared to me at the first**
UST after the one that I had earlier
(אַחֲרֵי הַנִּרְאָה אֵלַי בַּתְּחִלָּה)

The implication is that **the one having appeared to me at the first** refers to the vision that Daniel describes in the previous chapter. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [after the earlier vision that had appeared to me, the one I have just described]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In the year	During the … year
of … to the reign of	that … Babylon
King	was the king of
a vision	a vision
Daniel	Daniel

Daniel 8:2

ULT	UST
And I saw in the vision, and it was as I saw, that I {was} in Susa the citadel, which {is} in Elam the province. And I saw in the vision that I was by the canal of Ulai.	*In that vision, I saw that I was in Susa, the capital city of the province of Elam. I saw that I was standing alongside the Ulai Canal.*

ULT {was} in Susa the citadel, which {is} in Elam the province

UST in Susa, the capital city of the province of Elam

(בְּשׁוּשַׁן הַבִּירָה אֲשֶׁר בְּעֵילָם הַמְּדִינָה)

The word **Susa** is the name of a city, and the word **Elam** is the name of a province. Later in this verse, **Ulai** is the name of a canal.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the vision	In that vision
the citadel	the capital city
{is} in Elam	Elam
the province	the province of

Daniel 8:3

ULT	UST
And I lifted up my eyes and saw, and behold, a ram standing to the face of the canal. And to it {were} two horns, and the two horns {were} high, but the one was higher than the second, and the higher came up afterward.	*I looked up and saw a ram standing alongside the canal. It had two long horns. One of the horns was longer than the other. The ram had grown the longer horn after the shorter one.*

ULT **And I lifted up my eyes**
UST I looked up
(וָאֶשָּׂא עֵינַי)

Daniel is using **I lifted up my eyes** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I looked up." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And I looked up]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and behold**
UST and saw
(וְהִנֵּה)

Daniel is using the word **behold** as if he wanted his readers to look at something, when he actually wants them to pay attention to what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and hear this]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **standing to the face of the canal**
UST standing alongside the canal
(עֹמֵד לִפְנֵי הָאֻבָל)

Here, **the face** of the canal represents "the area in front of the canal." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [standing in front of the canal]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **{were} two horns, and the two horns**
UST two … horns
(קְרָנַ֔יִם וְהַקְּרָנַ֖יִם)

In each instance, the expression **two horns** is the dual of "horn." If your language has a dual form, it would be appropriate to use it here.

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **but the one was higher than the second, and the higher came up afterward**
UST One of the horns was longer than the other. The ram had grown the longer horn after the shorter one
(וְהָאַחַ֥ת גְּבֹהָ֖ה מִן־הַשֵּׁנִ֑ית וְהַגְּבֹהָ֖ה עָלְתָ֥ה בָּאַחֲרֹנָֽה)

Daniel is using the adjectives **the one**, **the second**, and **the higher** as nouns to mean certain horns. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [but one horn was higher than the other horn, and the higher horn came up afterward]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
ram	ram
{were} two horns	two … horns

Daniel 8:4

ULT	UST
I saw the ram goring westward and northward and southward, and all of the beasts did not stand to its face, and there was none delivering from its hand. And it did according to its will, and it became great.	*I saw the ram butting away the animals that were around it in all directions. No other animal could resist it, and none could rescue other animals from it. The ram did whatever it wanted to do, and it became very powerful.*

ULT **and all of the beasts did not stand to its face**
UST No other animal could resist it
(וְכָל־חַיּוֹת לְֹא־יַעַמְדוּ לְפָנָיו)

Daniel is using **did not stand to its face** as a common expression of the culture to mean "could not withstand it." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and no beast could withstand it]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and there was none delivering from its hand**
UST and none could rescue other animals from it
(וְאֵין מַצִּיל מִיָּדוֹ)

Here, **its hand** represents "its power." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and there was none delivering from its power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **according to its will**
UST whatever it wanted to do
(כִּרְצֹנוֹ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **will**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as it wanted]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ram	the ram
the beasts	animal
delivering	could rescue other animals

Daniel 8:5

ULT	UST
And I, I was observing, and behold, a male of the goats was coming from the west over the face of all of the earth but without touching the earth. And the male {goat}, a horn of vision {was} between its eyes.	*I kept looking, and the next thing I saw was a goat coming from the west. It ran across the whole world so quickly that its feed seemed not to touch the ground. This goat had one very large horn in the middle of its forehead.*

ULT **And I, I was observing**
UST I kept looking
(וַאֲנִי ׀ הָיִיתִי מֵבִין)

Daniel is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **I was observing** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he was carefully watching this vision as it unfolded. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [I was watching closely]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **over the face of all of the earth**
UST It ran across the whole world
(עַל־פְּנֵי כָל־הָאָרֶץ)

Daniel is using **the face of all of the earth** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the whole surface of the earth." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [over the entire surface of the earth]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **but without touching the earth**
UST so quickly that its feed seemed not to touch the ground
(וְאֵין נוֹגֵעַ בָּאָרֶץ)

The implication is that the goat was moving so swiftly that it seemed not to touch the ground as it ran. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [but moving so swiftly that it seemed not to touch the earth]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **a horn of vision**
UST had one very large horn
(קֶרֶן חָזוּת)

Daniel is using **a horn of vision** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a conspicuous horn." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a prominent horn]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
observing	kept looking
the goats	was a goat
the earth	the … world
the earth	the ground
a horn of	had one … horn
vision	very large

Daniel 8:6

ULT	UST
And it came to the ram, the master of two horns, which I had seen standing to the face of the canal, and it ran at it in the heat of its power.	*It came to the ram that I had seen standing alongside the canal, the ram that had two horns. It was very angry, and it ran straight at the ram.*

ULT **the master of two horns**
UST that had two horns
(בַּעַל הַקְּרָנַיִם)

Daniel is using **the master of two horns** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the one that had two horns." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the one that had the two horns]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **two horns**
UST two horns
(הַקְּרָנַיִם)

As in verse 3, the expression **two horns** is the dual of "horn." See how you translated that expression there.

ULT **to the face of the canal**
UST alongside the canal
(לִפְנֵי הָאֻבַל)

Here, **to the face of** represents being in front of the canal. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [beside] or [in front of]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in the heat of its power**
UST It was very angry
(בַּחֲמַת כֹּחוֹ)

Daniel is using **in the heat of its power** as a common expression of the culture to mean "with furious strength." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [with furious strength]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ram	the ram … the ram
the master of	that had
two horns	two horns

Daniel 8:7

ULT	UST
And I saw it arriving beside the ram, and it was embittered at it, and it struck the ram and shattered the two of its horns. And the ram was not strong to stand to its face. And it cast it to the earth and trampled it, and none was delivering the ram from its hand.	*I saw that when the goat got to the ram, it struck it furiously. That broke off the ram's two horns, and so the ram was not able to defend itself. The goat knocked the ram down and trampled on it. No one could rescue the ram from the goat.*

ULT **and it was embittered at it**
UST furiously
(וַיִּתְמַרְמַר אֵלָיו)

Daniel is speaking as if the goat **was embittered** in order to describe how enraged it was at the ram. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the goat was enraged at the ram]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the two of its horns**
UST the ram's two horns
(אֶת־שְׁתֵּי קַרְנָיו)

In this instance, the term **horns** is plural, not dual as in verses 3 and 6. Translate this in the way your language would naturally express numbers.

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **from its hand**
UST from the goat
(מִיָּדוֹ)

Here, **hand** represents the power/control of the goat. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from the goat's power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And the ram was not strong to stand to its face**
UST and so the ram was not able to defend itself
(וְלֹא־הָיָה כֹחַ בָּאַיִל לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵיהוּ)

Daniel is using **stand to its face** as a common expression of the culture to mean "resist it." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [was not strong enough to resist the goat] or [could not withstand the goat]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And it cast it to the earth and trampled it**
UST The goat knocked the ram down and trampled on it
(וַיַּשְׁלִיכֵהוּ אַרְצָה וַיִּרְמְסֵהוּ)

The first pronoun **it** in this sentence refers to the goat, and the pronouns that follow refer to the ram. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the goat cast the ram to the earth and trampled it]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ram	the ram
its horns	the ram's … horns
to the earth	down
and trampled it	and trampled on it
delivering	could rescue
the ram	the ram

Daniel 8:8

ULT	UST
Then the male of the goats became great unto much. But when it was mighty, the great horn was broken, and in its place four {horns of} vision came up toward the four winds of the heavens.	*The goat became very powerful. But when its power was very great, its large horn broke off. Four other large horns grew in its place. They pointed to the north, south, east, and west.*

ULT **the great horn was broken**
UST its large horn broke off
(נִשְׁבְּרָה הַקֶּרֶן הַגְּדוֹלָה)

The expression **was broken** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [something broke off the great horn]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **toward the four winds of the heavens**
UST They pointed to the north, south, east, and west
(לְאַרְבַּע רוּחוֹת הַשָּׁמָיִם)

Daniel is speaking as if the four directions were **the four winds of the heavens**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [toward the four directions of the earth]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the goats	The goat
But when it was mighty	But when its power was very great
the … horn	its … horn
{horns of} vision	other large horns
the … winds of	They pointed to the north, south, east, and west
the heavens	They pointed to the north, south, east, and west

Daniel 8:9

ULT	UST
And from one of them a little horn came forth, and it became great exceedingly toward the south and toward the east and toward the Beauty.	*A little horn grew from one of those horns. It became very large. It pointed toward the south and then toward the east and then toward the beautiful land {of Israel}.*

ULT and toward the Beauty
UST and then toward the beautiful land {of Israel}
(וְאֶל־הַצֶּבִי)

Here, **the Beauty** represents "the land of Israel." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and toward the glorious land of Israel]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
horn	horn

Daniel 8:10

ULT	UST
And it became great to the army of the heavens. And it made fall to the earth some of the army and some of the stars, and it trampled them.	*That horn became so strong that it even attacked the angels in heaven. It threw some of the angels and some of the stars from the sky onto the earth, and it trampled on them.*

ULT **the army of the heavens**
UST the angels in heaven … from the sky
(צְבָא הַשָּׁמָיִם)

Daniel is speaking of the beings who live in heaven as if they were **the army of the heavens**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the heavenly beings]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the heavens	in heaven … from the sky
to the earth	onto the earth
and it trampled them	and it trampled on them

Daniel 8:11

ULT	UST
And it became great to the commander of the army. And the perpetual sacrifice was removed from him, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down.	*The horn wanted people to worship it instead of {Yahweh,} the commander of the heavenly army. It prevented his priests from offering the regular sacrifices to him each morning and evening. It also ruined his temple.*

ULT **the commander of the army**
UST {Yahweh,} the commander of the heavenly army
(שַׂר־הַצָּבָא)

The implication is that **the commander of the army** is God, who rules over the beings who live in heaven. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [God, who commands the army of heaven]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And the perpetual sacrifice was removed from him, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down**
UST It prevented his priests from offering the regular sacrifices to him each morning and evening. It also ruined his temple
(וּמְמֻנּוֹ הרים הַתָּמִיד וְהֻשְׁלַךְ מְכוֹן מִקְדָּשׁוֹ)

The expressions **was removed** and **was cast down** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And it took away the perpetual sacrifice from him, and it threw down the place of his sanctuary]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the perpetual sacrifice**
UST the regular sacrifices … each morning and evening
(הַתָּמִיד)

The implication is that **the perpetual sacrifice** is the offering that the priests presented to God every morning and every evening. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the sacrifice that the priests offered to God every morning and evening]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the commander of	{Yahweh,} the commander of
the perpetual sacrifice	the regular sacrifices … each morning and evening

ULT	UST
his sanctuary	his temple

Daniel 8:12

ULT	UST
And because of transgression, an army will be given over with the perpetual sacrifice, and it will cast truth to the ground. And it will do and succeed.	*Many Israelites disobeyed Yahweh and instead obeyed the horn, who had stopped the priests from offering sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening. The horn prevented people from worshiping Yahweh truly. It succeeded in doing what it wanted to do.*

ULT **will be given over**
UST and instead obeyed the horn
(תִּנָּתֵן)

The expression **will be given over** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God will hand an army over]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and it will cast truth to the ground**
UST The horn prevented people from worshiping Yahweh truly
(וְתַשְׁלֵךְ אֱמֶת אַרְצָה)

Daniel is speaking as if truth were an object that could be thrown down when he says that the horn **will cast truth to the ground**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it will utterly reject the truth]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And it will do and succeed**
UST It succeeded in doing what it wanted to do
(וְעָשָׂתָה וְהִצְלִיחָה)

The phrase **do and succeed** expresses a single idea. The word **succeed** tells more about **do**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [And it will do whatever it wishes with success]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
because of transgression	disobeyed Yahweh
the perpetual sacrifice	who had stopped the priests from offering sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening

ULT	UST
to the ground	The horn prevented people

Daniel 8:13

ULT	UST
And I heard a holy one speaking, and a holy one said to the particular one speaking, "Until when {is} the vision {of} the perpetual sacrifice and the desolating transgression, the giving {of} both the sanctuary and the army for trampling?"	*Then I heard an angel saying something. Another angel asked the one who was talking, "This vision shows that someone will prevent the priests from sacrificing to Yahweh. It shows that many of the Israelites will disobey Yahweh and that this will allow someone to ruin his temple and harm his people. How long will these things continue?"*

ULT **And I heard a holy one speaking**
UST Then I heard an angel saying something
(וָאֶשְׁמְעָה אֶחָד־קָדוֹשׁ מְדַבֵּר)

The implication is that **a holy one** is an angel. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And I heard a holy angel speaking]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the giving {of} both the sanctuary and the army for trampling**
UST many of the Israelites … someone to ruin his temple and harm his people
(תֵּת וְקֹדֶשׁ וְצָבָא מִרְמָס)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the giving**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [that God will give over for trampling both the sanctuary and the army]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for trampling**
UST and harm
(מִרְמָס)

The holy one is speaking of the defeat and desecration of the sanctuary and the army as if enemies would crush them underfoot, since they have been given **for trampling**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to be crushed by enemies]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	angel
a holy one	an angel
is} the vision {of}	This vision shows that … It shows that
the perpetual sacrifice	

ULT	UST
	someone will prevent the priests from sacrificing to Yahweh
desolating	and that this will allow
and the … transgression	will disobey Yahweh
both the sanctuary	his temple
for trampling	and harm

Daniel 8:14

ULT	UST
And he said to me, "Until evening, morning, 2,300. Then the sanctuary will be made right."	*The other angel replied, "They will continue for a total of 2,300 evenings and mornings{, or 1,150 days}. After that, the temple will become a holy place again."*

ULT And he said to me
UST The other angel replied
(וַיֹּאמֶר אֵלָי)

The pronoun **he** refers to the holy one who was speaking, whom Daniel mentioned first in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And that first holy one said to me]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT to me
UST The other angel replied
(אֵלָי)

Some ancient manuscripts read "to me." The ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "to him." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of the ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT Until evening, morning, 2,300
UST They will continue for a total of 2,300 evenings and mornings{, or 1,150 days}
(עַד עֶרֶב בֹּקֶר אַלְפַּיִם וּשְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת)

The number **2,300** counts pairs of an evening and a morning, that is, the times when the priests presented the perpetual sacrifice. Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [Until 2,300 evenings and mornings have passed]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **Until evening, morning**
UST They will continue for a total of … evenings and mornings
(עַד עֶרֶב בֹּקֶר)

The holy one is referring to all of each day by naming two major components, **evening** and **morning**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [Until there have passed full days numbering]

Support Reference: Merism

ULT **Then the sanctuary will be made right**
UST After that, the temple will become a holy place again
(וְנִצְדַּק קֹדֶשׁ)

The expression **will be made right** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [Then God will make the sanctuary right]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the sanctuary	the temple
Then … will be made right	After that … will become a holy place again

Daniel 8:15

ULT	UST
And it was when I had seen the vision, I, Daniel, that I sought understanding. And behold, one standing to my face according to the appearance of a man.	*After I, Daniel, had seen this vision, I was trying to understand what it meant. Suddenly someone in the form of a human being appeared in front of me.*

ULT **And behold**
UST Suddenly
(וְהִנֵּה)

Daniel is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [And listen]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **And behold, one standing to my face**
UST Suddenly … appeared in front of me
(וְהִנֵּה עֹמֵד לְנֶגְדִּי)

Daniel is introducing **one standing to my face** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [And suddenly there was someone standing in front of me]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **And behold, one standing to my face**
UST Suddenly … appeared in front of me
(וְהִנֵּה עֹמֵד לְנֶגְדִּי)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. It may be helpful to supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: [behold, I saw one standing in front of me]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **according to the appearance of a man**
UST someone in the form of a human being
(כְּמַרְאֵה־גָבֶר)

Daniel says that this being was **according to the appearance of a man**. The point of this comparison is that the one standing before him looked like a human being, although he was not actually a man. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [who looked like a human being, although he was not one]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the vision	this vision
Daniel	Daniel
that I sought	I was trying
understanding	to understand what it meant

Daniel 8:16

ULT	UST
And I heard the voice of a man between the Ulai, and he called and said, "Gabriel, make this one understand the appearance."	*Then I heard someone calling out from the middle of the Ulai Canal. His voice sounded human. He said, "Gabriel, explain to him what his vision means."*

ULT **between the Ulai**
UST from the middle of the Ulai Canal
(בֵּ֥ין אוּלָֽי)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [coming from between the banks of the Ulai]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **make this one understand the appearance**
UST explain to him what his vision means
(הָבֵ֣ן לְהַלָּ֔ז אֶת־הַמַּרְאֶ֖ה)

The pronoun **this one** refers to Daniel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [make Daniel understand the appearance]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and he called	someone calling out
Gabriel	Gabriel
make … understand	explain

Daniel 8:17

ULT	UST
And he came beside my standing. And when he came, I was frightened, and fell on my face. But he said to me, "Understand, son of man, that the vision {is} for the time of the end."	*So Gabriel came and stood next to me. This made me so afraid that I fell onto the ground. But he told me, "You mortal, understand that your vision shows something that will happen when the world is about to end."*

ULT **And he came beside my standing**
UST So Gabriel came and stood next to me
(וַיָּבֹא אֵצֶל עָמְדִי)

Daniel is using **beside my standing** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to the place where I was standing." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he came to the place where I was standing]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and fell on my face**
UST that I fell onto the ground
(וָאֶפְּלָה עַל־פָּנָי)

Falling face down on the ground was a symbolic action by which Daniel showed fear and reverence in the presence of this heavenly messenger. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [and fell down with my face to the ground to show reverence]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **son of man**
UST You mortal
(בֶּן־אָדָם)

Gabriel is using **son of man** as a common expression of the culture to mean "mortal human being." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [human being]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I was frightened	made me so afraid

ULT	UST
and fell	that I fell
Understand	understand
son of man	You mortal
the vision	your vision shows something that will happen
{is} for the time of	is about to end

Daniel 8:18

ULT	UST
And when he was speaking with me, I fell deeply asleep with my face to the ground. But he touched me and made me stand on my standing.	*As he was speaking to me, I fainted. I was unconscious on the ground, but Gabriel took hold of me and picked me up so I was standing again.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the ground	on the ground

Daniel 8:19

ULT	UST
And he said, "Behold me, making you know what will happen at the end of the indignation, for {it is} for the appointed time {of} the end.	*Then he said, "I have come to tell you what will happen as God finishes punishing people. He has determined to do that at the end of the world, and your vision shows this.*

ULT **Behold me, making you know**
UST I have come to tell you
(הִנֵּנִי מוֹדִיעֲךָ)

Gabriel is using **Behold me, making you know** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I am about to make you know." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I am about to tell you]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **at the end of the indignation**
UST as God finishes punishing people
(בְּאַחֲרִית הַזָּעַם)

The implication is that **the indignation** is God's anger against sinful people. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [at the end of God's anger against sinners]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
making you know	to tell you
it is} for the appointed time {of}	He has determined to do that

Daniel 8:20

ULT	UST
The ram that you saw, a master of two horns, {is} the kings of Media and Persia.	*You saw a ram that had two horns. Those horns represent the kingdoms of Media and Persia.*

ULT **The ram that you saw, a master of two horns, {is} the kings of Media and Persia**
UST You saw a ram that had two horns. Those horns represent the kingdoms of Media and Persia
(הָאַיִל אֲשֶׁר־רָאִיתָ בַּעַל הַקְּרָנַיִם מַלְכֵי מָדַי וּפָרָס)

Gabriel is speaking as if **The ram** that Daniel saw were the same thing as the kings of Media and Persia, when he means that the ram represents them. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [The ram that you saw, a master of two horns, represents the kings of Media and Persia]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
The ram	a ram
a master of	that had
two horns	two horns. Those horns
{is} the kings of	represent the kingdoms of
Media	Media
and Persia	and Persia

Daniel 8:21

ULT	UST
The male goat {is} the king of Javan, and the great horn that {was} between its eyes, it {is} the first king.	*The goat that you saw represents the kingdom of Javan. The large horn in the middle of its forehead represents its first king.*

ULT **Javan**
UST Javan
(יָוָן)

The word **Javan** is the name of a people group. The home of those people is known in many languages today as “Greece.” You could use that name in your translation if this would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [Greece]

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and the great horn that {was} between its eyes, it {is} the first king**
UST The large horn in the middle of its forehead represents its first king
(וְהַקֶּרֶן הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בֵּין־עֵינָיו הִוא הַמֶּלֶךְ הָרִאשׁוֹן)

Gabriel names **the great horn** first and then refers back to it with the pronoun **it**. If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about the horn and the information about the king together in a single statement. Alternate translation: [and the great horn that was between its eyes represents the first king]

Support Reference: Information Structure

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
goat	The goat that you saw
{is} the king of	represents the kingdom of
Javan	Javan
and the … horn	The … horn
the … king	its … king

Daniel 8:22

ULT	UST
And {as for} the broken {one} and the four {that} arose in its place, four kingdoms will stand from {that} nation, but not with its power.	*The four horns that grew after the first horn broke off represent four kingdoms into which his kingdom will divide. None of them will be as strong as the original kingdom was.*

ULT but not with its power

UST None of them will be as strong as the original kingdom was

(וְלֹא בְכֹחוֹ)

Gabriel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [but they will not stand with the power it has]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
kingdoms	kingdoms
from {that} nation	into which his kingdom

Daniel 8:23

ULT	UST
And at the end of their rule, when transgressors are complete, a king will stand, strong of face and understanding riddles.	*The people in those kingdoms will become very wicked. Near the time when those kingdoms will end, one of them will have a king who defeats his enemies in battle. That king will also be very deceitful.*

ULT **And at the end of their rule**
UST Near the time when those kingdoms will end
(וּבְאַחֲרִית מַלְכוּתָם)

The pronoun **their** refers to the four kingdoms that Gabriel described in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And at the end of these kingdoms' rule]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **when transgressors are complete**
UST The people in those kingdoms will become very wicked
(כְּהָתֵם הַפֹּשְׁעִים)

Gabriel is using **when transgressors are complete** as a common expression of the culture to mean "when sinful people have done all the evil that they will do." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [when sinful people have finished doing all their evil]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **transgressors**
UST The people in those kingdoms will become … wicked
(הַפֹּשְׁעִים)

Some ancient manuscripts read "transgressors." The ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read "transgressions." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of the ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **strong of face**
UST who defeats his enemies in battle
(עַז־פָּנִים)

Gabriel is using **strong of face** as a common expression of the culture to mean "fierce and insolent." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [having a fierce and shameless manner]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and understanding riddles**
UST That king will also be very deceitful
(וּמֵבִין חִידוֹת)

Gabriel is using **understanding riddles** as a common expression of the culture to mean "skilled at scheming." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and skilled at scheming]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
their rule	those kingdoms
when … are complete	very
a king	a king
strong of	who defeats his enemies in battle
and understanding	That king will also be very deceitful

Daniel 8:24

ULT	UST
And his power will be mighty, but not by his power. And being marvelous, he will destroy, and he will succeed and do. And he will destroy the mighty and the people of the holy {ones}.	*That king will become very powerful, but only because God allows that to happen. He will violently destroy many things, and he will succeed in doing what he wants to do. He will destroy powerful opponents, and he will also destroy some of God's people.*

ULT **And his power will be mighty, but not by his power**
UST That king will become very powerful, but only because God allows that to happen
(וְעָצַם כֹּחוֹ וְלֹא בְכֹחוֹ)

The implication is that this king's strength will come from a source outside himself, since God will allow him to become powerful. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And his power will be mighty, but the strength will not come from himself]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he will succeed and do**
UST and he will succeed in doing what he wants to do
(וְהִצְלִיחַ וְעָשָׂה)

The phrase **succeed and do** expresses a single idea. The word **succeed** tells more about **do**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [he will do whatever he wants and be successful at it]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **And he will destroy the mighty**
UST He will destroy powerful opponents, and he will also destroy
(וְהִשְׁחִית עֲצוּמִים)

Gabriel is using the adjective **the mighty** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [And he will destroy powerful people]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **and the people of the holy {ones}**
UST some of God's people
(וְעַם־קְדֹשִׁים)

Gabriel is using the possessive form to describe a **people** that is characterized by being **holy**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the holy people]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And … will be mighty	That king will become … powerful
he will destroy	He will … destroy many things
and he will succeed	and he will succeed
the mighty	powerful opponents
the holy {ones}	God's

Daniel 8:25

ULT	UST
And by his cunning, he will also make deceit succeed under his hand. And in his heart, he will make {himself} great, and he will destroy many in security. And he will stand against the Prince of princes, but he will be broken by no hand.	*Because he will be so treacherous, he will achieve what he wants by deceiving people. He will be very proud of himself. He will make people think that they are safe, but he will then destroy many of them. He will even try to oppose God, who rules over all earthly kings. But God, not a human being, will destroy him.*

ULT **And by his cunning**
UST Because he will be so treacherous
(וְעַל־שִׂכְלֽוֹ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **cunning**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And because he acts shrewdly]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **he will also make deceit succeed under his hand**
UST he will achieve what he wants by deceiving people
(וְהִצְלִ֥יחַ מִרְמָ֖ה בְּיָדֽוֹ)

Here, **his hand** represents "his control." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [he will also make deceit succeed under his control]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **And in his heart, he will make {himself} great**
UST He will be very proud of himself
(וּבִלְבָב֖וֹ יַגְדִּ֑יל)

Gabriel is using the expression **in his heart** together with the words that follow as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will become arrogant." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will become arrogant]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the Prince of princes**
UST God, who rules over all earthly kings
(שַׂר־שָׂרִים)

The implication is that **the Prince of princes** is God, who rules over every other ruler. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [God, the Prince over all princes]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **but he will be broken by no hand**
UST But God, not a human being, will destroy him
(וּבְאֶפֶס יָד יִשָּׁבֵר)

The expression **will be broken** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but no hand will break him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but he will be broken by no hand**
UST But God, not a human being, will destroy him
(וּבְאֶפֶס יָד יִשָּׁבֵר)

Here, **hand** represents "human power." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [but he will be broken by no human power]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his cunning	he will be so treacherous
he will also make … succeed	he will achieve
he will make {himself} great	He will be very proud of himself
he will destroy	but he will then destroy
the Prince of	God, who rules over

Daniel 8:26

ULT	UST
And the appearance of the evening and the morning that was told, it {is} true. But you, close up the vision, for it is for many days."	*Your vision showed how this king will prevent Yahweh's priests from sacrificing to him each morning and evening. That will happen. But {for now,} do not tell others what you saw, because those things will not happen until many years from now."*

ULT **And the appearance of the evening and the morning**
UST Your vision … how this king will prevent Yahweh's priests from sacrificing to him each morning and evening
(וּמַרְאֵ֥ה הָעֶ֖רֶב וְהַבֹּ֑קֶר)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the appearance**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And what was seen concerning the evening and the morning]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **that was told**
UST showed
(אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַ֔ר)

The expression **was told** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that I told you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **close up the vision**
UST But {for now,} do not tell others what you saw
(סְתֹ֥ם הֶחָזֹ֖ון)

Gabriel is speaking as if the vision were a document that Daniel could **close up**, when he means that Daniel should keep its message secret. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [keep the vision secret]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for it is for many days**
UST because those things will not happen until many years from now
(כִּי לְיָמִים רַבִּים)

Gabriel is using **for many days** as a common expression of the culture to mean “about a time far in the future.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for it refers to a time far in the future]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the vision	what you saw
it is for … days	those things will not happen until … years from now

Daniel 8:27

ULT	UST
Then I, Daniel, was finished, and I was sickened {for} days. Then I arose and did the business of the king. But I was desolate at the vision and not understanding.	*Then I, Daniel, had no strength left. I was sick for several days. After that, I got up and went back to work for the king. But I did not understand the vision, and that disturbed me.*

ULT **Then I, Daniel, was finished**
UST Then I, Daniel, had no strength left
(וַאֲנִי דָנִיֵּאל נִהְיֵיתִי)

Daniel is using **was finished** as a common expression of the culture to mean "was completely exhausted." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Then I, Daniel, was completely exhausted]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and I was sickened {for} days**
UST I was sick for several days
(וָאֶחֱלֶה יָמִים)

The expression **was sickened** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and I was ill for days]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the business of the king**
UST and went back to work for the king
(אֶת־מְלֶאכֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the business**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [what the king required me to do]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **But I was desolate at the vision**
UST the vision, and that disturbed me
(וָאֶשְׁתּוֹמֵם עַל־הַמַּרְאֶה)

Daniel is using **I was desolate** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I was appalled." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But I was appalled by the vision]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and not understanding**
UST But I did not understand
(וְאֵין מֵבִין)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and I was not understanding it]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
the king	for the king
But I was desolate	and that disturbed me
the vision	the vision
understanding	I did … understand

Daniel 9

Daniel 9 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Daniel prays, based on Jeremiah's prophecy, that God will restore Jerusalem (1–19)
2. Gabriel comes and explains a further meaning of Jeremiah's prophecy (20–27)

Translation issues in this chapter

What are the "seventy sevens" that Gabriel describes (9:24)?

The Hebrew word for "seven" can also mean a "week," that is, a period of seven days, and so some translators say "seventy weeks" here. Some interpreters understand the term in this context to mean a "week of years," that is, seven years, and so some translations say "490 years." However, these meanings are not certain. It is also possible that the number seven is being used to symbolize completeness rather than to indicate a specific total of years. So we encourage translators to use general expressions that allow for the range of possible interpretations rather than naming a specific total such as 490. The UST models one way to do this. It translates "seventy sevens" as "seventy sets of seven time periods."

Daniel 9:1

ULT	UST
In the year of one to Darius, the son of Ahasuerus, from the seed of Madai, who had been made king over the kingdom of the Chaldeans,	*Darius son of Ahasuerus, who was a Mede, became the next ruler of the Chaldean kingdom.*

ULT **In the year of one to Darius**
UST Darius
(בִּשְׁנַת אַחַת לְדָרְיָוֶשׁ)

The original language uses a cardinal number, **one**, where your language might use an ordinal number. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **In the year of one to Darius**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [In the first year of Darius]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **the son of Ahasuerus, from the seed of Madai, who had been made king over the kingdom of the Chaldeans**
UST son of Ahasuerus, who was a Mede, became the next ruler of the Chaldean kingdom
(בֶּן־אֲחַשְׁוֵרוֹשׁ מִזֶּרַע מָדָי אֲשֶׁר הָמְלַךְ עַל מַלְכוּת כַּשְׂדִּים)

Daniel is providing background information to help readers understand what happens next in the story. In your translation, introduce this information in a way that would be natural in your own language and culture.

Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **from the seed of Madai**
UST who was a Mede
(מִזֶּרַע מָדָי)

Daniel is speaking as if Darius were **seed** that had come from Madai. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a descendant of Madai]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **who had been made king**
UST became the next ruler
(אֲשֶׁר הָמְלַךְ)

The expression **who had been made king** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [who reigned as king]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **In the year of one to Darius, the son of Ahasuerus, from the seed of Madai, who had been made king over the kingdom of the Chaldeans**
UST Darius son of Ahasuerus, who was a Mede, became the next ruler of the Chaldean kingdom
(בִּשְׁנַת אַחַת לְדָרְיָוֶשׁ בֶּן־אֲחַשְׁוֵרוֹשׁ מִזֶּרַע מָדַי אֲשֶׁר הָמְלַךְ עַל מַלְכוּת כַּשְׂדִּים)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine 9:1 and 9:2 into a verse bridge, as the UST does, in order to keep the information about the date of Darius's reign together.

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In the year of	Darius
to Darius	Darius
Ahasuerus	Ahasuerus
from the seed of	who was a Mede
had been made king	became the next ruler
the kingdom of	the … kingdom
the Chaldeans	Chaldean

Daniel 9:2

ULT	UST
in the year of one to his reigning, I, Daniel, perceived in the scrolls the number of years that was the word of Yahweh to Jeremiah the prophet for the filling of the desolations of Jerusalem, seventy years.	*During the first year that Darius was the king, I, Daniel, was studying our holy books. I saw that Yahweh had told the prophet Jeremiah how long Jerusalem would be in a bad condition. It would be for seventy years.*

ULT **perceived in the scrolls**
UST was studying our holy books. I saw that
(בִּינֹתִי בַּסְּפָרִים)

The implication is that **the scrolls** were the writings of the prophets. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [perceived in the sacred scrolls written by the prophets]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the number of years that was the word of Yahweh to Jeremiah the prophet for the filling of the desolations of Jerusalem, seventy years**
UST Yahweh had told the prophet Jeremiah how long Jerusalem would be in a bad condition. It would be for seventy years
(מִסְפַּר הַשָּׁנִים אֲשֶׁר הָיָה דְבַר־יְהוָה אֶל־יִרְמְיָה הַנָּבִיא לְמַלֹּאות לְחָרְבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם שִׁבְעִים שָׁנָה)

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **seventy years** with the information about **the number of years**. Alternate translation: [the number of years, seventy of them, that was the word of Yahweh to Jeremiah the prophet for the filling of the desolations of Jerusalem]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **for the filling of the desolations of Jerusalem**
UST Jerusalem would be in a bad condition
(לְמַלֹּאות לְחָרְבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם)

Daniel is using **the filling of the desolations of Jerusalem** as a common expression of the culture to mean “the completion of the years during which Jerusalem would lie in ruins.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for the completion of the time during which Jerusalem would lie in ruins]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the desolations of Jerusalem**
UST Jerusalem would be in a bad condition
(לְחָרְבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלִָם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **desolations**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the days in which Jerusalem would lie devastated]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to his reigning	that Darius was the king
Daniel	Daniel
perceived	was studying … I saw that
in the scrolls	our holy books
years	how long
the word of Yahweh	Yahweh … told
Jeremiah	Jeremiah
the prophet	the prophet
the desolations of	would be in a bad condition
Jerusalem	Jerusalem

Daniel 9:3

ULT	UST
And I set my face to the Lord God, to seek {him} {by} prayer and supplications with fasting and sackcloth and ashes.	*{After I read that,} I resolved to ask the Lord God to help us. I prayed to him very earnestly. {To show how sorry I was for our sins,} I ate little food, I wore rough cloth, and I put ashes on my head.*

ULT **And I set my face to the Lord God**
UST {After I read that,} I resolved … the Lord God
(וָאֶתְּנָה אֶת־פָּנַי אֶל־אֲדֹנָי הָאֱלֹהִים)

Daniel is using **I set my face to the Lord God** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I gave my full attention to the Lord God." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And I turned my full attention to the Lord God]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **{by} prayer and supplications**
UST I prayed to him very earnestly
(תְּפִלָּה וְתַחֲנוּנִים)

The terms **prayer** and **supplications** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [by earnest pleading]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **with fasting and sackcloth and ashes**
UST {To show how sorry I was for our sins,} I ate little food, I wore rough cloth, and I put ashes on my head
(בְּצוֹם וְשָׂק וָאֵפֶר)

Going without food, wearing rough cloth, and putting ashes on oneself were symbolic actions by which Daniel showed that he was mourning over sin and humbling himself before God. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of these actions in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [with fasting and sackcloth and ashes to show that I was mourning and humbling myself]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and ashes**
UST and I put ashes on my head
(וָאֵפֶר)

In this verse, the word **ashes** is singular in form, but it refers to all of the particles of ashes as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "ashes." Alternate translation: [and ash particles]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the Lord	the Lord
God	God
to seek {him}	to ask … to help us
{by} prayer	I prayed to him
with fasting	{To show how sorry I was for our sins,} I ate little food
and sackcloth	I wore rough cloth

Daniel 9:4

ULT	UST
And I prayed to Yahweh my God, and I confessed and said, "Oh Lord, the great and feared God, the one keeping covenant and covenant faithfulness to the ones loving him and to the keepers of his commandments,	*As I prayed to Yahweh my God, I admitted that we Israelites had sinned. I said, "Oh Lord, you are the powerful God whom everyone should respect! You keep your promises and you faithfully love people who love you and obey your laws.*

ULT **And I prayed to Yahweh my God, and I confessed and said**
UST As I prayed to Yahweh my God, I admitted that we Israelites had sinned. I said
(וָאֶתְפַּלְלָה לַיהוָה אֱלֹהַי וָאֶתְוַדֶּה וָאֹמְרָה)

Daniel is using three verbs, **I prayed**, **I confessed**, and **said**, to introduce a single direct quotation. In your translation, use a natural way of indicating direct quotations in your language.

Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Oh Lord**
UST Oh Lord
(אֲנָא אֲדֹנָי)

Daniel is using a phrase that expresses a strong feeling of urgent appeal to God. There may be an equivalent word or phrase in your language that you can use in your translation to convey this feeling. Alternate translation: [Please, Lord]

Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **the great and feared God**
UST you are the powerful God whom everyone should respect
(הָאֵל הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנּוֹרָא)

The terms **great** and **feared** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the awesome God]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **the one keeping covenant and covenant faithfulness**
UST You keep your promises and you faithfully love
(שֹׁמֵר הַבְּרִית וְהַחֶסֶד)

The terms **keeping covenant** and **covenant faithfulness** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the one faithfully keeping his covenant]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **covenant and covenant faithfulness**
UST your promises and you faithfully love
(הַבְּרִית וְהַחֶסֶד)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **covenant** and **faithfulness**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [what he promised, and acting faithfully]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the ones loving him and to the keepers of his commandments**
UST people who love you and obey your laws
(לְאֹהֲבָיו וּלְשֹׁמְרֵי מִצְוֹתָיו)

Even though Daniel is addressing God directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **him** and **his** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [to the ones loving you and to the keepers of your commandments]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to the ones loving him and to the keepers of his commandments**
UST people who love you and obey your laws
(לְאֹהֲבָיו וּלְשֹׁמְרֵי מִצְוֹתָיו)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [to the ones who show that they truly love him by keeping his commandments]

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And I prayed	As I prayed
to Yahweh	to Yahweh

ULT	UST
my God	my God
and I confessed	I admitted that we Israelites had sinned
Lord	Lord
and feared	whom everyone should respect
the … God	you are the … God
covenant	your promises
and covenant faithfulness	and you faithfully love
to the ones loving him	people who love you

Daniel 9:5

ULT	UST
we have sinned and committed iniquity and acted wickedly and rebelled, turning away from your commandments and your judgments.	*But we Israelites have sinned against you. We have done things that are wrong. We have done wicked things and rebelled against you. We have disobeyed many of your laws.*

ULT **we have sinned**
UST But we Israelites have sinned against you
(חָטָאנוּ)

By **we**, Daniel means himself and his fellow Israelites but not the one to whom he is speaking, so use the exclusive form of that word in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **and committed iniquity**
UST We have done things that are wrong
(וְעָוִינוּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **iniquity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and acted perversely]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **turning away from your commandments and your judgments**
UST We have disobeyed many of your laws
(וְסוֹר מִמִּצְוֹתֶךָ וּמִמִּשְׁפָּטֶיךָ)

Daniel is speaking as if refusing to obey God's commands were **turning away** from them. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [refusing to obey your commandments and your judgments]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **from your commandments and your judgments**
UST many of your laws
(מִמִּצְוֹתֶיךָ וּמִמִּשְׁפָּטֶיךָ)

The terms **your commandments** and **your judgments** mean similar things. Daniel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [turning away from all of your laws]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
we have sinned	But we Israelites have sinned against you
and committed iniquity	We have done things that are wrong
and rebelled	and rebelled against you
and your judgments	many of your laws

Daniel 9:6

ULT	UST
And we have not listened to your servants the prophets, who spoke in your name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all of the people of the land.	*You sent prophets to bring messages from you to our kings, our other rulers, and our ancestors. They spoke those messages to all the Israelite people. But we did not obey what they told us to do.*

ULT **And we have not listened to your servants the prophets**
UST You sent prophets … But we did not obey what they told us to do
(וְלֹא שָׁמַעְנוּ אֶל־עֲבָדֶיךָ הַנְּבִיאִים)

Daniel is using **we have not listened to** as a common expression of the culture to mean "we have not obeyed." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And we have not obeyed your servants the prophets]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **who spoke in your name**
UST to bring messages from you
(אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ בְשִׁמְךָ)

Here, **your name** represents "your authority." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [who spoke by your authority]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and our fathers**
UST and our ancestors
(וַאֲבֹתֵינוּ)

Daniel is speaking as if all of the earlier generations of the Israelites were their **fathers**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and our forefathers]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your servants	You sent
the prophets	prophets
our kings	our kings
our princes	our other rulers

ULT	UST
the land	Israelite

Daniel 9:7

ULT	UST
To you, Lord, {is} righteousness, but to us {is} shame of faces as this day, to a man of Judah and to the dwellers of Jerusalem and to all of Israel, the near and the far in all of the lands where you have driven them there for their transgression that they transgressed against you.	*Lord, you were right to punish us for sinning so seriously against you. But as a result, we are now in a shameful condition. This is true of the Israelites who still live in Jerusalem and other places in Judea. It is also true of the Israelites whose enemies you allowed to take away to other countries. Some of those countries are near Israel, and others are farther away.*

ULT **To you, Lord, {is} righteousness**
UST Lord, you were right to punish us
(לְךָ אֲדֹנָי הַצְּדָקָה)

Daniel is using this expression as a common expression of the culture to mean "You, Lord, have always done what is right." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [You, Lord, have always done what is right]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **{is} shame of faces**
UST are … in a shameful condition
(בֹּשֶׁת הַפָּנִים)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **shame**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [belong faces that show we are ashamed]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **{is} shame of faces**
UST are … in a shameful condition
(בֹּשֶׁת הַפָּנִים)

Daniel is using **faces** to represent the whole person who is ashamed. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [is complete disgrace]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **as this day**
UST now
(כַּיּוֹם הַזֶּה)

Daniel is using **as this day** as a common expression of the culture to mean "as is the case at the present time." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [as is the case at the present time]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to a man of Judah**
UST This is true of the Israelites … and other places in Judea
(לְאִישׁ יְהוּדָה)

In this verse, the word **man** is singular in form, but it refers to all of the people of Judah as a group. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the plural form of "man." Alternate translation: [to the men of Judah]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **the near and the far**
UST Some of those countries are near Israel, and others are farther away
(הַקְּרֹבִים וְהָרְחֹקִים)

Daniel is using the adjectives **near** and **far** as nouns to mean certain kinds of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate these adjectives with equivalent phrases. Alternate translation: [the ones who are nearby and the ones who are far away]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **in all of the lands where you have driven them there**
UST whose enemies you allowed to take away to other countries
(בְּכָל־הָאֲרָצוֹת אֲשֶׁר הִדַּחְתָּם שָׁם)

It might seem that the expression **where you have driven them there** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [in all of the lands to which you have driven them]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
{is} righteousness	were right to punish us
{is} shame of	are … in a shameful condition

ULT	UST
Judah	and other places in Judea
Jerusalem	Jerusalem
Israel	It is also true of the Israelites
the lands	to … countries
for their transgression	for sinning so seriously
they transgressed	for sinning so seriously

Daniel 9:8

ULT	UST
Yahweh, to us {is} shame of faces, to our kings, to our princes, and to our fathers, because we have sinned against you.	*Yahweh, we have sinned against you, and so we and our kings, our other rulers, and our ancestors are in a shameful condition.*

ULT to our kings, to our princes, and to our fathers
UST and our kings, our other rulers, and our ancestors
(לְמַלְכֵינוּ לְשָׂרֵינוּ וְלַאֲבֹתֵינוּ)

Daniel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [to our kings, our princes, and our fathers there is also complete disgrace]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	Yahweh
{is} shame of	are in a shameful condition
to our kings	and our kings
to our princes	our other rulers
we have sinned	we have sinned

Daniel 9:9

ULT	UST
To the Lord our God, {may there be} compassion and forgiveness, for we have rebelled against him,	*I ask you, our Lord and God, to forgive us and treat us kindly, even though we have rebelled against you.*

ULT **To the Lord our God, {may there be} compassion and forgiveness, for we have rebelled against him**

UST I ask you, our Lord and God, to forgive us and treat us kindly, even though we have rebelled against you

(לַאדֹנָי אֱלֹהֵינוּ הָרַחֲמִים וְהַסְּלִחוֹת כִּי מָרַדְנוּ בּוֹ)

Even though Daniel is addressing God directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **the Lord our God** and **him** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [To you, our Lord and God, we pray for compassion and forgiveness, for we have rebelled against you]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **{may there be} compassion and forgiveness**

UST I ask you … to forgive us and treat us kindly

(הָרַחֲמִים וְהַסְּלִחוֹת)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **compassion** and **forgiveness**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [we ask that you would act compassionately and forgive us]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
To the Lord	our Lord
our God	and God
{may there be} compassion	and treat us kindly
and forgiveness	I ask you … to forgive us
we have rebelled	we have rebelled

Daniel 9:10

ULT	UST
and we have not listened to the voice of Yahweh our God, to walk in his laws that he gave to our faces by the hand of his servants the prophets.	*You sent your prophets to speak to us directly and tell us to obey your laws. But we did not obey what you, our God, said to us through them.*

ULT **to the voice of Yahweh our God**
UST what you, our God, said to us
(בְּקוֹל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ)

Here, **the voice of Yahweh our God** represents "what Yahweh our God commanded." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [to what Yahweh our God commanded]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **to walk in his laws**
UST and tell us to obey your laws
(לָלֶכֶת בְּתוֹרֹתָיו)

Daniel is speaking as if obeying God's laws were **to walk in** them. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to obey his laws]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **that he gave to our faces**
UST to speak to us directly
(אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לְפָנֵינוּ)

Here, **our faces** represents "us." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [that he gave to us]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **by the hand of his servants the prophets**
UST You sent your prophets … through them
(בְּיַד עֲבָדָיו הַנְּבִיאִים)

Here, **the hand** represents the agency of a person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [through his servants the prophets]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	you
our God	our God
in his laws	your laws
his servants	You sent
the prophets	your prophets

Daniel 9:11

ULT	UST
And all of Israel has transgressed your law and has turned away, not listening to your voice. And the oath has been poured out on us, and the curse, that is written in the law of Moses, the servant of God, because we have sinned against him.	*All of us Israelite people have failed to do what your law requires and have done other things instead. We have not obeyed what you told us to do. We have sinned against you, and as a result, you have made very bad things happen to us. You swore that you would do that if we sinned so badly. Your servant Moses wrote this in the law.*

ULT **And the oath has been poured out on us, and the curse, that is written in the law of Moses**

UST you have made very bad things happen to us. You swore that you would do that if we sinned so badly … Moses wrote this in the law

(וַתִּתַּךְ עָלֵינוּ הָאָלָה וְהַשְּׁבֻעָה אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבָה בְּתוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה)

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **the curse** with the information about **the oath**. Alternate translation: [And the oath and the curse have been poured out on us, which are written in the law of Moses]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And the oath has been poured out on us, and the curse**

UST you have made very bad things happen to us. You swore that you would do that if we sinned so badly

(וַתִּתַּךְ עָלֵינוּ הָאָלָה וְהַשְּׁבֻעָה)

Daniel is speaking as if the oath and the curse were a liquid that could be **poured out** on the Israelites. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And we have experienced the oath and the curse]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the oath has been poured out on us**

UST you have made … happen to us. You swore that you would do that if we sinned so badly

(וַתִּתַּךְ עָלֵינוּ הָאָלָה)

The expression **has been poured out** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And you have poured out the oath]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **that is written**
> UST wrote this
> (אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבָה)

The expression **that is written** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that God had written]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Israel	us Israelite people
has transgressed	have failed to do
your law	what your law requires
the oath	You swore that you would do that if we sinned so badly
and the curse	very bad things
in the law of	in the law
the servant of	servant
God	Your
we have sinned	We have sinned

Daniel 9:12

ULT	UST
And he has made stand his word that he spoke against us and against our judges who judged us, to bring great trouble upon us that has not been done under all of the heavens like what has been done to Jerusalem.	*You said that these things would happen to us and our rulers, and you have done just what you said. You made a great disaster happen to us. No other city in the world has experienced something like what has happened to Jerusalem.*

ULT **And he has made stand his word**
UST and you have done just what you said
(וַיָּקֶם אֶת־דבריו)

Daniel is using **made stand his word** as a common expression of the culture to mean "fulfilled his word." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [kept his word] or [done what he said he would do]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that has not been done under all of the heavens like what has been done to Jerusalem**
UST No other city in the world has experienced something like what has happened to Jerusalem
(אֲשֶׁר לֹא־נֶעֱשְׂתָה תַּחַת כָּל־הַשָּׁמַיִם כַּאֲשֶׁר נֶעֱשְׂתָה בִּירוּשָׁלָם)

The expressions **has not been done** and **has been done** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [that he has not done anywhere under all of the heavens like what he has done to Jerusalem]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
our judges	our rulers
judged us	our rulers
trouble	a … disaster
the heavens	in the world
to Jerusalem	to Jerusalem

Daniel 9:13

ULT	UST
Like what is written in the law of Moses, all of this trouble has come upon us, but we have not entreated the face of Yahweh our God, to return from our iniquities and pay attention to your truth.	*You have made this great disaster happen to us just as Moses wrote in the law. Even so, we have not tried to make you, our God, treat us favorably again. We have not stopped committing sins. We have not recognized that you tell us the right way to live.*

ULT **but we have not entreated the face of Yahweh our God**
UST Even so, we have not tried to make you, our God, treat us favorably again
(וְלֹא־חִלִּ֣ינוּ אֶת־פְּנֵ֔י ׀ יְהוָ֖ה אֱלֹהֵ֑ינוּ)

Daniel is using **the face** to represent Yahweh himself. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [but we have not entreated Yahweh our God himself]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **to return from our iniquities**
UST We have not stopped committing sins
(לָשׁ֖וּב מֵֽעֲוֹנֵ֑נוּ)

Daniel is speaking as if abandoning sin were **to return from** a place where the people had been. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to turn away from our iniquities] or [to repent of our sin]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the law of Moses	Moses … in the law
trouble	disaster
Yahweh	you
our God	our God
to return	We have not stopped
from our iniquities	committing sins

Daniel 9:14

ULT	UST
And Yahweh watched over the trouble and brought it upon us, for Yahweh our God {is} righteous in all of his deeds that he has done, for we have not listened to his voice.	*Because we did not obey what you told us, it was right for you, our God, to punish us as you did. You were ready to cause this disaster, and you made it happen to us when we deserved it.*

ULT **And Yahweh watched over the trouble**
UST You were ready to cause this disaster
(וַיִּשְׁקֹד יְהוָה עַל־הָרָעָה)

Daniel is using **Yahweh watched over the trouble** as a common expression of the culture to mean “Yahweh kept the disaster ready to send.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And Yahweh watched for the right time to bring the disaster]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Yahweh	You
And … watched	were ready to cause
the trouble	this disaster
Yahweh	for you
our God	our God
{is} righteous	it was right

Daniel 9:15

ULT	UST
And now, Lord our God, who brought out your people from the land of Egypt with a mighty hand and made a name for yourself as this day, we have sinned, we have acted wickedly.	*Now here is my request. Lord our God, you rescued us Israelites from slavery in Egypt by your great power. As a result, you have had a great reputation ever since then. But we still sinned against you by doing wicked things.*

ULT **And now, Lord our God**
UST Now here is my request. Lord our God
(וְעַתָּה ׀ אֲדֹנָי אֱלֹהֵינוּ)

The words **And now** mark a transition from Daniel's confession to his request. If the connection between this statement and the previous one is not clear, you may want to use a different connecting word to show how this statement relates to what comes before it. Alternate translation: [So then, Lord our God]

Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **with a mighty hand**
UST by your great power
(בְּיָד חֲזָקָה)

Here, **a mighty hand** represents "great power." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [with your mighty strength]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and made a name for yourself**
UST As a result, you have had a great reputation
(וַתַּעַשׂ־לְךָ שֵׁם)

Here, **a name** represents "a reputation." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and made a reputation for yourself]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
our God	our God
from the land of	from slavery in Egypt
Egypt	from slavery in Egypt
mighty	great

ULT	UST
we have sinned we have acted wickedly	But we still sinned against you by doing wicked things

Daniel 9:16

ULT	UST
Lord, according to all of your righteousnesses, may your nose and your heat please turn back from your city, Jerusalem, the mountain of your holiness. For because of our sins and because of the iniquities of our fathers, Jerusalem and your people {are} for a reproach to all of {the ones} around us.	*Lord, just as you have delivered us in the past, I ask you now to stop being so very angry with the people of Jerusalem. That is the city where you chose to be present in a special way in your temple on Mount Zion. I ask this because the people of other nations are saying bad things about Jerusalem and us Israelites. They are doing that because you have punished us for the sins that we and our ancestors committed.*

ULT **according to all of your righteousnesses**
UST just as you have delivered us in the past
(כְּכָל־צִדְקֹתֶיךָ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **righteousnesses**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [according to your righteous deeds]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **according to all of your righteousnesses**
UST just as you have delivered us in the past
(כְּכָל־צִדְקֹתֶיךָ)

The phrase **according to all of your righteousnesses** probably refers initially to Yahweh's "righteous acts," that is, his acts of deliverance, supremely in the Exodus, described in v. 15. But in light of the overall prayer, it also refers to his righteous character (vv. 7, 14). This phrase could mean: (1) [in keeping with your acts of deliverance] or (2) [because you always do what is right]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **according to all of your righteousnesses**
UST just as you have delivered us in the past
(כְּכָל־צִדְקֹתֶיךָ)

The implication is that **your righteousnesses** are the righteous deeds by which Yahweh had rescued his people in the past. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [according to all of the righteous deeds by which you have rescued us in the past]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **may your nose and your heat please turn back**
UST I ask you now to stop being so very angry
(יָשָׁב־נָא אַפְּךָ֣ וַחֲמָתְךָ֔)

Daniel is using **your nose and your heat** as a common expression of the culture to mean "your burning anger." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [may you please turn your fierce anger away]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the mountain of your holiness**
UST where you chose to be present in a special way in your temple on Mount Zion
(הַר־קָדְשֶׁךָ)

Daniel is using the possessive form to describe a **mountain** that is characterized by **holiness**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [your holy mountain]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the mountain of your holiness**
UST where you chose to be present in a special way in your temple on Mount Zion
(הַר־קָדְשֶׁךָ)

The implication is that **the mountain of your holiness** is Mount Zion, where the temple stood. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [your holy mountain, Mount Zion]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
your righteousnesses	just as you have delivered us in the past
and your heat	being so very angry
Jerusalem	with the people of Jerusalem
your holiness	where you chose to be present in a special way
because of our sins	They are doing that because you have punished us for the sins that we … committed
and because of the iniquities of	and
Jerusalem	Jerusalem
{are} for a reproach	are saying bad things about

ULT	UST
may … please turn back	I ask you now to stop

Daniel 9:17

ULT	UST
And now, our God, listen to the prayer of your servant and to his supplications, and make your face shine on your desolate sanctuary, for the sake of the Lord.	*But now, our God, please do what I, your servant, am earnestly asking you to do. For the sake of your own reputation, please regard favorably your temple, which our enemies have ruined.*

ULT **to the prayer of your servant and to his supplications**
UST please do what I, your servant, am earnestly asking you to do
(אֶל־תְּפִלַּת עַבְדְּךָ וְאֶל־תַּחֲנוּנָיו)

Even though Daniel is speaking about himself, he refers to himself in the third person as **your servant** to show humility before God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: [listen to my prayer, your servant, and to my supplications]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and make your face shine on your desolate sanctuary**
UST please regard favorably your temple, which our enemies have ruined
(וְהָאֵר פָּנֶיךָ עַל־מִקְדָּשְׁךָ הַשָּׁמֵם)

Daniel is speaking as if Yahweh's favor were light shining from his **face** onto the sanctuary. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and show your favor to your desolate sanctuary]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for the sake of the Lord**
UST For the sake of your own reputation
(לְמַעַן אֲדֹנָי)

Even though Daniel is addressing Yahweh directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **the Lord** to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in a respectful form in the second person. Alternate translation: [for your own sake, my Lord]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
our God	our God
the prayer of	am … asking you to do
your servant	what I, your servant

ULT	UST
desolate	which our enemies have ruined
your … sanctuary	your temple
the Lord	your own reputation

Daniel 9:18

ULT	UST
Incline your ear, my God, and hear. Open your eyes and see our desolations and the city upon which your name is called. For we are not making our supplications fall to your face because of our righteousnesses but because of your great mercies.	*My God, please listen to my prayer and do what I ask. Please consider carefully that Jerusalem, the city that belongs to you in a special way, is in ruins. I am not pleading with you to help us because we are good people and deserve that. I am asking you to help us because you are very merciful.*

ULT **Incline your ear, my God, and hear**
UST My God, please listen to my prayer and do what I ask
(הַטֵּה אֱלֹהַי ׀ אָזְנְךָ֣ וּשְׁמָ֑ע)

Daniel is using **Incline your ear** as a common expression of the culture to mean "please give me your attention." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Pay attention, my God, and hear]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Open your eyes and see**
UST Please consider carefully
(פקחה עֵינֶ֙יךָ֙ וּרְאֵה)

Daniel is using **Open your eyes** as a common expression of the culture to mean "pay attention." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Pay attention and consider]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **our desolations and the city upon which your name is called**
UST that Jerusalem, the city that belongs to you in a special way, is in ruins
(שְׁמָמֹתֵ֔ינוּ וְהָעִ֕יר אֲשֶׁר־נִקְרָ֥א שִׁמְךָ֖ עָלֶ֑יהָ)

The phrase **our desolations and the city upon which your name is called** expresses a single idea. The word **desolations** describes the state of **the city**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [the desolations of our city, upon which your name is called] or [the city upon which your name is called, which lies in desolation]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **and the city upon which your name is called**
UST that Jerusalem, the city that belongs to you in a special way
(וְהָעִ֔יר אֲשֶׁר־נִקְרָ֥א שִׁמְךָ֖ עָלֶ֑יהָ)

The expression **your name is called** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and the city upon which you have put your name]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the city upon which your name is called**
UST that Jerusalem, the city that belongs to you in a special way
(וְהָעִ֔יר אֲשֶׁר־נִקְרָ֥א שִׁמְךָ֖ עָלֶ֑יהָ)

Daniel is using **the city upon which your name is called** as a common expression of the culture to mean “the city that is your own possession.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and the city that is your own possession]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **are … making our supplications fall to your face**
UST am … pleading with you to help us
(מַפִּילִ֥ים תַּחֲנוּנֵ֖ינוּ לְפָנֶ֑יךָ)

Daniel is using **making our supplications fall to your face** as a common expression of the culture to mean “presenting our requests to you.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [are not laying our petitions before you]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **your great mercies**
UST you are very merciful
(רַחֲמֶ֖יךָ הָרַבִּֽים)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **mercies**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [how very merciful you are]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
my God	My God
our desolations	is in ruins

ULT	UST
is called	belongs to you in a special way
our righteousnesses	we are good people and deserve that
your … mercies	you are … merciful

Daniel 9:19

ULT	UST
Lord, hear! Lord, forgive! Lord, pay attention and act! For your sake, my God, may you not delay, for your name is called upon your city and upon your people.”	*Lord, please listen to me! Lord, please forgive us! Lord, please do what I am asking you to do! Jerusalem belongs to you in a special way, and so do we Israelites. So please help us quickly, my God, for the sake of your own reputation.”*

ULT **Lord, hear! Lord, forgive! Lord, pay attention and act**
UST Lord, please listen to me! Lord, please forgive us! Lord, please do what I am asking you to do
(אֲדֹנָי ׀ שְׁמָעָה אֲדֹנָי ׀ סְלָחָה אֲדֹנָי הַקְשִׁיבָה וַעֲשֵׂה)

The words translated as **hear**, **forgive**, **pay attention** and **act** are imperatives, but they communicate a request rather than a command. If the imperative does not communicate a request for your readers, then use a form in your language that communicates a request. Alternate translation: [Lord, I ask you to hear! Lord, I beg you to forgive! Lord, I plead with you to pay attention and act]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
forgive	please forgive us
my God	my God
is called	belongs to you in a special way

Daniel 9:20

ULT	UST
And I was still speaking and praying and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel and making my supplication fall to the face of Yahweh my God for the mountain of the holiness of my God,	*I was praying and confessing the sins that I and my fellow Israelites had committed. I was pleading with Yahweh my God on behalf of Jerusalem, the place where he was present in a special way in his temple on Mount Zion. While I was still praying, Gabriel, the angel whom I had seen in my previous vision, came flying rapidly to me. He came at the time in the evening when the priests offered a sacrifice each day. (vv20-21)*

ULT **And I was still speaking and praying and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel and making my supplication fall to the face of Yahweh my God for the mountain of the holiness of my God**

UST I was praying and confessing the sins that I and my fellow Israelites had committed. I was pleading with Yahweh my God on behalf of Jerusalem, the place where he was present in a special way in his temple on Mount Zion

(וְעֹוד אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר וּמִתְפַּלֵּל וּמִתְוַדֶּה חַטָּאתִי וְחַטַּאת עַמִּי יִשְׂרָאֵל וּמַפִּיל תְּחִנָּתִי לִפְנֵי יְהוָה אֱלֹהָי עַל הַר־קֹדֶשׁ אֱלֹהָי)

You can create a verse bridge for these two verses, 20-21, in order not to repeat the information “I was still speaking.” The UST models one way to do that.

Support Reference: Verse Bridges

ULT **And I was still speaking and praying and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel and making my supplication fall to the face of Yahweh my God for the mountain of the holiness of my God**

UST I was praying and confessing the sins that I and my fellow Israelites had committed. I was pleading with Yahweh my God on behalf of Jerusalem, the place where he was present in a special way in his temple on Mount Zion

(וְעֹוד אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר וּמִתְפַּלֵּל וּמִתְוַדֶּה חַטָּאתִי וְחַטַּאת עַמִּי יִשְׂרָאֵל וּמַפִּיל תְּחִנָּתִי לִפְנֵי יְהוָה אֱלֹהָי עַל הַר־קֹדֶשׁ אֱלֹהָי)

The words that the ULT translates as **And I was still speaking** indicate that Gabriel came to Daniel at the same time as when Daniel was praying. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could describe the time relationship more explicitly. Alternate translation: [While I was still speaking and praying and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel and presenting my supplication before Yahweh my God for the holy mountain of my God]

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and praying	was praying
and confessing	and confessing

ULT	UST
my sin	the sins that I … had committed
and the sin of	and
Israel	my fellow Israelites
Yahweh	Yahweh
my God	my God
the holiness of	in his temple

Daniel 9:21

ULT	UST
and I was still speaking in prayer, and the man Gabriel whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning was flying in swiftness, reaching to me at the time of the offering of the evening.	*I was praying and confessing the sins that I and my fellow Israelites had committed. I was pleading with Yahweh my God on behalf of Jerusalem, the place where he was present in a special way in his temple on Mount Zion. While I was still praying, Gabriel, the angel whom I had seen in my previous vision, came flying rapidly to me. He came at the time in the evening when the priests offered a sacrifice each day. (vv20-21)*

ULT **and the man Gabriel whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning**
UST Gabriel, the angel whom I had seen in my previous vision
(וְהָאִישׁ גַּבְרִיאֵל אֲשֶׁר־רָאִיתִי בֶחָזוֹן בַּתְּחִלָּה)

Daniel is reintroducing **the man Gabriel**, whom he had described earlier, as a participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of reintroducing participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [and Gabriel, the same man whom I had seen earlier in the vision]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **and the man Gabriel**
UST Gabriel, the angel
(וְהָאִישׁ גַּבְרִיאֵל)

The implication is that Gabriel was an angel, and Daniel calls him **the man** because Gabriel appeared in human form. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and the angel Gabriel]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **at the time of the offering of the evening**
UST He came at the time in the evening when the priests offered a sacrifice each day
(כְּעֵת מִנְחַת־עֶרֶב)

The implication is that **the offering of the evening** was the sacrifice that the priests offered every day at that time. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [at the time when the priests presented the daily evening sacrifice]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in prayer	was … praying

ULT	UST
Gabriel	Gabriel
in the vision	in my … vision
at the time of	He came at the time
the offering of	when the priests offered a sacrifice each day

Daniel 9:22

ULT	UST
And he made me understand and he spoke with me and said, "Daniel, I have now come forth to make you wise {for} understanding.	*By speaking with me, he enabled me to understand {what Yahweh had told Jeremiah about Jerusalem}. He told me, "Daniel, I have come to enable you to understand.*

ULT And he made me understand and he spoke with me and said
UST By speaking with me, he enabled me to understand {what Yahweh had told Jeremiah about Jerusalem}. He told me
(וַיָּבֶן וַיְדַבֵּר עִמִּי וַיֹּאמַר)

Daniel is describing one event, Gabriel making him understand, before describing another event that preceded it, Gabriel speaking with him. If it would be helpful in your language, you may wish to relate these events in the order in which they happened, as in the UST.

Support Reference: Order of Events

ULT to make you wise {for} understanding
UST to enable you to understand
(לְהַשְׂכִּילְךָ בִּינָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **understanding**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [to enable you to understand wisely]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
to make you wise	to enable you
{for} understanding	to understand

Daniel 9:23

ULT	UST
At the beginning of your supplications, a word came forth, and I, I have come to declare {it}, for you {are} desirablenesses. So understand the word and understand the appearance.	*When you first started to plead with Yahweh, he gave me a message for you. He loves you very much, so he sent me to you with this message. So please understand what I tell you and understand why I have appeared to you.*

ULT **a word came forth**
UST he gave me a message for you
(יָצָא דָּבָר)

The implication is that **a word came forth** from God. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [a word came forth from God]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and I, I have come**
UST so he sent me
(וַאֲנִי בָּאתִי)

Gabriel is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **I have come** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he himself has come immediately to answer Daniel's prayer. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [I have indeed come]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for you {are} desirablenesses**
UST He loves you very much … So
(כִּי חֲמוּדוֹת אָתָּה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **desirablenesses**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [for you are very precious]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for you {are} desirablenesses**
UST He loves you very much … So
(כִּי חֲמוּדוֹת אָתָּה)

Gabriel is using the term **desirablenesses** as a common expression of the culture to mean "one whom God loves greatly." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for you are one whom God loves greatly]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **So understand the word and understand the appearance**
UST please understand what I tell you and understand why I have appeared to you
(וּבִין בַּדָּבָר וְהָבֵן בַּמַּרְאֶה)

In the original language, the first **understand** is "Qal," and the second **understand** is from "Hiphil." The meaning of the second is not to "make understood" but ingressive, to "come to understand." Some languages may have forms that they can use to express these slightly different meanings. Alternate translation: [So consider this message and grasp the meaning of this vision] or [Therefore, ponder the message and begin to understand the meaning of the vision]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to declare {it}	to you with this message
So understand	please understand

Daniel 9:24

ULT	UST
Seventy sevens have been determined for your people and for the city of your holiness, to finish transgression and to seal up sins and to cover iniquity and to bring in righteousness of eternities and to seal up vision and prophecy and to anoint the Holy of Holies.	*Yahweh has determined that there will be seventy sets of seven time periods for you Israelites and for the holy city {of Jerusalem}. He will stop you from rebelling against him and keep you from committing more sins. He will forgive the wrong things you have done, and he will enable you always to do what is right. He will make the things happen that he showed to his prophets in visions. He will make his temple a sacred place again.*

ULT **Seventy sevens have been determined**
UST Yahweh has determined that there will be seventy sets of seven time periods
(שָׁבֻעִים שִׁבְעִים נֶחְתְּכוּ)

The expression **have been determined** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God has determined seventy sevens]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Seventy sevens**
UST there will be seventy sets of seven time periods
(שָׁבֻעִים שִׁבְעִים)

The expression **Seventy sevens** refers to seventy units of seven. Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [Seventy periods of seven]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **to finish transgression and to seal up sins and to cover iniquity and to bring in righteousness of eternities**
UST He will stop you from rebelling against him and keep you from committing more sins. He will forgive the wrong things you have done, and he will enable you always to do what is right
(לְכַלֵּא הַפָּשַׁע וּלְחתם חטאות וּלְכַפֵּר עָוֹן וּלְהָבִיא צֶדֶק עֹלָמִים)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **transgression**, **sins**, **iniquity**, and **righteousness**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [to stop people from transgressing and to seal up what they have done wrongly and to cover what they have done perversely and to bring in what is eternally right]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and to seal up sins**
UST and keep you from committing more sins
(ולחתם חטאות)

Gabriel is speaking as if putting an end to sins were **to seal up** a container so that nothing more could come out of it. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and to put an end to sins]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and to cover iniquity**
UST He will forgive the wrong things you have done
(וּלְכַפֵּר עָוֹן)

Gabriel is speaking as if forgiving iniquity were **to cover** it so that it could no longer be seen. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and to forgive iniquity]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and to seal up vision and prophecy**
UST He will make the things happen that he showed to his prophets in visions
(וְלַחְתֹּם חָזוֹן וְנָבִיא)

Gabriel is speaking as if bringing about what the prophets foretold were **to seal up** a document to certify it. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and to fulfill vision and prophecy]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and to anoint the Holy of Holies**
UST He will make his temple a sacred place again
(וְלִמְשֹׁחַ קֹדֶשׁ קָדָשִׁים)

This could mean: (1) **the Holy of Holies** refers to the most holy place in the temple or (2) it refers to a most holy person. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and to anoint the most holy place in the temple]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
your holiness	holy
transgression	from rebelling against him

ULT	UST
and to seal up	and keep you
sins	from committing more sins
iniquity	the wrong things you have done
righteousness of	to do what is right
eternities	always
vision	in visions
and prophecy	that he showed to his prophets
and to anoint	He will make … a sacred place again
the Holy of Holies	his temple

Daniel 9:25

ULT	UST
And may you know and understand, from the going forth of the word to return and to build Jerusalem until an anointed one, a ruler, {there will be} seven sevens and sixty and two sevens. It will return and it will be built {with} a square and a trench, but in distress of times.	*I want you to understand this well. A king will command people to rebuild Jerusalem. When they rebuild it, it will have a large public plaza, and it will have a ditch around it to protect it. It will be a dangerous time. After that, there will be seven sets of seven time periods and then sixty-two more sets of seven time periods. Then a leader will come whom God will have chosen.*

ULT **And may you know and understand**
UST I want you to understand this well
(וְתֵדַע וְתַשְׂכֵּל)

The terms **know** and **understand** mean similar things. Gabriel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [And may you understand this clearly]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **from the going forth of the word to return and to build Jerusalem**
UST A king will command people to rebuild Jerusalem … After that
(מִן־מֹצָא דָבָר לְהָשִׁיב וְלִבְנוֹת יְרוּשָׁלִַם)

Gabriel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [from the time when a king issues the command to return and to build Jerusalem]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the going forth of the word**
UST A king will command people
(מֹצָא דָבָר)

The implication is that **the going forth of the word** is the issuing of a royal decree. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the issuing of the royal decree]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to return**
UST to rebuild
(לְהָשִׁיב)

Here **return** is an idiom meaning "do again." Alternate translation: [to build Jerusalem again] or [to rebuild Jerusalem]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **It will return and it will be built**
UST When they rebuild it
(תָּשׁוּב וְנִבְנְתָה)

As in the instance of "return" earlier in this verse, here **It will return and it will be built** means "It will be built again." Alternate translation: [It will be built again] or [It will be rebuilt]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **sixty and two**
UST and then sixty-two more
(שִׁשִּׁים וּשְׁנַיִם)

The expression **sixty and two** describes a single number. Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [sixty-two]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **It will return**
UST When they rebuild it
(תָּשׁוּב)

The pronoun **It** refers to Jerusalem. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Jerusalem will return]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and it will be built {with} a square and a trench**
UST When they rebuild it, it will have a large public plaza, and it will have a ditch around it to protect it
(וְנִבְנְתָה רְחוֹב וְחָרוּץ)

The expression **it will be built** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and people will build it with a square and a trench]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but in distress of times**
UST It will be a dangerous time
(וּבְצוֹק הָעִתִּים)

Gabriel is using the possessive form to describe **times** that are characterized by **distress**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [but in distressful times]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And may you know	I want you to understand this well
and understand	I want you to understand this well
to return	to rebuild
Jerusalem	Jerusalem
an anointed one	whom God will have chosen
a ruler	a leader
and a trench	and it will have a ditch around it to protect it
but in distress of	dangerous
times	It will be a … time

Daniel 9:26

ULT	UST
And after the sixty and two sevens, the anointed one will be cut off and nothing {will be} to him. And the city and the sanctuary, the people of the coming ruler will destroy. And its end {will be} with a flood, and war {will be} until the end. Desolations are determined.	*But after those sixty-two sets of seven time periods, he will die, so he will no longer be the ruler. Instead, another ruler will come, and his army will destroy the city {of Jerusalem} and the temple. It will be as if a flood has destroyed it. There will be war continually. Yahweh has determined that armies will destroy many things.*

ULT **the anointed one will be cut off**
UST he will die
(יִכָּרֵת מָשִׁיחַ)

The expression **will be cut off** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [enemies will cut off the anointed one]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the anointed one will be cut off**
UST he will die
(יִכָּרֵת מָשִׁיחַ)

Gabriel is speaking as if the killing of the anointed one were his being **cut off**, as a branch is cut from a tree. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the anointed one will be killed]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and nothing {will be} to him**
UST so he will no longer be the ruler
(וְאֵין לוֹ)

Gabriel is using this expression as a common expression of the culture to mean that the anointed one would be left with nothing. This could mean that he would have (1) no possessions or (2) no one to support him. If this expression does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he will have nothing]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And the city and the sanctuary, the people of the coming ruler will destroy**
UST Instead, another ruler will come, and his army will destroy the city {of Jerusalem} and the temple
(וְהָעִיר וְהַקֹּדֶשׁ יַשְׁחִית עַם נָגִיד הַבָּא)

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **the people of the coming ruler** before the information about **the city and the sanctuary**. Alternate translation: [And the people of the coming ruler will destroy the city and the sanctuary]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And its end {will be} with a flood**
UST It will be as if a flood has destroyed it
(וְקִצּוֹ בַּשֶּׁטֶף)

This could mean: (1) **its** refers to the city or (2) it refers to the coming ruler. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the end of the city will be with a flood]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And its end {will be} with a flood**
UST It will be as if a flood has destroyed it
(וְקִצּוֹ בַּשֶּׁטֶף)

Gabriel is speaking as if the destruction that would come were **a flood** that would sweep everything away. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And it will come to an end in overwhelming destruction]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **Desolations are determined**
UST Yahweh has determined that armies will destroy many things
(נֶחֱרָצֶת שֹׁמֵמוֹת)

The expression **are determined** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God has determined desolations]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the anointed one	he
and the sanctuary	and the temple

ULT	UST
the … ruler	Instead, another ruler
will destroy	will destroy
{will be} with a flood	It will be as if a flood
Desolations	that armies will destroy many things

Daniel 9:27

ULT	UST
And he will strengthen a covenant with many {for} one seven. And {in} the middle of the seven, he will make the sacrifice and the offering cease. And on the wing of abominations {will be} something making desolate, even until the completion, and the thing having been determined will be poured out upon the one desolating."	*That ruler will make an agreement with many people that he will firmly promise to keep for seven time periods. But halfway through that time, he will stop Yahweh's priests from offering sacrifices to him. He will put something disgusting in the temple that makes it unclean. It will be there until Yahweh finally punishes the ruler who made the temple unclean. That is what Yahweh has determined to do."*

ULT **And he will strengthen a covenant with many**
UST That ruler will make an agreement with many people that he will firmly promise to keep
(וְהִגְבִּיר בְּרִית לָרַבִּים)

This could mean: (1) **he** refers to the coming ruler or (2) it refers to the anointed one. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And that ruler will strengthen a covenant with many] or [And the anointed one will strengthen a covenant with many]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **And he will strengthen a covenant with many**
UST That ruler will make an agreement with many people that he will firmly promise to keep
(וְהִגְבִּיר בְּרִית לָרַבִּים)

Gabriel is using **strengthen a covenant** as a common expression of the culture to mean "make a firm agreement." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will make a firm agreement with many]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **with many**
UST with many people
(לָרַבִּים)

Gabriel is using the adjective **many** as a noun to mean a certain group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [with a large number of people]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **the sacrifice and the offering**
UST Yahweh's priests from offering sacrifices to him
(זֶבַח וּמִנְחָה)

The terms **the sacrifice** and **the offering** mean similar things. Gabriel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [all the sacrifices]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **And on the wing of abominations**
UST He will put something disgusting in the temple
(וְעַל כְּנַף שִׁקּוּצִים)

Gabriel is speaking as if abominations were a creature with wings. This could mean: (1) **the wing of abominations** refers to the highest point of the temple, where something detestable would be set up, or (2) it refers to the extreme degree of the abominations that would be committed. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And on the highest point of the temple, detestable things]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **{will be} something making desolate**
UST that makes it unclean
(מְשֹׁמֵם)

The implication is that **something making desolate** is a detestable object that would be set up in the temple. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [will be placed a detestable object that makes the temple desolate]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and the thing having been determined will be poured out upon the one desolating**
UST Yahweh … punishes the ruler who made the temple unclean. That is what Yahweh has determined to do
(וְנֶחֱרָצָה תִּתַּךְ עַל־שֹׁמֵם)

The expressions **having been determined** and **will be poured out** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and God will pour out upon the one desolating what he has determined]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
a covenant	That ruler will make an agreement
the sacrifice	sacrifices to him
and the offering	Yahweh's priests from offering
abominations	something disgusting
{will be} something making desolate	that makes it unclean
the one desolating	the ruler who made the temple unclean

Daniel 10

Daniel 10 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter is the first part of the last section in the book, in which Daniel has a vision and man-like figure appears to him and interprets it.

1. Narrative introduction to this section (1)
2. Daniel relates how he had a vision and prayed for three weeks to understand it (2–3)
3. Daniel relates how a glorious, man-like figure appeared to him (4–9)
4. The man explains why he was delayed (10–21)

Daniel 10:1

ULT	UST
In the year of three to Cyrus, the king of Persia, a word was revealed to Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar. And the word {was} true, and the war was great. And he understood the word, and understanding {was} to him about the vision.	*During the third year that Cyrus was the king of Persia, God revealed a message to Daniel. (The Babylonians had given him the name Belteshazzar.) The message was about a terrible war that was certainly going to happen. The message came in a vision, and Daniel understood what it meant.*

ULT **In the year of three to Cyrus, the king of Persia**
UST During the third year that Cyrus was the king of Persia
(בִּשְׁנַ֣ת שָׁלֹ֔וש לְכ֖וֹרֶשׁ מֶ֣לֶךְ פָּ֑רַס)

Daniel is using the phrase translated as **In the year of three to Cyrus, the king of Persia** to introduce a new event in the story. Use a word, phrase, or other method in your language that is natural for introducing a new event.

Support Reference: Introduction of a New Event

ULT **In the year of three to Cyrus**
UST During the third year … Cyrus
(בִּשְׁנַ֣ת שָׁלֹ֔וש לְכ֖וֹרֶשׁ)

Daniel is using the cardinal number **three** where your language may use an ordinal number. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **three**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [In the third year of the reign of Cyrus]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **a word was revealed to Daniel**
UST God revealed a message to Daniel
(דָּבָ֣ר נִגְלָ֔ה לְדָנִיֵּ֖אל)

The expression **was revealed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God revealed a word to Daniel]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **whose name was called Belteshazzar**
UST The Babylonians had given him the name Belteshazzar
(אֲשֶׁר־נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ בֵּלְטְשַׁאצַּר)

The expression **was called** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [whom Babylonian people called Belteshazzar]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Belteshazzar**
UST Belteshazzar
(בֵּלְטְשַׁאצַּר)

The word **Belteshazzar** is the name of a man. It is the name that the Babylonians gave to Daniel.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
In the year of	During the … year
to Cyrus	Cyrus
the king of	that … was the king of
Persia	Persia
to Daniel	to Daniel
was called	The Babylonians had given
and understanding	understood what it meant
about the vision	came in a vision

Daniel 10:2

ULT	UST
In those days, I, Daniel, was mourning {for} three weeks {of} days.	*At that time, I, Daniel, had been mourning for three weeks.*

> ULT **{for} three weeks {of} days**
> UST for three weeks
> (שְׁלֹשָׁה שָׁבֻעִים יָמִים)

Daniel is using **three weeks {of} days** as a common expression of the culture to mean "three full weeks." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for three entire weeks]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
mourning	mourning
for … weeks	for three weeks

Daniel 10:3

ULT	UST
I ate no bread of delight, and flesh and wine did not come into my mouth, and anointing, I did not anoint {myself} until the filling of the three weeks {of} days.	*Throughout those three weeks, I did not eat any tasty food. I did not eat any meat or drink any wine. I did not put olive oil on my face or hair.*

ULT **I ate no bread of delight, and flesh and wine did not come into my mouth, and anointing, I did not anoint {myself}**

UST I did not eat any tasty food. I did not eat any meat or drink any wine. I did not put olive oil on my face or hair

(לֶ֣חֶם חֲמַדּ֔וֹת לֹ֥א אָכַ֖לְתִּי וּבָשָׂ֣ר וְיַ֑יִן לֹא־בָ֥א אֶל־פִּ֖י וְסֹ֥וךְ לֹא־סָ֖כְתִּי)

Going without **bread of delight, and flesh and wine** and **anointing** for **three weeks** was a symbolic action by which Daniel showed that he was mourning. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [To show that I was mourning, I ate no choice foods or meat or wine, and certainly, I did not anoint myself]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **bread of delight**

UST any tasty food

(לֶ֣חֶם חֲמַדּ֔וֹת)

Daniel is using one kind of food, **bread**, to represent food in general. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [delightful food]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **and flesh and wine did not come into my mouth**

UST I did not eat any meat or drink any wine

(וּבָשָׂ֣ר וְיַ֑יִן לֹא־בָ֥א אֶל־פִּ֖י)

Daniel is using **flesh and wine did not come into my mouth** as a common expression of the culture to mean “I did not eat meat or drink wine.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and I did not consume any meat or wine]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and anointing, I did not anoint {myself}**
UST I did not put olive oil on my face or hair
(וָסֹוךְ לֹא־סָכְתִּי)

Daniel is repeating forms of the verb **anoint** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [I did not anoint myself at all]

Support Reference: Reduplication

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bread	any … food
of delight	tasty
and wine	or drink any wine
and anointing	I did … put olive oil on my face or hair
I did … anoint {myself}	I did … put olive oil on my face or hair
the … weeks	those … weeks

Daniel 10:4

ULT	UST
And on the day of twenty and four to the first month, as I was at the hand of the great river, it {is} the Tigris,	*Then, on the twenty-fourth day of the first month of the year, I was standing on the bank of the great Tigris River.*

ULT **And on the day of twenty and four to the first month**
UST Then, on the twenty-fourth day of the first month of the year
(וּבְיוֹם עֶשְׂרִים וְאַרְבָּעָה לַחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן)

Daniel is using the cardinal number **twenty and four** where your language may use an ordinal number. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **twenty and four**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [And on the twenty-fourth day of the first month]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **to the first month**
UST of the first month of the year
(לַחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן)

The **first** month of the Hebrew calendar includes the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. You could convert the Hebrew day and month into an approximate date on the calendar that your culture uses. However, the Jews used a lunar calendar, so if you use a solar calendar, the date will be different every year, and the translation will not be entirely accurate. So you may just want to give the number of the day and the name of the month on the Hebrew calendar and say in a footnote approximately what time of year that is on your calendar.

Support Reference: Hebrew Months

ULT **at the hand of the great river**
UST on the bank of the great … River
(עַל־יַד הַנָּהָר הַגָּדוֹל)

Daniel is using **at the hand of the great river** as a common expression of the culture to mean “on the bank of the great river.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [beside the great river]

Support Reference: Idiom

> ULT **the Tigris**
> UST Tigris
> (חִדֶּקֶל)

The word **Tigris** is the name of a river.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the … month	of the … month of the year

Daniel 10:5

ULT	UST
then I lifted up my eyes and saw, and behold, a man clothed in linen, and his loins were girded with gold of Uphaz.	*I looked up, and I saw a man who was wearing linen clothes and a fine gold belt.*

ULT then I lifted up my eyes and saw
UST I looked up, and I saw
(וָאֶשָּׂא אֶת־עֵינַי וָאֶרְאֶה)

Daniel is using **I lifted up my eyes and saw** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I looked up and saw." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [then I raised my gaze and saw]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT and behold
UST and I saw
(וְהִנֵּה)

Daniel is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [there before me]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT a man clothed in linen
UST a man who was wearing linen clothes
(אִישׁ־אֶחָד לָבוּשׁ בַּדִּים)

Daniel is introducing **a man clothed in linen** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [there was a certain man clothed in linen]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT and his loins were girded with gold of Uphaz
UST and a fine gold belt
(וּמָתְנָיו חֲגֻרִים בְּכֶתֶם אוּפָז)

The expression **were girded** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he had girded his loins with gold of Uphaz]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Uphaz**
UST fine
(אוּפָז)

The word **Uphaz** is the name of a place.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and his loins	and a … belt
were girded	and a … belt
with gold of	gold

Daniel 10:6

ULT	UST
And his body {was} like beryl, and his face {was} like the appearance of lightning, and his eyes {were} like torches of fire, and his arms and his feet {were} like the eye of polished bronze, and the sound of his words {was} like the sound of a multitude.	*His body shone like a jewel. His face was as bright as a flash of lightning. His eyes were like flaming torches. His arms and legs shone like polished bronze. His voice was very loud, like the roar of a huge crowd.*

ULT **And his body {was} like beryl**
UST His body shone like a jewel
(וּגְוִיָּתוֹ כְּתַרְשִׁישׁ)

The point of this comparison is that just as **beryl** gleams brightly, so did **his body**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [And his body gleamed as brightly as the gemstone beryl]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **{was} like beryl**
UST shone like a jewel
(כְּתַרְשִׁישׁ)

A **beryl** is a kind of precious stone that has a gleaming, greenish color. If your readers would not be familiar with what a beryl is, you could use the name of a similar thing that your readers would recognize, or you could use a more general term. Alternate translation: [was like a gleaming green gemstone]

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **and his face {was} like the appearance of lightning**
UST His face was as bright as a flash of lightning
(וּפָנָיו כְּמַרְאֵה בָרָק)

The point of this comparison is that just as **the appearance of lightning** is dazzlingly bright, so was **his face**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and his face was dazzlingly bright, as lightning is]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and his eyes {were} like torches of fire**
UST His eyes were like flaming torches
(וְעֵינָיו֙ כְּלַפִּ֣ידֵי אֵ֔שׁ)

The point of this comparison is that just as **torches of fire** blaze and glow, so did **his eyes**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and his eyes blazed and glowed as brightly as burning torches]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **and his arms and his feet {were} like the eye of polished bronze**
UST His arms and legs shone like polished bronze
(וּזְרֹעֹתָ֥יו וּמַרְגְּלֹתָ֖יו כְּעֵ֣ין נְחֹ֑שֶׁת קָלָ֔ל)

The point of this comparison is that just as **polished bronze** shines and gleams, so did **his arms and his feet**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and his arms and his feet gleamed brightly]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **{were} like the eye of polished bronze**
UST shone like polished bronze
(כְּעֵ֣ין נְחֹ֑שֶׁת קָלָ֔ל)

Here, **eye** represents the appearance or gleam of something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [were the gleam of polished bronze]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and the sound of his words {was} like the sound of a multitude**
UST His voice was very loud, like the roar of a huge crowd
(וְקֹ֖ול דְּבָרָ֑יו כְּקֹ֖ול הָמֹֽון)

The point of this comparison is that just as **the sound of a multitude** is loud and roaring, so was **the sound of his words**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [and the sound of his words was as loud and rumbling as the noise a great crowd makes]

Support Reference: Simile

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
bronze	bronze

Daniel 10:7

ULT	UST
And I, Daniel, alone saw the appearance, for the men who were with me did not see the appearance. However, a great trembling fell on them, and they fled to hide themselves.	*I, Daniel, was the only one who saw this vision. There were some men with me, but they did not see it. However, they became very afraid, and they ran away and hid.*

ULT a great trembling fell on them
UST they became very afraid
(חֲרָדָה גְּדֹלָה נָפְלָה עֲלֵיהֶם)

Daniel is speaking of the terror that seized these men as if it were something that **fell on them**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [they began to tremble violently]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
a … trembling	afraid

Daniel 10:8

ULT	UST
And I, I was left alone, and I saw this great appearance. And no strength remained in me, and my splendor was turned in me to destruction, and I retained no strength.	*So I remained there by myself, looking at this great vision. I felt very weak. My face became pale because I was so weak.*

ULT **And I, I was left alone**
UST So I remained there by myself
(וַאֲנִי֙ נִשְׁאַ֣רְתִּי לְבַדִּ֔י)

Daniel is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **was left** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize that he alone remained to see the vision. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [And I myself was left alone] or [And I myself was left entirely alone]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **I was left alone**
UST remained there by myself
(נִשְׁאַ֣רְתִּי לְבַדִּ֔י)

The expression **was left** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And I remained alone]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and my splendor was turned in me to destruction**
UST My face became pale
(וְהוֹדִ֤י נֶהְפַּךְ־עָלַי֙ לְמַשְׁחִ֔ית)

Daniel is speaking of his appearance changing as if it **was turned** into something else. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and my healthy appearance became deathly pale]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I was left	remained there
and my splendor	My face

ULT	UST
to destruction	pale

Daniel 10:9

ULT	UST
And I heard the sound of his words, and as I heard the sound of his words, then I, I was sleeping deeply upon my face, and my face {was} to the ground.	*Then I heard the man speak. When I heard him, I fainted and fell to the ground. I lay there with my face on the ground.*

ULT **I was sleeping deeply upon my face**
UST fainted and fell to the ground
(הָיִיתִי נִרְדָּם עַל־פָּנַי)

Daniel is using **I was sleeping deeply upon my face** as a common expression of the culture to mean "I lost consciousness and lay with my face toward the ground." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I fell unconscious with my face down]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{was} to the ground	on the ground

Daniel 10:10

ULT	UST
Then behold, a hand touched me, and it made me totter on my knees and the palms of my hands.	*But then he took hold of me and lifted me up so that I was on my hands and knees. I was shaking.*

ULT **Then behold**
UST But then
(וְהִנֵּה)

Daniel is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then suddenly]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **a hand touched me**
UST he took hold of me
(יַד נָגְעָה בִּי)

Daniel is using one part of this being, **a hand**, to represent the whole being. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [someone touched me]

Support Reference: Synecdoche

Daniel 10:11

ULT	UST
And he said to me, "Daniel, man of delight, understand the words that I will be speaking to you. Stand on your standing, for now I have been sent to you." And when he had spoken this word to me, I stood up trembling.	*The man told me, "Daniel, God loves you very much. God has sent me to you, so stand up. I am going to tell you a message, and I want you to understand it." When he said that to me, I stood up, but I was still shaking.*

ULT **man of delight**
UST God loves you very much
(אִישׁ־חֲמֻדוֹת)

The man is using **man of delight** as a common expression of the culture to mean "man who is greatly treasured." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [man who is greatly treasured]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Stand on your standing**
UST stand up
(וַעֲמֹד עַל־עָמְדֶךָ)

The man is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. Alternate translation: [Get to your feet]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **for now I have been sent to you**
UST God has sent me to you, so
(כִּי עַתָּה שֻׁלַּחְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ)

The expression **have been sent** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [for now God has sent me to you]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
delight	God loves … very much
understand	and I want you to understand

ULT	UST
trembling	but I was still shaking

Daniel 10:12

ULT	UST
And he said to me, "May you not fear, Daniel, for from the first day that you set your heart to understand and to humble yourself to the face of your God, your words were heard, and I, I have come because of your words.	*Then he told me, "Daniel, you determined to ask God humbly to show you {what would happen to your people in the future}. God has heard what you have been praying since then. I have come because of what you have prayed. So do not be afraid!*

ULT **May you not fear, Daniel**
UST Daniel … do not be afraid
(אַל־תִּירָא דָנִיֵּאל)

This is an imperative, but it communicates a reassurance rather than a command. If the imperative does not communicate a reassurance for your readers, then use a form in your language that communicates a reassurance. Alternate translation: [You should not be afraid, Daniel]

Support Reference: Imperatives — Other Uses

ULT **you set your heart to understand**
UST you determined … to show you {what would happen to your people in the future}
(נָתַתָּ אֶת־לִבְּךָ לְהָבִין)

The man is using **you set your heart to understand** as a common expression of the culture to mean "you determined to understand." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [you determined to understand]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to the face of your God**
UST to ask God humbly
(לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהֶיךָ)

Here, **the face of your God** represents the presence of God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [before your God]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **your words were heard**
UST God has heard what you have been praying
(נִשְׁמְעוּ דְבָרֶיךָ)

The expression **were heard** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God heard your words]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and I, I have come**
UST I have come
(וַאֲנִי־בָאתִי)

The messenger is stating the pronoun **I** separately, even though the verb translated as **I have come** already includes this meaning. He is doing that to emphasize the importance of his role in serving God. If a speaker of your language would use an explicit pronoun for the same purpose, you may want to use that construction in your translation. If not, your language may have other ways of showing the meaning here. Alternate translation: [and it is I who have come]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
May you … fear	do … be afraid
Daniel	Daniel
to understand	to show you {what would happen to your people in the future}
and to humble yourself	to ask … humbly
your God	God

Daniel 10:13

ULT	UST
But the prince of the kingdom of Persia was standing against me {for} twenty and one day. And behold, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me, for I, I had been left there beside the kings of Persia.	*For 21 days, the evil spirit that influences the kingdom of Persia kept me from coming to you. But Michael, one of God's chief angels, came and helped me. Otherwise, I would not have been able to get past that evil spirit that influences the Persian rulers.*

ULT **But the prince of the kingdom of Persia**
UST the evil spirit that influences the kingdom of Persia
(וְשַׂר ׀ מַלְכ֣וּת פָּ֗רַס)

The implication is that **the prince of the kingdom of Persia** is not a human ruler but a spirit being who opposed the man speaking with Daniel. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [But the spirit prince who rules over the kingdom of Persia]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **{for} twenty and one day**
UST For 21 days
(עֶשְׂרִ֥ים וְאֶחָ֖ד י֑וֹם)

The expression **twenty and one day** means twenty-one days. Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [for twenty-one days]

Support Reference: Numbers

ULT **Michael, one of the chief princes**
UST Michael, one of God's chief angels
(מִיכָאֵ֔ל אַחַ֖ד הַשָּׂרִ֥ים הָרִאשֹׁנִ֛ים)

The man is introducing **Michael** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [a certain one of the chief princes, named Michael]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **for I, I had been left there beside the kings of Persia**
UST Otherwise, I would not have been able to get past that evil spirit that influences the Persian rulers
(וַאֲנִי֙ נוֹתַ֣רְתִּי שָׁ֔ם אֵ֖צֶל מַלְכֵ֥י פָּֽרַס)

The expression **had been left** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [for I, I remained there beside the kings of Persia]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the kings of Persia**
UST that evil spirit that influences the Persian rulers
(מַלְכֵ֥י פָּֽרַס)

The standard written Hebrew text as we have it today reads “the kings of Persia.” The ULT follows that reading. Other ancient manuscripts read “the prince of the kings of Persia.” If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading of the ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
But the prince of	the evil spirit that influences
the kingdom of	the kingdom of
Persia	Persia
Michael	Michael
chief	chief
I had been left	would not have been able to get past
the kings of	that evil spirit that influences

Daniel 10:14

ULT	UST
And I have come to make you understand what will happen to your people at the end of days. For the vision {is} yet for days."	*I have come to enable you to understand what will happen to your people when the world is about to end. Now this will happen sometime in the future."*

ULT at the end of days
UST when the world is about to end
(בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים)

The man is using **at the end of days** as a common expression of the culture to mean "in the distant future." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in the distant future]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT yet for days
UST sometime in the future
(עוֹד & לַיָּמִים)

Daniel is using **yet for days** as a common expression of the culture to mean "sometime far in the future." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [still a long way off] or [something that will not happen for a long time]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to make you understand	to enable you
the vision {is}	this will happen
for days	in the future

Daniel 10:15

ULT	UST
And while he was speaking with me according to these words, I put my face toward the ground, and I was silent.	*While he was saying these things to me, I was looking at the ground, and I was not saying anything.*

(There are no notes for this verse)

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
toward the ground	the ground

Daniel 10:16

ULT	UST
And behold, {one} according to the likeness of the sons of man touched upon my lips. And I opened my mouth and spoke, and I said to the one standing in front of me: "My lord, because of the appearance, my pains have turned onto me, and I retain no strength.	*But then this person who looked like a human being touched my lips. Then I was able to speak. I said to him, "Sir, because I am seeing this vision, I am very upset, and I have become very weak.*

ULT **And behold**
UST But then
(וְהִנֵּה)

Daniel is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Suddenly]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **{one} according to the likeness of the sons of man**
UST this person who looked like a human being
(כִּדְמוּת בְּנֵי אָדָם)

Daniel is using **the sons of man** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a human being." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one according to the likeness of a human being]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **my pains have turned onto me**
UST I am very upset
(נֶהֶפְכוּ צִירַי עָלָי)

Daniel is speaking of being overcome with anguish as if his pains **have turned onto** him. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I have become full of anguish]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
{one} according to the likeness of	this person who looked like
My lord	Sir

Daniel 10:17

ULT	UST
And how shall this servant of my lord be able to speak with this my lord? And I, from now no strength stands in me, and breath is not left in me.”	*I am not able to speak with you, sir. I feel very weak right now, and it is difficult for me to breathe.”*

ULT **And how shall this servant of my lord be able to speak with this my lord**
UST I am not able to speak with you, sir
(וַֽתְּהִי֙ יוֹכַ֣ל עֶ֔בֶד אֲדֹנִ֖י זֶ֑ה לְדַבֵּ֣ר עִם־אֲדֹנִ֔י זֶ֔ה)

Daniel is using the question form to say emphatically that he is not able to speak with the one who is addressing him. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [And this servant of my lord is certainly not able to speak with this my lord!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **And how shall this servant of my lord be able to speak with this my lord**
UST I am not able to speak with you, sir
(וַֽתְּהִי֙ יוֹכַ֣ל עֶ֔בֶד אֲדֹנִ֖י זֶ֑ה לְדַבֵּ֣ר עִם־אֲדֹנִ֔י זֶ֔ה)

Even though Daniel is addressing this being directly, he is speaking of him in the third person as **this my lord**, and he is speaking of himself in the third person as **this servant**, in order to show respect. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this in respectful forms in the first and second person. Alternate translation: [And how shall I, your servant, be able to speak with you, my lord]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **and breath is not left in me**
UST and it is difficult for me to breathe
(וּנְשָׁמָ֖ה לֹ֣א נִשְׁאֲרָה־בִּֽי)

The expression **is not left** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and no breath remains in me]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and breath is not left in me**
UST and it is difficult for me to breathe
(וְנְשָׁמָה לֹא נִשְׁאֲרָה־בִּי)

Daniel says **breath is not left in me** as an extreme statement for emphasis, since he is still breathing and speaking. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different way to express the emphasis. Alternate translation: [and I can barely breathe]

Support Reference: Hyperbole

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
servant of	I
my lord	I
and breath	and … to breathe

Daniel 10:18

ULT	UST
And {the one} according to the appearance of a man added and touched me, and he strengthened me.	*But then this person who looked like a human being took hold of me again, and that made me feel stronger.*

ULT And {the one} according to the appearance of a man added and touched me
UST But then this person who looked like a human being took hold of me again
(וַיֹּסֶף וַיִּגַּע־בִּי כְּמַרְאֵה אָדָם)

The phrase **added and touched** expresses a single idea. The word **added** tells more about **touched**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [And the one who looked like a man touched me again]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

Daniel 10:19

ULT	UST
And he said, "May you not fear, man of delight. Peace to you. Be strong and be strong." And while he was speaking with me, I was strengthened, and I said, "May my lord speak, for you have strengthened me."	*He told me, "Do not be afraid, you mortal. God loves you very much. Be peaceful, and be very strong." When he said that to me, I did feel stronger. I said, "Sir, you have helped me feel stronger. So please do give me your message."*

ULT **Be strong and be strong**
UST and be very strong
(חֲזַק וְחֲזָק)

The man is repeating forms of the verb **be strong** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [Be strong indeed]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **I was strengthened**
UST I did feel stronger
(הִתְחַזַּקְתִּי)

The expression **was strengthened** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [he made me strong]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
May you … fear	Do … be afraid
delight	God loves … very much
Peace	Be peaceful
my lord	Sir

Daniel 10:20

ULT	UST
And he said, "Do you know why I have come to you? But now I will return to fight against the prince of Persia. And I am going out, and behold, the prince of Javan will come.	*Then he said, "Remember what I told you about why I have come to you. There is a book that reveals God's truth, and I have come to tell you what it says. After that, I must return to fight against the evil spirit that influences the kingdom of Persia. After I have defeated him, the evil spirit that influences Javan will come. Michael, the angel who protects you Israelite people, is the only one who can help me defeat these spirits. (vv20-21)*

ULT **Do you know why I have come to you**
UST Remember what I told you about why I have come to you
(הֲיָדַעְתָּ לָמָּה־בָּאתִי אֵלֶיךָ)

The man is using the question form to remind Daniel of the reason why he has come to him. If a speaker of your language would not use the question form for that purpose, you could translate this as a statement or as an exclamation. Alternate translation: [You know why I have come to you!]

Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Javan**
UST Javan
(יָוָן)

The word **Javan** is the name of a place, the region that later became known as Greece.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and behold**
UST will come
(וְהִנֵּה)

Daniel is using the term **behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [and look]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I will return	I must return
the prince of	the evil spirit that influences
Persia	the kingdom of Persia

ULT	UST
Javan	Javan

Daniel 10:21

ULT	UST
But I will declare to you the inscribed in the Writing of Truth. And there is not one being strong with me against these except Michael, your prince.	*Then he said, "Remember what I told you about why I have come to you. There is a book that reveals God's truth, and I have come to tell you what it says. After that, I must return to fight against the evil spirit that influences the kingdom of Persia. After I have defeated him, the evil spirit that influences Javan will come. Michael, the angel who protects you Israelite people, is the only one who can help me defeat these spirits. (vv20-21)*

ULT **the inscribed in the Writing of Truth**
UST There is a book that reveals God's truth … what it says
(אֶת־הָרְשׁוּם בִּכְתָב אֱמֶת)

The man is using the adjective **the inscribed** as a noun to mean a certain kind of thing, what has been written down. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [the things that are inscribed in the Writing of Truth]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **in the Writing of Truth**
UST There is a book that reveals God's truth
(בִּכְתָב אֱמֶת)

The implication is that **the Writing of Truth** is a heavenly record in which God has written what he has decreed will happen. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [in the Writing of Truth, the heavenly book in which God has recorded what he has decreed will happen]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And there is not one being strong with me against these**
UST is the only one who can help me defeat these spirits
(וְאֵ֣ין אֶחָ֔ד מִתְחַזֵּ֥ק עִמִּ֖י עַל־אֵ֑לֶּה)

The man is using **one being strong with me** as a common expression of the culture to mean "one who supports me." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And there is no one who supports me against these]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **against these**
UST who can help … defeat these spirits
(עַל־אֵ֑לֶּה)

The pronoun **these** refers to the princes of Persia and of Javan, the spirit beings whom the man mentioned in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [against these princes of Persia and Javan]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **Michael, your prince**
UST Michael, the angel who protects you Israelite people
(מִיכָאֵ֖ל שַׂרְכֶֽם)

The word **your** is plural here, since Michael protects all of Daniel's people and not Daniel alone. If your language marks that distinction, use a plural form here.

Support Reference: Forms of You

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Truth	God's truth
Michael	Michael
your prince	the angel who protects you Israelite people

Daniel 11

Daniel 11 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter continues the last section in the book, in which Daniel has a vision and man-like figure appears to him and interprets it.

1. The man finishes his explanation of why he was delayed (1)
2. The man begins to explain the meaning of Daniel's vision (2–45)
    A. Wars between the kings of the north and south (2–20)
    B. An evil king of the north will cause great trouble for the Jews (21–35)
    C. This king of the north will become powerful but ultimately be destroyed (36–45)

Translation issues in this chapter

The identification of the kings of the north and south

As in chapter 8, the person who interprets Daniel's vision does specify what some of the figures in it represent. He speaks of Persian kings and their wars against "the kingdom of Javan," that is, Greece (11:2). He then describes how "a mighty king will stand" (11:3), presumably Alexander the Great of Greece, and how "his kingdom will be broken and divided toward the four winds of the heavens, but not to his posterity," just as Alexander's empire was divided among four of his generals after he died. This leads many interpreters to believe that the kings of the north are the kings who ruled the northern part of what had been that empire and that the kings of the south are the ones who ruled the southern part, which was based in Egypt. (In 11:7-8, the man even describes how one king of the south will defeat the king of the north and bring their gods "into captivity to Egypt.") However, even if the accounts of the kings of the north and south are initially describing the actual struggle for power between two Greek empires that succeeded Alexander's, it is not clear at what point the vision might shift from historical events subsequent to Daniel but prior to the present day to future events that will take place "at the time of the end" (11:40). So as in the case of

the other visions in the book, we recommend that translators not add any identifying information beyond what the book specifically says, either in the text or in footnotes.

Daniel 11:1

ULT	UST
And I, in the year of one to Darius the Mede, I stood as one strengthening and as a fortress for him.	*I myself helped and protected Michael during the first year that Darius the Mede was king.*

ULT And I
UST myself
(וַאֲנִי)

The pronoun **I** refers to the angel who is speaking to Daniel. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And I, the angel who is speaking to you]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT in the year of one to Darius the Mede
UST during the first year that Darius the Mede was king
(בִּשְׁנַת אַחַת לְדָרְיָוֶשׁ הַמָּדִי)

In this expression, the number **one** means "first." If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **one**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [in the first year of Darius the Mede]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT I stood as one strengthening and as a fortress for him
UST I … helped and protected Michael
(עָמְדִי לְמַחֲזִיק וּלְמָעוֹז לוֹ)

Here the angel is speaking as if he were **a fortress** for Michael. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [I stood as one strengthening him and as one defending Michael]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT for him
UST Michael
(לוֹ)

The pronoun **him** refers to Michael, whom the angel named in the previous chapter. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [for Michael]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the year of	during the … year
to Darius	that Darius … was king
the Mede	the Mede
and as a fortress	and protected

Daniel 11:2

ULT	UST
And now, I will declare the truth to you. Behold, three more kings will be standing in Persia, and a fourth will become wealthy {with} wealth greater than all. And according to his strength by his riches, he will awaken all against the kingdom of Javan.	*And now I will tell you what will surely happen in the future. Pay attention. Three more kings will rule Persia, and then there will be a fourth king who will be much richer than the others. Because he will be so rich, he will be able to assemble a great army from throughout his empire to attack the kingdom of Javan.*

ULT **I will declare the truth to you**
UST I will tell you what will surely happen in the future
(אֲמֶת אַגִּיד לָךְ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the truth**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [I will tell you what is true]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to you**
UST you
(לָךְ)

The word **you** is singular here because the angel is addressing Daniel alone, so use the singular form in your translation if your language marks that distinction.

Support Reference: Forms of 'You' — Singular

ULT **Behold**
UST Pay attention
(הִנֵּה)

Daniel is using the term **Behold** to focus his listeners' attention on what he is about to say. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Look]

Support Reference: Foreground Information

ULT **three more kings will be standing in Persia**
UST Three more kings will rule Persia
(עוֹד֙ שְׁלֹשָׁ֣ה מְלָכִ֔ים עֹמְדִ֖ים לְפָרָ֑ס)

Here the angel is speaking as if these kings were **standing** in Persia, meaning that they will rule there. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [three more kings will reign in Persia]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and a fourth**
UST and then there will be a fourth king
(וְהָרְבִיעִ֗י)

The expression **a fourth** means a fourth king. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **a fourth**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [and after them one more king]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **will become wealthy {with} wealth greater than all**
UST who will be much richer than the others
(יַעֲשִׁ֥יר עָשֶׁר־גָּד֖וֹל מִכֹּֽל)

The angel is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this. See the UST.

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **he will awaken all against the kingdom of Javan**
UST he will be able to assemble a great army from throughout his empire to attack the kingdom of Javan
(יָעִ֥יר הַכֹּ֖ל אֶת מַלְכ֥וּת יָוָֽן)

Here the angel is speaking as if this king would **awaken all** his people, meaning that he will rouse them to go to war. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he will stir up everyone to fight against the kingdom of Javan]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **he will awaken all**
UST he will be able to assemble a great army from throughout his empire
(יָעִיר הַכֹּל)

The angel is using the adjective **all** as a noun to mean all of the people of his kingdom. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [he will awaken all of the people of his kingdom]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **Javan**
UST Javan
(יָוָן)

The word **Javan** is the name of a place, Greece.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I will declare	I will tell
kings	kings
in Persia	Persia
the kingdom of	the kingdom of
Javan	Javan

Daniel 11:3

ULT	UST
Then a mighty king will stand, and he will rule {with} great dominion, and he will do according to his will.	*Then there will be a king who is very powerful. He will reign over a very large empire. He will do whatever he wants to do.*

ULT Then a mighty king will stand
UST Then there will be a king who is very powerful
(וְעָמַד מֶלֶךְ גִּבּוֹר)

Here the angel is introducing **a mighty king** as a new participant in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [Then a certain mighty king will arise]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT and he will rule {with} great dominion
UST He will reign over a very large empire
(וּמָשַׁל מִמְשָׁל רַב)

The angel is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this.

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT according to his will
UST whatever he wants to do
(כִּרְצוֹנוֹ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **his will**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [as he desires]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
mighty	who is very powerful
a … king	a king
and he will rule	He will reign over
with … dominion	a … empire

Daniel 11:4

ULT	UST
But as he stands, his kingdom will be broken and divided toward the four winds of the heavens, but not to his posterity, and not according to his dominion {by} which he ruled. For his kingdom will be uprooted, and to others besides these.	*But while he is still powerful, he will die. His kingdom will break up into four parts. Men who are not his descendants will rule those parts. They will not be as powerful as he was as a king. That is because his empire will be like a plant that someone has pulled out of the ground. Other people will rule its parts.*

ULT **But as he stands, his kingdom will be broken and divided toward the four winds of the heavens, but not to his posterity, and not according to his dominion {by} which he ruled. For his kingdom will be uprooted, and to others besides these**
UST But while he is still powerful, he will die. His kingdom will break up into four parts. Men who are not his descendants will rule those parts. They will not be as powerful as he was as a king. That is because his empire will be like a plant that someone has pulled out of the ground. Other people will rule its parts
(וּכְעָמְדוֹ תִּשָּׁבֵר מַלְכוּתּוֹ וְתֵחָץ לְאַרְבַּע רוּחוֹת הַשָּׁמָיִם וְלֹא לְאַחֲרִיתוֹ וְלֹא כְמָשְׁלוֹ אֲשֶׁר מָשָׁל כִּי תִנָּתֵשׁ מַלְכוּתּוֹ וְלַאֲחֵרִים מִלְּבַד־אֵלֶּה)

The expression **as he stands** indicates that **his kingdom will be broken and divided** while this king is still ruling. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could describe the time relationship more explicitly. Alternate translation: [But at the same time that he is still reigning]

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **his kingdom will be broken and divided**
UST His kingdom will break up into
(תִּשָּׁבֵר מַלְכוּתּוֹ וְתֵחָץ)

The expression **will be broken and divided** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [others will break his kingdom apart and divide it]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his kingdom will be broken and divided**
UST His kingdom will break up into
(תִּשָּׁבֵר מַלְכוּתּוֹ וְתֵחָץ)

Here the angel is speaking as if the **kingdom** were an object that would be broken into pieces. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [his kingdom will fall apart and be divided]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **toward the four winds of the heavens**
UST four parts
(לְאַרְבַּע רוּחוֹת הַשָּׁמָיִם)

Here the angel is speaking as if the four directions were **the four winds of the heavens**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [toward the four directions of the earth]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **For his kingdom will be uprooted**
UST That is because his empire will be like a plant that someone has pulled out of the ground
(כִּי תִנָּתֵשׁ מַלְכוּתּוֹ)

The expression **will be uprooted** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [For someone will uproot his kingdom]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **his kingdom will be uprooted**
UST his empire will be like a plant that someone has pulled out of the ground
(תִנָּתֵשׁ מַלְכוּתּוֹ)

Here the angel is speaking as if **his kingdom** were a plant that would be **uprooted** from the ground. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [his kingdom will be completely removed]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT and to others besides these
UST Other people will rule its parts
(וְלַאֲחֵרִים מִלְּבַד־אֵלֶּה)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and it will be given to others besides these]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his kingdom	His kingdom
the … winds of	four parts
the heavens	four parts
according to his dominion	They will … be as powerful as he was as a king
he ruled	They will … be as powerful as he was as a king
his kingdom	his empire

Daniel 11:5

ULT	UST
Then the king of the south will become strong, but {one} from his princes then will become stronger than him, and he will rule. His dominion {will be} a great dominion.	*The king who rules the southern part will become very powerful. But one of the military commanders of the great king who died will become more powerful than him. He will become a king, and he will rule a large empire {in the north}.*

ULT **the king of the south**
UST The king who rules the southern part
(מֶלֶךְ־הַנֶּגֶב)

The implication is that **the south** means the region to the south of Judea, that is, Egypt. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the king of the south, that is, Egypt]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **but {one} from his princes**
UST But one of the military commanders of the great king who died
(וּמִן־שָׂרָיו)

The pronoun **his** refers either to (1) the king of the south, so that one of his own commanders will become stronger than he is or (2) the mighty king of verse 3, so that one of that king's commanders will become stronger. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [but one from the princes of the king of the south]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **His dominion {will be} a great dominion**
UST and he will rule a large empire {in the north}
(מִמְשָׁל־רַב מֶמְשַׁלְתּוֹ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **dominion**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [He will rule over very many peoples]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	The king who rules
his princes	the military commanders of the great king who died
and he will rule	He will become a king
His dominion	a … empire {in the north}

Daniel 11:6

ULT	UST
And at the end of years, they will unite themselves. The daughter of the king of the south will come to the king of the north to make uprightnesses. But she will not retain the strength of the arm, and he will not stand, nor his arm. And she will be given up, she and the ones having brought her and the one having fathered her and the one strengthening her, in {those} times.	*After many years, the southern king and the northern king will become allies. To make a peace treaty, the southern king will allow the northern king to marry his daughter. But she will not be the queen for very long. Her husband, the northern king, will not continue to rule. People will kill her, her child, her husband, and the officials who brought her from the southern kingdom.*

ULT **will come to the king of the north**
UST will allow the northern king to marry
(תָּבוֹא אֶל־מֶלֶךְ הַצָּפוֹן)

The angel is referring to marriage in a polite way by using the phrase **will come to the king of the north**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [will marry the king of the north]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **to make uprightnesses**
UST To make a peace treaty
(לַעֲשׂוֹת מֵישָׁרִים)

The angel is using **to make uprightnesses** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to make a peace agreement." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to arrange a peace treaty]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **But she will not retain the strength of the arm**
UST But she will not be the queen
(וְלֹא־תַעְצֹר כֹּוחַ הַזְּרֹועַ)

Here, **the arm** represents "power." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [But she will not retain her powerful position]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and he will not stand, nor his arm**
UST Her husband, the northern king, will not continue to rule
(וְלֹא יַעֲמֹד֙ וּזְרֹעֹ֔ו)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and he will not continue to rule, nor will he retain power]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And she will be given up**
UST People will kill her
(וְתִנָּתֵ֑ן)

The expression **will be given up** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And enemies will hand her over]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and the one having fathered her**
UST her child
(וְהַיֹּלְדָ֖הּ)

The expression translated as **and the one having fathered her** represents the standard written Hebrew text as we have it today. This reading, however, does not seem to make sense. Scholars have proposed that a scribe may have added the wrong vowels to the original consonants of the text, resulting in this expression. With different vowels, it would say “her child,” which seems to fit the meaning of this passage better. The UST follows that interpretation. You may want to follow the major translation in your area. Alternate translation: [and her child]

Support Reference: Alternative Readings

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
years	many years
the king of	the … king
the south	southern
uprightnesses	a peace treaty
in {those} times	for very long

Daniel 11:7

ULT	UST
But from a branch of her roots, one will stand {in} his place. And he will come against the army, and he will enter into the fortress of the king of the north. And he will do with them and be strong.	*But then a member of her family will become the next southern king. He will lead his army to attack the northern army, and he will defeat them when they fight. He will conquer the capital city of the northern kingdom.*

ULT **But from a branch of her roots, one will stand {in} his place**
UST But then a member of her family will become the next southern king
(וְעָמַד מִנֵּצֶר שָׁרָשֶׁיהָ כַּנּוֹ)

The angel is using this phrase as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will rule as king after him." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But from a branch of her roots, one will rule as king after him]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **from a branch of her roots, one**
UST a member of her family
(מִנֵּצֶר שָׁרָשֶׁיהָ)

Here the angel is speaking as if the family of this woman were a plant with **roots** from which **a branch** would grow. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [from among her family members, one]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And he will do with them and be strong**
UST and he will defeat them when they fight
(וְעָשָׂה בָהֶם וְהֶחֱזִיק)

The phrase **do with them and be strong** expresses a single idea. The word **strong** tells more about **do**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [he will act powerfully against them] or [he will subjugate them]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
into the fortress of	the capital city of

ULT	UST
the king of	the … kingdom

Daniel 11:8

ULT	UST
And also he will bring into captivity {to} Egypt their gods with their metal images with the silver and gold vessels of their delight. And he, {for} years he will stand from the king of the north.	*He will also take away the idols that represent their gods and their gold and silver treasures. He will bring them back to Egypt with him. For the next several years he will not attack the northern king.*

ULT **he will bring into captivity {to} Egypt**
UST He will … take away … He will bring them back to Egypt with him
(בַּשִּׁבְיָ יָבֵא מִצְרָיִם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **captivity**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [he will capture and carry away to Egypt]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **their gods**
UST their gods
(אֱלֹהֵיהֶם)

The pronoun **their** refers to the people of the northern kingdom. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the gods of the people of the north]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the silver and gold vessels of their delight**
UST their gold and silver treasures
(כְּלֵי חֶמְדָּתָם כֶּסֶף וְזָהָב)

The angel is using the possessive form to describe **vessels** that are characterized by being objects of **their delight**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the silver and gold vessels that they treasured]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **he will stand from the king of the north**
UST will not attack the northern king
(יַעֲמֹ֖ד מִמֶּ֥לֶךְ הַצָּפֽוֹן)

The angel is using **he will stand from the king of the north** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will keep away from the king of the north and not attack him." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he will refrain from attacking the king of the north]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
into captivity	He will … take away
{to} Egypt	He will bring them back to Egypt with him
their gods	their gods
their metal images	the idols that represent
silver	silver
and gold	gold and
their delight	their … treasures
{for} years	For the next several years
{for} years	For the next several years
from the king of	the … king

Daniel 11:9

ULT	UST
Then he will come into the kingdom of the king of the south, but he will return to his land.	*Then the northern king will invade the southern kingdom. But he will lose the battle and have to retreat to his own kingdom.*

ULT **Then he will come**
UST Then … will invade
(וּבָא)

The pronoun **he** refers either to (1) the king of the north, who will invade the kingdom of the south. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [Then the king of the north will come]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
into the kingdom of	the southern kingdom
the king of	the … king
his land	his own kingdom

Daniel 11:10

ULT	UST
And his sons will be stirred up, and they will assemble the multitude of a great army. And coming, it will come, and it will overflow and pass through, and it will return and be stirred up to his fortress.	*But his sons who rule after him will prepare to attack the southern kingdom again. They will gather a very large army. As that army marches south, it will cover the land like a huge flood. {After some fighting, there will be a truce, but then} the northern army will attack again. It will conquer a city that has strong walls around it.*

ULT **And his sons will be stirred up**
UST But his sons who rule after him will prepare to attack the southern kingdom again
(וּבָנָו יִתְגָּרֹו)

The expression **will be stirred up** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And his sons will stir themselves up for battle]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And coming, it will come**
UST As that army marches south
(וּבָא בֹּוא)

The angel is repeating forms of the verb **come** in order to intensify his expression of the idea that it conveys. If your language can repeat words for intensification, it would be appropriate to do that here in your translation. If not, your language may have another way of expressing the intensification. Alternate translation: [And it will surely come]

Support Reference: Reduplication

ULT **and it will overflow and pass through**
UST it will cover the land like a huge flood
(וְשָׁטַף וְעָבַר)

Here the angel is speaking as if this army were water that would **overflow** the land. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it will spread over the land and pass through]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and it will return and be stirred up to his fortress**
UST {After some fighting, there will be a truce, but then} the northern army will attack again. It will conquer a city that has strong walls around it
(וְנָשַׁב ויתגרו עַד־מעזה)

The angel is using **return and be stirred up** as a common expression of the culture to mean “attack again.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and it will bring the war once again to his stronghold] or [it will attack again, reaching all the way to his fortress]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and they will assemble	They will gather
his fortress	a city that has strong walls around it

Daniel 11:11

ULT	UST
Then the king of the south will embitter himself, and he will go out and fight with him, with the king of the north. And he will make a great multitude stand, but the multitude will be given into his hand,	*This will make the southern king very angry. He will lead his army to fight against the northern king. The northern king will gather a great army, but the southern king will defeat that great army.*

ULT Then the king of the south will embitter himself
UST This will make the southern king very angry
(וְיִתְמַרְמַר֙ מֶ֣לֶךְ הַנֶּ֔גֶב)

The angel is using **will embitter himself** as a common expression of the culture to mean "will become very angry." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Then the king of the south will become furious]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT And he will make a great multitude stand, but the multitude will be given into his hand
UST The northern king will gather a great army, but the southern king will defeat that great army
(וְהֶעֱמִ֤יד הָמ֙וֹן רָ֔ב וְנִתַּ֥ן הֶהָמ֖וֹן בְּיָדֽוֹ)

The pronoun **he** refers to the king of the north, while the pronoun **his** refers to the king of the south. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the king of the north will make a great multitude stand, but the multitude will be given into the hand of the king of the south]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT And he will make a great multitude stand
UST The northern king will gather a great army
(וְהֶעֱמִ֤יד הָמ֙וֹן רָ֔ב)

The angel is using **will make a great multitude stand** as a common expression of the culture to mean "will gather a large army." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will raise up many soldiers]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **but the multitude will be given into his hand**
UST but the southern king will defeat that great army
(וְנִתַּן הֶהָמוֹן בְּיָדוֹ)

The expression **will be given** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [but God will give the multitude into his hand]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **but the multitude will be given into his hand**
UST but the southern king will defeat that great army
(וְנִתַּן הֶהָמוֹן בְּיָדוֹ)

Here, **his hand** represents "his power and control." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [but the multitude will be given over into his control]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	the … king

Daniel 11:12

ULT	UST
and the multitude will be taken away. And his heart will rise up, for he will have made myriads fall, but he will not prevail.	*When his soldiers destroy the northern army, they will kill tens of thousands of its soldiers. This will make the southern king very proud. But his army will not continue to win battles.*

ULT **And his heart will rise up**
UST This will make the southern king very proud
(יָרוּם לְבָבוֹ)

The angel is using **his heart will rise up** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will become arrogant." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will become arrogant]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **for he will have made myriads fall**
UST they will kill tens of thousands of its soldiers
(וְהִפֵּיל רִבֹּאוֹת)

Here, **fall** represents "die in battle." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [for he will have caused myriads to die in battle]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **myriads**
UST tens of thousands of its soldiers
(רִבֹּאוֹת)

The term **myriads** describes a very large number, tens of thousands. Translate this number according to the conventions of your own language and culture. Alternate translation: [ten thousands]

Support Reference: Numbers

Daniel 11:13

ULT	UST
For the king of the north will return and make stand a multitude greater than the first. And at the end of times, years, coming, he will come with a great army and with much equipment.	*Instead, the northern king will prepare to fight again. He will gather an even bigger army than the one that he had before. After several years, he will invade the southern kingdom with a large army that has much military equipment.*

ULT **For the king of the north will return and make stand a multitude**
UST Instead, the northern king will prepare to fight again. He will gather an … army
(וְשָׁבَ֣ מֶֽלֶךְ־הַצָּפ֗וֹן וְהֶעֱמִ֤יד הָמ֙וֹן)

The phrase **return and make stand** expresses a single idea. The word **return** tells more about **make stand**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [For the king of the north will once more assemble a multitude]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **greater than the first**
UST even bigger … than the one that he had before
(רַ֚ב מִן־הָרִאשׁ֔וֹן)

The expression **the first** means the first army that this king gathered. If your language would not represent a number in a form such as **the first**, you could represent this number in a form that your language would use. Alternate translation: [greater than his earlier army]

Support Reference: Ordinal Numbers

ULT **And at the end of times, years**
UST After several years
(וּלְקֵ֖ץ עִתִּ֥ים שָׁנִ֛ים)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [And at the end of a period of several years]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	the … king
times	several
years	years

Daniel 11:14

ULT	UST
And in those times, many will stand against the king of the south. And sons of violence of your people will lift themselves up to make the vision stand, but they will stumble.	*When that happens, many people will rebel against the southern king. Some violent men among the Israelites will revolt against him, but he will defeat them. However, this will help make happen the things I am showing you.*

ULT **many will stand against the king of the south**
UST many people will rebel against the southern king
(רַבִּים יַעַמְדוּ עַל־מֶלֶךְ הַנֶּגֶב)

The angel is using the adjective **many** as a noun to mean many people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [many soldiers will stand against the king of the south]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **many will stand against the king of the south**
UST many people will rebel against the southern king
(רַבִּים יַעַמְדוּ עַל־מֶלֶךְ הַנֶּגֶב)

The angel is using **will stand against** as a common expression of the culture to mean "will rebel against." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [many will rise up against the king of the south]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And sons of violence of your people**
UST Some violent men among the Israelites
(וּבְנֵי ׀ פָּרִיצֵי עַמְּךָ)

The angel is using the possessive form to describe **sons** who are characterized by **violence**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [And violent sons of your people]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **your people**
UST among the Israelites
(עַמְּךָ)

The implication is that **your people** means the Jewish people, to whom Daniel belongs. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [your own Jewish people]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to make the vision stand**
UST However, this will help make happen the things I am showing you
(לְהַעֲמִיד חָזוֹן)

The angel is using **to make the vision stand** as a common expression of the culture to mean "to bring about what the vision describes." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [to fulfill what the vision describes]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **but they will stumble**
UST but he will defeat them
(וְנִכְשָׁלוּ)

Here the angel is speaking as if these men would **stumble**, meaning that they will fail and be defeated. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [but the rebels will fail]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And in … times	When that happens
the king of	the … king
the vision	the things I am showing you
but they will stumble	but he will defeat them

Daniel 11:15

ULT	UST
And the king of the north will come, and he will pour out a mound, and he will capture a city of fortifications. And the arms of the south will not stand, even his choice people, for there will be no strength to stand.	*Then the northern king will invade the southern kingdom. His soldiers will attack a city that has strong walls around it. They will capture it by piling up dirt against its walls. The northern army will be so strong that the southern army will not be able to defend that city, even with its best troops.*

ULT **and he will pour out a mound**
UST by piling up dirt against its walls
(וְיִשְׁפֹּךְ סוֹלֵלָה)

The angel is using **he will pour out a mound** as a common expression of the culture to mean “he will pile up earth against the wall of a city in order to attack it.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he will build a siege ramp against a city wall]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a city of fortifications**
UST His soldiers will attack a city that has strong walls around it
(עִיר מִבְצָרוֹת)

The angel is using the possessive form to describe a **city** that is characterized by **fortifications**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a fortified city]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **And the arms of the south will not stand**
UST the southern army will not be able to defend that city
(וּזְרֹעוֹת הַנֶּגֶב לֹא יַעֲמֹדוּ)

Here, **the arms** represents “the military forces.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [And the military forces of the south will not stand]

Support Reference: Metonymy

> **ULT** **even his choice people**
> **UST** even with its best troops
> (וְעַם֙ מִבְחָרָ֔יו)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [even his best warriors will not stand]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	the … king
and he will capture	They will capture it
fortifications	that has strong walls around it

Daniel 11:16

ULT	UST
But the one coming against him will act according to his desire, and no one will be standing to his face. And he will stand in the land of beauty, and destruction {will be} in his hand.	*The northern king who is attacking will succeed in his plans. The southern king will not be able to oppose him. His army will occupy the beautiful land of Israel, and he will have the power to destroy it.*

ULT **But the one coming against him will act according to his desire**
UST The northern king who is attacking will succeed in his plans
(וְיַעַשׂ הַבָּא אֵלָיו כִּרְצוֹנוֹ)

The pronoun **him** refers to the king of the south, and the pronoun **his** refers to the king of the north, who is the one coming against him. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [But the king of the north will succeed in doing as he wishes]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **in the land of beauty**
UST the beautiful land of Israel
(בְּאֶרֶץ־הַצְּבִי)

The angel is using the possessive form to describe a **land** that is characterized by **beauty**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [in the beautiful land]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **and destruction {will be} in his hand**
UST and he will have the power to destroy it
(וְכָלָה בְיָדוֹ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **destruction**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and he will be able to destroy it]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
in the land of	the … land of Israel
and destruction	to destroy it

Daniel 11:17

ULT	UST
And he will set his face to come with the strength of all of his kingdom, and uprightnesses with him, thus he will do. And he will give a daughter of women to him, to ruin it. But it will not stand, and it will not be for him.	*Then the northern king will determine to invade the southern kingdom with as strong an army as he can form from his kingdom. He will bring a peace treaty and make the southern king agree to it. He will allow the southern king to marry his daughter, but he will want his daughter to work for him against her husband. But this plan will not succeed, so it will not help him.*

ULT **and uprightnesses with him**
UST He will bring a peace treaty
(וִישָׁרִים עִמּוֹ)

This expression could mean: (1) that this king will make a treaty. The meaning would be the same as in 11:6, “The daughter of the king of the south will come to the king of the north to make uprightnesses.” Alternate translation: [and he will make a treaty] or (2) that some Jews will side with this king. Alternate translation [and some upright ones will be with him] or [and some who should be upright will support him instead]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And he will set his face to come**
UST Then the northern king will determine to invade the southern kingdom
(וְיָשֵׂם ׀ פָּנָיו לָבֹוא)

The angel is using **he will set his face** as a common expression of the culture to mean “he will firmly decide.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will firmly decide to come]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and uprightnesses with him, thus he will do**
UST He will bring a peace treaty and make the southern king agree to it
(וִישָׁרִים עִמּוֹ וְעָשָׂה)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and he will bring terms of agreement with him, and thus he will act]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **And he will give a daughter of women to him, to ruin it**
UST He will allow the southern king to marry his daughter, but he will want his daughter to work for him against her husband
(וּבַת הַנָּשִׁים יִתֶּן־לוֹ לְהַשְׁחִיתָהּ)

The pronoun **he** refers to the king of the north, while the pronoun **him** refers to the king of the south. The pronoun **it** refers to the kingdom of the south It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And the king of the north will give a daughter of women to the king of the south, to ruin the kingdom of the south]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **a daughter of women**
UST his daughter
(וּבַת הַנָּשִׁים)

The angel is using **a daughter of women** as a common expression of the culture to mean “a young woman.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [a young woman]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **to ruin it**
UST but he will want his daughter to work for him against her husband
(לְהַשְׁחִיתָהּ)

The pronoun **it** refers either to (1) the kingdom of the south, which this king wants to destroy or (2) the daughter herself, whom he is willing to use for his own purposes. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [to ruin the southern kingdom]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **But it will not stand, and it will not be for him**
UST But this plan will not succeed, so it will not help him
(וְלֹא תַעֲמֹד וְלֹא־לוֹ תִהְיֶה)

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could combine them and express the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [But this plan will not succeed and will not benefit him at all]

Support Reference: Parallelism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
his kingdom	from his kingdom
to ruin it	but he will want his daughter to work for him against her husband

Daniel 11:18

ULT	UST
And he will turn his face to the coastlands, and he will capture many. But a commander will end his reproach {that is} to him; without his {own} reproach, he will return {it} to him.	*The northern king will then attack the regions by the sea, and he will conquer many of them. This will shame the rulers that controlled those regions. But a military commander from another kingdom will defeat him. That will shame the northern king instead.*

ULT **But a commander will end his reproach {that is} to him**
UST This will shame the rulers that controlled those regions. But a military commander from another kingdom will defeat him
(וְהִשְׁבִּית קָצִין חֶרְפָּתוֹ לוֹ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **reproach**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [But a commander will stop him from insulting others]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **his reproach {that is} to him**
UST This will shame the rulers that controlled those regions
(חֶרְפָּתוֹ לוֹ)

The pronouns **his** and **him** both refer to the king of the north. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [the king of the north's own reproach]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **his reproach {that is} to him**
UST This will shame the rulers that controlled those regions
(חֶרְפָּתוֹ לוֹ)

It might seem that the expression **his reproach that is to him** contains extra information that would not be natural to express in your language. If so, you could shorten it. Alternate translation: [his reproach]

Support Reference: Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

ULT **without his {own} reproach, he will return {it}**
UST That will shame … instead
(בִּלְתִּי חֶרְפָּתוֹ יָשִׁיב)

The pronouns "his" and "he" refer to the "commander"; "him" refers to the king of the north.

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and he will capture	and he will conquer
a commander	But a military commander from another kingdom
his reproach	This will shame the rulers that controlled those regions

Daniel 11:19

ULT	UST
And he will turn his face to the fortresses of his land, but he will stumble and fall, and he will not be found.	*The northern king will have to return to the strong forts in his own land. But he will die there, and that will be the end of him.*

ULT **but he will stumble and fall, and he will not be found**
UST But he will die there, and that will be the end of him
(וְנִכְשַׁל וְנָפַל וְלֹא יִמָּצֵא)

The angel is referring to the death of this king in a polite way by using the phrase **he will stumble and fall, and he will not be found**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [but he will die there and disappear from history]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and he will not be found**
UST and that will be the end of him
(וְלֹא יִמָּצֵא)

The expression **will not be found** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and no one will find him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the fortresses of	to the strong forts
his land	in his own land
but he will stumble	But he will die there

Daniel 11:20

ULT	UST
And one making an exactor pass through the splendor of the kingdom will stand in his place. But in a few days he will be broken, but not in nostrils and not in battle.	*The king who rules after him will send one of his officials to collect tribute from {Judea,} the most glorious part of his kingdom. But after a few years, that king will die. He will not die in battle or because people rebel angrily against him{; instead, someone will murder him}.*

ULT **And one making an exactor pass through the splendor of the kingdom will stand in his place**

UST The king who rules after him will send one of his officials to collect tribute from {Judea,} the most glorious part of his kingdom

(וְעָמַד עַל־כַּנּוֹ מַעֲבִיר נוֹגֵשׂ הֲדַר מַלְכוּת)

The implication is that this king will send a tax collector throughout his realm to take money from the people. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And a king who sends a tax collector throughout the glorious realm to take money from the people will rule]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the splendor of the kingdom**

UST from {Judea,} the most glorious part of his kingdom

(הֲדַר מַלְכוּת)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the splendor**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the splendid kingdom]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **he will be broken**

UST that king will die

(יִשָּׁבֵר)

The expression **will be broken** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [someone will break him]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **he will be broken**
UST that king will die
(יִשָּׁבֵר)

Here the angel is speaking as if this king were an object that would be **broken**, meaning that he will die. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he will die]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **but not in nostrils and not in battle**
UST He will not die in battle or because people rebel angrily against him{; instead, someone will murder him}
(וְלֹא בְאַפַּיִם וְלֹא בְמִלְחָמָה)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [but he will not be broken in anger and he will not be broken in battle]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **but not in nostrils**
UST or because people rebel angrily against him{; instead, someone will murder him}
(וְלֹא בְאַפַּיִם)

The angel is using **in nostrils** as a common expression of the culture to mean “in anger.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [but not in anger]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the splendor of	from {Judea,} the most glorious part of
the kingdom	his kingdom
But in … days	But after … years

Daniel 11:21

ULT	UST
And a despised one will stand in his place, and they will not give the splendor of the kingdom to him. And he will come in security, and he will seize the kingdom by intrigues.	*The king who rules after him will be an evil man. He will not deserve to become king{, since he will not be the son of the previous king}. He will come when people do not expect it, and he will become king by making secret plots.*

ULT **And a despised one will stand in his place**
UST The king who rules after him will be an evil man
(וְעָמַד עַל־כַּנּוֹ נִבְזֶה)

The expression **a despised one** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And a man whom people despise will stand in his place]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and they will not give the splendor of the kingdom to him**
UST He will not deserve to become king{, since he will not be the son of the previous king}
(וְלֹא־נָתְנוּ עָלָיו הוֹד מַלְכוּת)

The pronoun **they** does not refer to any specific people. The angel is using it to mean people in general. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and people will not give the splendor of the kingdom to him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the splendor of the kingdom**
UST king{, since he will not be the son of the previous king}
(הוֹד מַלְכוּת)

See how you translated the abstract noun **the splendor** in 11:20.

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **And he will come in security**
UST He will come when people do not expect it
(וּבָא בְשַׁלְוָה)

The angel is using **he will come in security** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will come when people feel safe and are not expecting an attack." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will come when people feel safe and unsuspecting]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the splendor of	king{, since he will not be the son of the previous king}
the kingdom	king{, since he will not be the son of the previous king}
and he will seize	and he will become king
the kingdom	and he will become king

Daniel 11:22

ULT	UST
And the arms of the flood will be swept away from to his face, and they will be broken, and also the leader of the covenant.	*Great armies will oppose him, but he will defeat them and destroy them. He will also remove God's high priest.*

ULT **And the arms of the flood will be swept away**
UST Great armies … but he will defeat them
(וּזְרֹעוֹת הַשֶּׁטֶף יִשָּׁטְפוּ)

Here the angel is speaking as if an army were a flood; speaking as if a flood had arms; speaking as if a flood could be swept away (rather than sweeping things away itself). Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the vast armies will be utterly defeated]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the arms of the flood will be swept away**
UST Great armies … but he will defeat them
(וּזְרֹעוֹת הַשֶּׁטֶף יִשָּׁטְפוּ)

The expression **will be swept away** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And he will sweep away the vast armies]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And the arms of the flood will be swept away**
UST Great armies … but he will defeat them
(וּזְרֹעוֹת הַשֶּׁטֶף יִשָּׁטְפוּ)

The noun "flood" and the verb "swept away" are from the same root. Alternate translation: [And the arms of the sweeping away will be swept away] or [And the arms of the flood will be flooded away]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **from to his face**
UST will oppose him
(מִלְּפָנָיו)

Here, **his face** represents "his presence." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [from before him]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **and they will be broken**
UST and destroy them
(וְיִשָּׁבֵרוּ)

The expression **will be broken** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and he will break them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **and they will be broken**
UST and destroy them
(וְיִשָּׁבֵרוּ)

The pronoun **they** refers to the arms of the flood, that is, the invading armies mentioned earlier in the verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [and the invading armies will be defeated]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **and they will be broken**
UST and destroy them
(וְיִשָּׁבֵרוּ)

Here the messenger is speaking of the invading armies as if they were an object that could be **broken**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and they will be defeated] or [and he will defeat them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and also the leader of the covenant**
UST He will also remove God's high priest
(וְגַם נְגִיד בְּרִית)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and also the leader of the covenant will be swept away and broken]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

> ULT **the leader of the covenant**
> UST God's high priest
> (נָגִיד בְּרִית)

The implication is that **the leader of the covenant** is the high priest, who leads the people in keeping the covenant that God made with them. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the high priest, who leads the people in God's covenant]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the flood	Great armies
the leader of	God's high priest
the covenant	God's high priest

Daniel 11:23

ULT	UST
And after the joining together with him, he will act {with} deceit. And he will go up, and he will become strong with a few of people.	*The rulers of other nations will make treaties with him, but he will betray them. He will begin with a small army, but he will become very powerful.*

ULT **And after the joining together with him, he will act {with} deceit. And he will go up, and he will become strong with a few of people**

UST The rulers of other nations will make treaties with him, but he will betray them. He will begin with a small army, but he will become very powerful

(וּמִן־הִתְחַבְּרוּת אֵלָיו יַעֲשֶׂה מִרְמָה וְעָלָה וְעָצַם בִּמְעַט־גּוֹי)

The expression **after the joining together with him** indicates that these events will happen after other rulers make an alliance with this king. Your language may have a connecting phrase that you can use to show this. Alternate translation: [Once others have made an alliance with him, he will act with deceit. Then he will go up, and he will become strong with a few people]

Support Reference: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

ULT **And after the joining together with him**

UST The rulers of other nations will make treaties with him, but

(וּמִן־הִתְחַבְּרוּת אֵלָיו)

This seems to refer to lesser kings or groups among peoples he wanted to control joining with this “king of the north.”

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **he will act {with} deceit**

UST he will betray them

(יַעֲשֶׂה מִרְמָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **deceit**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [he will act in a deceitful way]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

Daniel 11:24

ULT	UST
In security he will come even into the fatnesses of the province, and he will do what his fathers and the fathers of his fathers did not do. He will scatter plunder and spoil and wealth to them, and he will devise his devices against fortifications, but until a time.	*When people are not expecting it, he will capture the most fertile regions in the southern kingdom. The kings who ruled the northern kingdom before him had not been able to do that, but he will do it. He will reward his troops and supporters with valuable possessions that he takes from those regions. He will make plans to capture the cities in the southern kingdom that have walls around them. But he will pursue those plans only for a short time.*

ULT **even into the fatnesses of the province**
UST the most fertile regions in the southern kingdom
(וּבְמִשְׁמַנֵּי מְדִינָה׃)

Here the angel is speaking as if the richest parts of the province were its **fatnesses**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [even into the richest parts of the province]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **his fathers and the fathers of his fathers**
UST The kings who ruled the northern kingdom before him
(אֲבֹתָיו וַאֲבוֹת אֲבֹתָיו)

Here the angel is speaking as if the ancestors of this king were his **fathers**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [his ancestors and their ancestors before them]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **even into the fatnesses of … He will scatter plunder and spoil and wealth to them**
UST the most fertile regions … He will reward his troops and supporters with valuable possessions that he takes from those regions
(וּבְמִשְׁמַנֵּי & בִּזָּה וְשָׁלָל וּרְכוּשׁ לָהֶם יְבַזֵּר)

The pronoun **He** refers to the king, while the pronoun **them** refers to his soldiers and followers. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [even into the fatnesses of the province, the king will scatter plunder and spoil and wealth to his soldiers and followers]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT plunder and spoil and wealth
UST with valuable possessions that he takes from those regions
(בִּזָּה וְשָׁלָל וּרְכוּשׁ)

The terms **plunder**, **spoil**, and **wealth** mean similar things. The angel is using the three terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [great amounts of captured goods]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT and he will devise his devices
UST He will make plans
(וְיַחֲשֹׁב מַחְשְׁבֹתָיו)

The angel is using a construction in which a verb and its object come from the same root. You may be able to use the same construction in your language to express the meaning here. Alternatively, your language may have another way of saying this.

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT but until a time
UST But he will pursue those plans only for a short time
(וְעַד־עֵת)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [but only until a certain time has passed]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the province	in the southern kingdom
He will scatter	He will reward
plunder	with valuable possessions that he takes from those regions
and spoil	with valuable possessions that he takes from those regions
fortifications	the cities in the southern kingdom that have walls around them
a time	a short time

Daniel 11:25

ULT	UST
And he will awaken his strength and his heart against the king of the south with a great army. And the king of the south will be stirred up to battle with an army great and mighty unto much. But he will not stand, for they will devise devices against him.	*The northern king will feel strong and confident, and he will gather a large army to attack the southern king. The southern king will gather a very large army so that he can fight against him. But he will lose the battle because some of his officials will betray him.*

ULT **And he will awaken his strength and his heart**
UST The northern king will feel strong and confident
(וְיָעֵר֙ כֹּח֣וֹ וּלְבָב֔וֹ)

The angel is using **he will awaken his strength and his heart** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will summon all of his power and courage." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will summon all of his power and courage]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And the king of the south will be stirred up to battle**
UST The southern king will gather … so that he can fight against him
(וּמֶ֣לֶךְ הַנֶּ֗גֶב יִתְגָּרֶה֙ לַמִּלְחָמָ֔ה)

The expression **will be stirred up** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And the king of the south will rouse himself to battle]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **with an army great and mighty unto much**
UST a very large army
(בְּחַ֤יִל־גָּדוֹל֙ וְעָצ֣וּם עַד־מְאֹ֔ד)

The terms **great** and **mighty** mean similar things. The angel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [with an extremely powerful army]

Support Reference: Doublet

> ULT **for they will devise devices against him**
> UST because some of his officials will betray him
> (כִּי־יַחְשְׁבוּ עָלָיו מַחֲשָׁבוֹת)

The pronoun **they** refers to officials of the king of the south who will betray him. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [for his own officials will devise devices against him]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king of	the … king
and mighty	very

Daniel 11:26

ULT	UST
Even the eaters of his portion will break him. And his army will be swept away, and many will fall slain.	*Some of his own royal officials will help destroy him. The northern king will defeat his army, and many of his soldiers will die.*

ULT Even the eaters of his portion
UST Some of his own royal officials
(וְאֹכְלֵי פַּת־בָּגֹו)

The angel is using **the eaters of his portion** as a common expression of the culture to mean "the men who eat at his table as his trusted advisers." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Even those who share his food as his trusted friends]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT And his army will be swept away
UST The northern king will defeat his army
(וְחֵילֹו יִשְׁטֹף)

The expression **will be swept away** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [And his army will collapse]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT and many will fall slain
UST and many of his soldiers will die
(וְנָפְלוּ חֲלָלִים רַבִּים)

The expression **slain** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [and many will fall as enemies kill them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
slain	and … will die

Daniel 11:27

ULT	UST
And the two of them, the kings, their heart {will be} to evil, and at one table they will speak falsehood. But it will not prosper, for the end {is} still for the appointed time.	*Then the northern king and the southern king will meet together to make a peace treaty. But each one will be trying to trick the other, so they will lie to each other. However, neither one will get what he wants, because God has decided what will ultimately happen.*

ULT **their heart {will be} to evil**
UST But each one will be trying to trick the other
(לִבָּבָם לְמֵרָע)

Here the angel is speaking as if the intentions of these two kings were their **heart**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [their intentions will be evil]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **and at one table they will speak falsehood**
UST will meet together to make a peace treaty … so they will lie to each other
(וְעַל־שֻׁלְחָן אֶחָד כָּזָב יְדַבֵּרוּ)

Here, **one table** represents "the negotiations between them." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [and while negotiating together, they will speak falsehood]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they will speak falsehood**
UST so they will lie to each other
(כָּזָב יְדַבֵּרוּ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **falsehood**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [they will speak deceitfully to each other]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **But it will not prosper**
UST However, neither one will get what he wants
(וְלֹא תִצְלָח)

The pronoun **it** refers to the scheming of these two kings. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [But their scheming will not prosper]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for the end {is} still for the appointed time**
UST because God has decided what will ultimately happen
(כִּי־עֹוד קֵץ לַמֹּועֵד)

The implication is that God has determined the time when these things will come to an end. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [for the end will only come at the time that God has appointed]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the kings	Then the northern king and the southern king
{will be} to evil	But each one will be trying to trick the other
it will … prosper	However, neither one will get what he wants
for the appointed time	God has decided what will ultimately happen

Daniel 11:28

ULT	UST
And he will return to his land with great wealth. And his heart {will be} against the covenant of holiness. And he will act, and he will return to his land.	*The northern king will then return to his own land. He will take away many valuable things that his army has captured. He will be hostile to the Jewish people, and he will harm them on his way back to his land.*

ULT **the covenant of holiness**
UST the Jewish people
(בְּרִית קֹדֶשׁ)

The angel is using the possessive form to describe a **covenant** that is characterized by **holiness**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the holy covenant]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **And he will act**
UST and he will harm them
(וְעָשָׂה)

The implication is that this king will act against the people who belong to the covenant. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And he will take action against the people of the covenant]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to his land	to his own land
the covenant of	the Jewish people
holiness	the Jewish people

Daniel 11:29

ULT	UST
At the appointed time, he will return and come into the south. But it will not be like the former and like the latter.	*At the time that God has determined, the northern king will invade the southern kingdom again. But this time he will not be successful as he was before.*

ULT **But it will not be like the former and like the latter**
UST But this time he will not be successful as he was before
(וְלֹא־תִהְיֶה כָרִאשֹׁנָה וְכָאַחֲרֹנָה)

The angel is using **But it will not be like the former and like the latter** as a common expression of the culture to mean “this time will not turn out like the previous times.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But history will not repeat itself this time] or [But this campaign will not go the way the earlier ones did]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
At the appointed time	At the time that God has determined

Daniel 11:30

ULT	UST
For ships of Kittim will come against him, and he will be frightened, and he will return. And he will rage against the covenant of holiness, and he will act. And he will return, and he will attend to the forsakers of the covenant of holiness.	*An army will sail across the sea to oppose him. This will terrify hm, and he will have to retreat. This will make him very angry, and so he will harm the Jewish people again as he retreats. He will favor those Jews who no longer obey the agreement between Yahweh and the Israelites.*

ULT **Kittim**
UST An army will sail across the sea
(כִּתִּים)

The word **Kittim** is the name of a place.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **and he will attend to the forsakers of the covenant of holiness**
UST He will favor those Jews who no longer obey the agreement between Yahweh and the Israelites
(וְיָבֵן עַל־עֹזְבֵי בְּרִית קֹדֶשׁ)

The angel is using **he will attend to** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will show favor to." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he will show favor to those people who forsake the covenant of holiness]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and he will be frightened	This will terrify hm
And he will rage	This will make him very angry
against the covenant of	the Jewish people again
holiness	the Jewish people again
the forsakers of	those Jews who no longer obey
holiness	between Yahweh and the Israelites

Daniel 11:31

ULT	UST
And arms from him will stand, and they will profane the sanctuary, the fortress. And they will remove the perpetual sacrifice, and they will set up the abomination making desolate.	*The northern king will send his army to make the temple ritually unclean. They will prevent the priests from offering the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening. They will put something disgusting in the temple that makes it unclean.*

ULT **the sanctuary, the fortress**
UST the temple
(הַמִּקְדָּשׁ הַמָּעוֹז)

The implication is that **the sanctuary** is the temple in Jerusalem. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the temple in Jerusalem, that fortified sanctuary]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the perpetual sacrifice**
UST the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening
(הַתָּמִיד)

The implication is that **the perpetual sacrifice** is the offering that the priests presented every morning and every evening. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the sacrifice that the priests offered morning and evening without fail]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the abomination making desolate**
UST something disgusting in the temple that makes it unclean
(הַשִּׁקּוּץ מְשֹׁמֵם)

The implication is that **the abomination making desolate** is an idolatrous object that these men will set up in the temple, which will make the temple unfit for the worship of God. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [an idolatrous object in the temple that will make it unfit for worshiping God]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
and they will profane	to make … ritually unclean
the sanctuary	the temple
the fortress	the temple

ULT	UST
the perpetual sacrifice	the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening
and they will set up	They will put
the abomination	something disgusting
making desolate	in the temple that makes it unclean

Daniel 11:32

ULT	UST
And he will pollute with flatteries the wicked actors of the covenant. But the people knowing its God, they will be strong and act.	*Some Jews will be wickedly disobeying the agreement with Yahweh. The northern king will deceive them so that they become loyal to him. But other Jews will still be loyal to Yahweh, their God. They will firmly oppose him.*

ULT **And he will pollute with flatteries the wicked actors of the covenant**
UST Some Jews will be wickedly disobeying the agreement with Yahweh. The northern king will deceive them so that they become loyal to him
(וּמַרְשִׁיעֲי בְּרִית יַחֲנִיף בַּחֲלַקּוֹת)

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about **the wicked actors of the covenant** before the information about **flatteries**. Alternate translation: [And the people who disobey the covenant, he will pollute with flatteries]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And he will pollute with flatteries**
UST The northern king will deceive them so that they become loyal to him
(יַחֲנִיף בַּחֲלַקּוֹת)

Here the angel is speaking as if this king would **pollute** these people, meaning that he will lead them into wickedness. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will use flattery to corrupt]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **But the people knowing its God**
UST But other Jews will still be loyal to Yahweh, their God
(וְעַם יֹדְעֵי אֱלֹהָיו)

In this verse, the word **people** is singular in form, but it refers to all of the Israelites as a group. That is why the angel uses the singular pronoun **its**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use plural forms here. Alternate translation: [But the people who know their God]

Support Reference: Collective Nouns

ULT **But the people knowing its God**
UST But other Jews will still be loyal to Yahweh, their God
(וְעַם יֹדְעֵי אֱלֹהָיו)

The angel is using **knowing its God** as a common expression of the culture to mean "remaining faithful to its God." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But the people remaining faithful to its God]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **its God**
UST Yahweh, their God
(אֱלֹהָיו)

The angel is not using this possessive form **its God** to indicate that these people possess or control God. Rather, the angel is using these words to indicate that God is the one whom these people worship. Alternate translation: [the God they worship]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **they will be strong and act**
UST They will firmly oppose him
(יַחֲזִקוּ וְעָשׂוּ)

The phrase **be strong and act** expresses a single idea. The word **be strong** tells more about **act**. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning in a different way. Alternate translation: [they will act strongly]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wicked actors of	Some Jews will be wickedly disobeying
the covenant	the agreement with Yahweh
knowing	will still be loyal to
its God	Yahweh, their God

Daniel 11:33

ULT	UST
And the makers wise of the people will make many understand. But they will stumble by the sword and by flame, by captivity and by plunder, {for} days.	*Some wise Jewish leaders will help other Jews recognize that they should resist the northern king. But for a short time, the northern king's soldiers will be able to kill them with their swords or by burning them. They soldiers will take some of them as prisoners, and they will steal their possessions.*

ULT **And the makers wise of the people**
UST Some wise Jewish leaders
(וּמַשְׂכִּילֵי עָם)

By **the makers wise of the people**, the angel means the wise leaders among the Jewish people who will teach and encourage others to remain faithful to God despite the persecution. You could indicate this explicitly in your translation if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the wise leaders among the Jewish people]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And the makers wise of the people will make many understand**
UST Some wise Jewish leaders will help other Jews recognize that they should resist the northern king
(וּמַשְׂכִּילֵי עָם יָבִינוּ לָרַבִּים)

This is poetic language. If your language has a way to indicate poetry, you could use it here. Alternate translation: [And those who teach to make others wise will lead many to understand]

Support Reference: Poetry

ULT **But they will stumble**
UST the northern king's soldiers will be able to kill them
(וְנִכְשְׁלוּ)

The angel is referring to dying in a polite way by using the phrase **they will stumble**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [they will perish] or [they will die]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **by the sword and by flame**
UST with their swords or by burning them
(בְּחֶרֶב וּבְלֶהָבָה)

Here, **the sword** and **flame** represent "violent death." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [by violent death]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **{for} days**
UST But for a short time
(יָמִים)

Here, **days** represents "a period of time." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [for a length of time]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the makers wise of	Some wise … leaders
will make … understand	will help … recognize that they should resist the northern king
But they will stumble	the northern king's soldiers will be able to kill them
by the sword	with their swords
by captivity	They soldiers will take some of them as prisoners
and by plunder	and they will steal their possessions

Daniel 11:34

ULT	UST
And when they stumble, they will be helped {with} a little help. And many will join themselves with them by intrigues.	*While the Jews who are loyal to Yahweh are suffering in this way, some people will help them a little bit. However, some of them will not help them sincerely.*

ULT **And when they stumble, they will be helped {with} a little help. And many will join themselves with them by intrigues**
UST While the Jews who are loyal to Yahweh are suffering in this way, some people will help them a little bit. However, some of them will not help them sincerely
(וּבְהִכָּשְׁלָם יֵעָזְרוּ עֵזֶר מְעָט וְנִלְוָו עֲלֵיהֶם רַבִּים בַּחֲלַקְלַקּוֹת)

The expression **when they stumble** indicates that these people **will be helped** at the same time as when they are suffering in this way. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could describe the time relationship more explicitly. Alternate translation: [And during the time when they are stumbling, they will be helped with a little help. And many will join themselves with them by intrigues]

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **they will be helped {with} a little help**
UST some people will help them a little bit
(יֵעָזְרוּ עֵזֶר מְעָט)

The expression **will be helped** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [others will give them a little help]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **And many will join themselves with them by intrigues**
UST However, some of them will not help them sincerely
(וְנִלְוָו עֲלֵיהֶם רַבִּים בַּחֲלַקְלַקּוֹת)

The angel is using **will join themselves with them by intrigues** as a common expression of the culture to mean “will pretend to support them without being sincere.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And many will pretend to support them without being sincere]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And when they stumble	

ULT	UST
	While the Jews who are loyal to Yahweh are suffering in this way

Daniel 11:35

ULT	UST
And some of the ones making wise will stumble to refine and to purify and to whiten them until the time of the end. For {it is} still for the appointed time.	*Some of those wise leaders will die. But as a result, other Jews will live in a way that honors Yahweh even more. These things must happen at the time when God has determined, so this suffering will continue until God ends it.*

ULT **And some of the ones making wise will stumble**
UST Some of those wise leaders will die
(וּמִן־הַמַּשְׂכִּילִים יִכָּשְׁלוּ)

The angel is referring to the death of these people in a polite way by using the phrase **will stumble**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [And some of the ones teaching others will lose their lives]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **For**
UST so
(כִּי)

The word translated as **For** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [This is because]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **to refine and to purify and to whiten them**
UST But as a result, other Jews will live in a way that honors Yahweh even more
(לִצְרוֹף בָּהֶם וּלְבָרֵר וְלַלְבֵּן)

Here the angel is speaking as if these people were metal or cloth that someone would **refine** and **whiten**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [so that they may become completely faithful and free from any fault]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the ones making wise	those wise leaders
will stumble	will die
and to purify	But as a result … will live in a way that honors Yahweh even more

ULT	UST
the time of	God … ends it
for the appointed time	at the time when … has determined … God

Daniel 11:36

ULT	UST
And the king will act according to his desire. And he will exalt himself and magnify himself above every god. And he will speak astonishing {things} against the God of gods. And he will prosper until the indignation finishes. For what is decreed will be done.	*This northern king will do whatever he wants to do. He will boast and say that he is greater than any god. He will even say bad things about {Yahweh,} the one true God. He will succeed until God has finished punishing his people for their sins. That is because God will do what he has announced.*

ULT **And the king will act according to his desire**
UST This northern king will do whatever he wants to do
(וְעָשָׂה כִרְצוֹנוֹ הַמֶּלֶךְ)

The implication is that **the king** here is the king of the north, whom the angel has been describing. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And the king of the north will act according to his desire]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **And he will exalt himself and magnify himself**
UST He will boast and say that he is greater
(וְיִתְרוֹמֵם וְיִתְגַּדֵּל)

The terms **exalt himself** and **magnify himself** mean similar things. The angel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [And he will greatly glorify himself]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **he will speak astonishing {things}**
UST He will … say bad things
(יְדַבֵּר נִפְלָאוֹת)

The implication is that this king will say things about the true God that insult him. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [he will speak shocking, insulting things]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the God of gods**
UST {Yahweh,} the one true God
(אֶל אֱלֹהִים)

The angel is using this possessive form to mean the God who is supreme over everything that people call a god. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the God who is supreme over all gods]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **until the indignation finishes**
UST until God has finished punishing his people for their sins
(עַד־כָּלָה זַּעַם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **the indignation**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [until God finishes being angry]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **For what is decreed will be done**
UST That is because God will do what he has announced
(כִּי נֶחֱרָצָה נֶעֱשָׂתָה)

The expressions **is decreed** and **will be done** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [For God will surely do what he has decreed]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the king	This northern king
And he will exalt himself	He will boast
god	god
the God of	{Yahweh,} the one true God
gods	{Yahweh,} the one true God
And he will prosper	He will succeed
what is decreed	what he has announced

Daniel 11:37

ULT	UST
And to the gods of his fathers and to the desire of women, he will not attend. And he will not attend to any god, for he will magnify himself above all.	*This northern king will no longer worship the gods that his ancestors worshiped. He will also not worship the god that many women adore. Because he will think that he is greater than any god, he will not worship those gods.*

ULT **And to the gods of his fathers and to the desire of women, he will not attend**
UST This northern king will no longer worship the gods that his ancestors worshiped. He will also not worship the god that many women adore
(וְעַל־אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹתָיו לֹא יָבִין וְעַל־חֶמְדַּת נָשִׁים)

If it would be more natural in your language, you could put the phrase **he will not attend** before the phrases that tell what he will not attend to. Alternate translation: [And he will not attend to the gods of his fathers or to the desire of women]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **And to the gods of his fathers and to the desire of women, he will not attend**
UST This northern king will no longer worship the gods that his ancestors worshiped. He will also not worship the god that many women adore
(וְעַל־אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹתָיו לֹא יָבִין וְעַל־חֶמְדַּת נָשִׁים)

The angel is using **he will not attend** as a common expression of the culture to mean “he will show no regard.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will have no respect for the gods of his fathers or for the gods desired by women]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the desire of women**
UST the god that many women adore
(חֶמְדַּת נָשִׁים)

Here, **the desire of women** does not mean “the desire for women” but “that which women desire,” some specific deity that women particularly worshiped. Alternate translation: [the gods which women desired to worship]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the gods of	the gods that … worshiped
god	gods

ULT	UST
he will magnify himself	he will think that he is greater

Daniel 11:38

ULT	UST
But in its place he will honor a god of fortresses. Indeed, a god whom his fathers did not know, he will honor with gold and with silver, with precious stone and with desirable things.	*Instead, he will honor a god that he thinks will help him win wars. His ancestors did not worship that god, but he honors it with gifts of gold, silver, jewels and other expensive items.*

ULT **in its place**
UST Instead
(עַל־כַּנָּו)

The pronoun **its** refers to "any god" in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Since this applies to "the gods of his fathers" and "the desire of women" in the previous verse, it may be natural in your language to use a plural pronoun. Alternate translation: [instead of worshiping any other god] or [instead of worshiping those gods]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **But … a god of fortresses**
UST a god that he thinks will help him win wars
(וְאֱלֹהַ֣ מָעֻזִּ֔ים)

The angel is using this possessive form to mean **a god** who gives strength in war. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a god who gives strength in war]

Support Reference: Possession

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
he will honor	he will honor
But … a god of	a god
But … a god of	a god
fortresses	that he thinks will help him win wars
Indeed, a god	god
did … know	did … worship
with gold	with gifts of gold
and with silver	silver
with … stone	jewels

Daniel 11:39

ULT	UST
And he will act against the fortifications of fortresses with a foreign god. {To those} who acknowledge {him}, he will increase glory, and he will make them rule over many, and he will divide the land for a price.	*He will ask that foreign god to help him conquer strong fortresses. He will greatly honor those who obey him as their king. He will make them rule over many people, and to reward them, he will give them property.*

ULT **against the fortifications of fortresses**
UST strong fortresses
(לְמִבְצְרֵי מָעֻזִּים)

The angel is using this possessive form to mean the strongest **fortresses** of all. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [against the strongest fortifications]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **he will increase glory**
UST He will greatly honor
(יַרְבֶּה כָּבוֹד)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [he will honor them more and more]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **for a price**
UST and to reward them
(בְּמָחִיר)

This could mean: (1) as a reward. Alternate translation: [in exchange for favor] (2) in exchange for tribute. Alternate translation: [according to taxation]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
against the fortifications of	strong
foreign	foreign
a … god	that … god
acknowledge {him}	obey him as their king
glory	He will … honor
and he will make them rule	He will make them rule
and … the land	property

Daniel 11:40

ULT	UST
And at the time of the end, the king of the south will gore together with him. But the king of the north will storm himself against him with chariotry and with horsemen, and with many ships. And he will come into lands, and he will overflow and pass through.	*When all of these events I am describing are about to end, the southern king will attack the northern king. The northern king will fight back against him furiously. His soldiers will be driving chariots and riding horses and traveling in a fleet of ships. His army will invade many countries. It will spread all over those countries like a flood.*

ULT **the king of the south will gore together with him**
UST the southern king will attack the northern king
(יִתְנַגַּח עִמּוֹ מֶלֶךְ הַנֶּגֶב)

Here the angel is speaking as if the king of the south were an animal that would **gore** his enemy with its horns. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the king of the south will violently attack him]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **will gore together with him**
UST will attack the northern king
(יִתְנַגַּח עִמּוֹ)

The pronoun **him** refers to the king of the north, whom the angel names in the next sentence. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [will gore together with the king of the north]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **But the king of the north will storm himself against him**
UST The northern king will fight back against him furiously
(וְיִשְׁתָּעֵר עָלָיו מֶלֶךְ הַצָּפוֹן)

Here the angel is speaking as if the king of the north were a **storm** that would sweep over his enemy. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [But the king of the north will attack him violently]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And at the time of	When all of these events I am describing are about to

ULT	UST
the king of	the … king
into lands	many countries

Daniel 11:41

ULT	UST
And he will come into the land of beauty, and many will stumble. But these will escape from his hand: Edom and Moab and the first of the sons of Ammon.	*The northern king will invade the beautiful land of Israel. His soldiers will kill many people. But the Edomites, Moabites, and most of the Ammonites will survive his attack.*

ULT **and the first of the sons of Ammon**
UST and most of the Ammonites
(וְרֵאשִׁית בְּנֵי עַמּוֹן)

The implication of **the first** is either (1) that the greater part of the people of Ammon will escape or (2) that the leaders of the people of Ammon will escape. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and most of the people of Ammon]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
into the land of	the … land of Israel
will stumble	His soldiers will kill
will escape	will survive
Edom	the Edomites
and Moab	Moabites
Ammon	the Ammonites

Daniel 11:42

ULT	UST
And he will stretch out his hand against the lands, and the land of Egypt will not be an escape.	*The northern king will invade many countries. He will even defeat the kingdom of Egypt.*

ULT **And he will stretch out his hand against the lands**
UST The northern king will invade many countries
(וְיִשְׁלַח יָדוֹ בַּאֲרָצוֹת)

The angel is using **he will stretch out his hand against** as a common expression of the culture to mean "he will attack." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will attack the lands]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **and the land of Egypt will not be an escape**
UST He will even defeat the kingdom of Egypt
(וְאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם לֹא תִהְיֶה לִפְלֵיטָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **an escape**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [and the land of Egypt will not escape]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
against the lands	many countries
and the land of	the kingdom of
Egypt	Egypt

Daniel 11:43

ULT	UST
And he will rule over the treasures of gold and silver and over all of the delights of Egypt. And the Libyans and the Cushites will be in his steps.	*The northern king will become the owner of gold and silver treasures and other valuable items that belonged to the Egyptians. The Libyans and Cushites will obey him as their king.*

ULT **And the Libyans and the Cushites will be in his steps**
UST The Libyans and Cushites will obey him as their king
(וְלֻבִּים וְכֻשִּׁים בְּמִצְעָדָיו)

Here the angel is speaking as if these peoples would follow in the **steps** of this king, meaning that they will submit to his rule. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And the Libyans and the Cushites will submit to him]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **And the Libyans**
UST The Libyans
(וְלֻבִּים)

The words **Libyans** and **Cushites** are the names of people groups.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
gold	gold
and silver	silver … and
the delights of	valuable items
Egypt	that belonged to the Egyptians

Daniel 11:44

ULT	UST
But reports from the east and from the north will terrify him, and he will go out in great heat to destroy and to devote many.	*But he will become very frightened when he hears reports about what is happening in the east and in the north. He will become very angry, and he will lead his army to defeat his enemies and destroy them completely.*

ULT **But reports from the east and from the north will terrify him**
UST But he will become very frightened when he hears reports about what is happening in the east and in the north
(וּשְׁמֻעוֹת יְבַהֲלֻהוּ מִמִּזְרָח וּמִצָּפוֹן)

The implication is that these **reports** will tell of threats to his rule that come from those directions. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [But reports of threats arising in the east and in the north will terrify him]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **and he will go out in great heat**
UST He will become very angry, and he will lead his army
(וְיָצָא בְּחֵמָא גְדֹלָה)

Here the angel is speaking as if the rage of this king were **great heat**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he will go out in a great rage]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to destroy and to devote many**
UST to defeat his enemies and destroy them completely
(לְהַשְׁמִיד וּלְהַחֲרִים רַבִּים)

The terms **to destroy** and **to devote** mean similar things. The angel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [to completely wipe out many]

Support Reference: Doublet

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
But reports	when he hears reports about what is happening
will terrify him	But he will become very frightened
in … heat	He will become … angry

ULT	UST
to destroy	to defeat

Daniel 11:45

ULT	UST
And he will plant the tents of his palace between the seas, to the mountain of the beauty of holiness. But he will come to his end, and no one will be helping him.	*The northern king will set up his royal tents in the area between the sea and the mountain {in Jerusalem} where Yahweh's holy temple is. But that is where he will die. No one will be able to help him {so that he does not die}.*

ULT **And he will plant the tents of his palace**
UST The northern king will set up his royal tents
(וְיִטַּע אָהֳלֵי אַפַּדְנּוֹ)

Here the angel is speaking as if this king would **plant** his tents the way a person plants a tree. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [And he will securely establish his royal tents]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the tents of his palace**
UST his royal tents
(אָהֳלֵי אַפַּדְנּוֹ)

The angel is using the possessive form to describe **tents** that are characterized by belonging to his **palace**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the tents of his royal court]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **But he will come to his end**
UST But that is where he will die
(וּבָא עַד־קִצּוֹ)

The angel is referring to the death of this king in a polite way by using the phrase **he will come to his end**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [But he will pass away]

Support Reference: Euphemism

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And he will plant	The northern king will set up
the tents of	his … tents
his palace	royal
the seas	the sea

ULT	UST
holiness	holy

Daniel 12

Daniel 12 Introduction

Structure and Formatting

This chapter concludes the last section in the book, in which Daniel has a vision and man-like figure appears to him and interprets it.

1. The man finishes his interpretation of Daniel's vision (1–4)
2. The man answers the question of when these things will happen (5–12)

Translation issues in this chapter

How should translators represent the time periods in this chapter?

When two other figures ask the man who has been speaking with Daniel, "Until when will be the end of the wonders?" (12:6), he replies that it will be "for an appointed time, appointed times, and a half" (12:7). Some interpreters understand the term "time" to mean a "year" and the term "times" to mean "two times" (thus "two years"), and so some translations represent this expression as "three and a half years." However, it is not certain that these are the meanings, and so we recommend that translators represent this expression in a way that allows for the range of possible interpretations. The UST models one way to do this. It translates this expression as "a time, times, and half a time." We similarly recommend that translators represent the expressions "1,290 days" (12:11) and "1,335 days" (12:12) straightforwardly, without suggesting further interpretations of them.

Daniel 12:1

ULT	UST
And at that time, Michael, the great prince standing over the sons of your people, will stand. And a time of distress will be that has not been from the being of a nation until that time. But at that time, your people will be rescued, every one found written in the book.	*When those things happen, the great angel Michael, who protects the Israelites, will help them. The Israelites will have more trouble than they have had since they became a nation until now. But at that time, God will rescue every one of his people whose name he has written in his book.*

ULT **And at that time**
UST When those things happen
(וּבָעֵת הַהִיא)

The words that the ULT translates as **And at that time** indicate that the events of this verse happen at the same time as the events that the angel described in the previous chapter. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could describe the time relationship more explicitly. Alternate translation: [And while those things are happening]

Support Reference: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

ULT **the great prince**
UST the great angel
(הַשַּׂר הַגָּדוֹל)

The implication is that **the great prince** Michael is an angelic ruler over the people of Israel, not a human king. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the great angelic ruler]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **standing over**
UST who protects
(הָעֹמֵד עַל)

The angel is speaking as if Michael were guarding the people of Israel by physically **standing over** them. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [who guards]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the sons of your people**
UST the Israelites
(בְּנֵי עַמְּךָ)

The angel is speaking as if the members of Daniel's nation were **the sons** of that nation. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [the members of your people's nation]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **will stand**
UST will help them
(יַעֲמֹד)

The angel is using **will stand** as a common expression of the culture to mean "will arise to take action." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [will take action]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **a time of distress**
UST trouble
(עֵת צָרָה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **distress**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [a distressing time]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **your people will be rescued**
UST God will rescue … his people
(יִמָּלֵט עַמְּךָ)

The expression **will be rescued** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God will rescue your people]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **every one found written in the book**
UST every one of … whose name he has written in his book
(כָּל־הַנִּמְצָא כָּתוּב בַּסֵּפֶר)

The expressions **found** and **written** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [every one that God finds, whose name he has written in the book]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **every one found written in the book**
UST every one of … whose name he has written in his book
(כָּל־הַנִּמְצָא כָּתוּב בַּסֵּפֶר)

The implication is that **the book** is a heavenly register in which God has recorded the people who belong to him. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [every one whose name God has written in his heavenly book]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And at … time	When those things happen
Michael	Michael
the … prince	the great
a time of	trouble
distress	trouble
a nation	a nation
time	now
But at … time	But at … time
will be rescued	God will rescue

Daniel 12:2

ULT	UST
And many of the sleepers of the ground of the dust will awaken, these to life of eternity and these to reproaches, to contempt of eternity.	*Many people who have died and who are in graves in the ground will become alive again. Some of them will live eternally with God, but God will condemn others forever.*

ULT **the sleepers of the ground of the dust will awaken**
UST who have died and who are in graves in the ground will become alive again
(מִיְּשֵׁנֵי אַדְמַת־עָפָר יָקִיצוּ)

The angel is referring to dying and to coming back to life in a polite way by using the phrase **the sleepers of the ground of the dust will awaken**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [those who are dead and buried in the ground will come back to life]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **to reproaches, to contempt of eternity**
UST but God will condemn … forever
(לַחֲרָפוֹת לְדִרְאוֹן עוֹלָם)

The terms **reproaches** and **contempt** mean similar things. The angel is using the two terms together for emphasis. If it would be clearer for your readers, you could express the emphasis with a single phrase. Alternate translation: [to everlasting disgrace]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **to contempt of eternity**
UST but God will condemn … forever
(לְדִרְאוֹן עוֹלָם)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **contempt**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [so that people will despise them forever]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
eternity	eternally
to reproaches	but God will condemn
to contempt of	but God will condemn

ULT	UST
eternity	forever

Daniel 12:3

ULT	UST
And the ones making wise will shine like the brightness of the firmament, and the ones making many righteous, like stars forever and ever.	*Those who have done what is wise will shine as brightly as the sky. And those who have helped others to live right will shine like stars forever.*

ULT **And the ones making wise**
UST Those who have done what is wise
(וְהַמַּשְׂכִּלִים)

The implication is that **the ones making wise** refers to either (1) those who are wise themselves or (2) those who make others wise. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And those who are wise]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **will shine like the brightness of the firmament**
UST will shine as brightly as the sky
(יַזְהִרוּ כְּזֹהַר הָרָקִיעַ)

The point of this comparison is that just as **the brightness of the firmament** is radiant and glorious, so are **the ones making wise**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make this point explicitly. Alternate translation: [will be as radiant and glorious as the shining sky]

Support Reference: Simile

ULT **like the brightness of the firmament**
UST as brightly as the sky
(כְּזֹהַר הָרָקִיעַ)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **brightness**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [like the bright sky above]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and the ones making many righteous, like stars forever and ever**
UST And those who have helped others to live right will shine like stars forever
(וּמַצְדִּיקֵי֙ הָרַבִּ֔ים כַּכּוֹכָבִ֖ים לְעוֹלָ֥ם וָעֶֽד)

The angel is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You can supply these words from the context if that would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: [and the ones making many righteous will shine like stars forever and ever]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **and the ones making many righteous**
UST And those who have helped others to live right
(וּמַצְדִּיקֵי֙ הָרַבִּ֔ים)

The implication is that **the ones making many righteous** are people who lead many others to live rightly before God. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [and those who turn many people to righteousness]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And the ones making wise	Those who have done what is wise
and the ones making … righteous	And those who have helped … to live right
forever	forever

Daniel 12:4

ULT	UST
But you, Daniel, close up the words, and seal the book until the time of the end. Many will go about, that knowledge may increase.”	*But as for you, Daniel, do not tell anyone what I have told you. You may write this down, but seal the scroll so that no one opens it and reads it until it is time for these things to start happening. People will go to different places trying to find out what is going to happen.”*

ULT **close up the words, and seal the book**
UST do not tell anyone what I have told you. You may write this down, but seal the scroll so that no one opens it and reads it
(סְתֹם הַדְּבָרִים וַחֲתֹם הַסֵּפֶר)

The implication is that to **close up the words, and seal the book** means to keep its contents secret and unaltered until the proper time. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [keep these words secret and preserve this scroll unchanged]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **Many will go about, that knowledge may increase**
UST People will go to different places trying to find out what is going to happen
(יְשֹׁטְטוּ רַבִּים וְתִרְבֶּה הַדָּעַת)

Here, **that** marks **knowledge may increase** as the goal or purpose of **Many will go about**. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that this is the purpose. Alternate translation: [Many will travel about while trying to increase knowledge]

Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **Many will go about**
UST People will go to different places
(יְשֹׁטְטוּ רַבִּים)

The angel is using **Many will go about** as a common expression of the culture to mean either (1) “many people will travel here and there” or (2) “many people will search through the book.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Many will travel here and there]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **that knowledge may increase**
UST trying to find out what is going to happen
(וְתִרְבֶּה הַדָּעַת)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **knowledge**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [that people may know more and more]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
and seal	You may write this down, but seal … so that no one opens it and reads it
the time of	it is time
knowledge	what is going to happen

Daniel 12:5

ULT	UST
And I looked, I, Daniel, and behold, two others were standing, one here on the lip of the river and one there on the lip of the river.	*{When that angel finished speaking,} I, Daniel, looked up, and I saw two other angels. One angel was standing on my side of the river, and the other angel was standing on the opposite side.*

ULT **two others were standing**
UST two other angels … was standing … was standing
(שְׁנַ֣יִם אֲחֵרִ֔ים עֹמְדִ֖ים)

Daniel is introducing **two others** as new participants in the story. Your language may have its own way of introducing new participants that you can use in your translation. Alternate translation: [there were two other beings standing]

Support Reference: Introduction of New and Old Participants

ULT **two others**
UST two other angels
(שְׁנַ֣יִם אֲחֵרִ֔ים)

The implication is that **two others** are two more angelic beings, in addition to the man clothed in linens whom Daniel had already seen. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [two other angelic beings]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **one here on the lip of the river**
UST One angel … on my side of the river
(אֶחָ֤ד הֵנָּה֙ לִשְׂפַ֣ת הַיְאֹ֔ר)

Daniel is speaking as if the edge of the river were a **lip**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [one here on the bank of the river]

Support Reference: Metaphor

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel

Daniel 12:6

ULT	UST
And one said to the man clothed {in} linens, who {was} from above to the waters of the river, "Until when {will be} the end of the wonders?"	*One of them called to the angel who had been speaking to me, who was wearing linen clothes. He was above the river. That other angel asked him, "How long will it be until these amazing events end?"*

ULT **to the man clothed {in} linens**
UST to the angel who had been speaking to me, who was wearing linen clothes
(לָאִישׁ לְבֻושׁ הַבַּדִּים)

The implication is that **the man clothed {in} linens** is the angelic being who had been speaking to Daniel, identified here by his garment. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [to the angel who had been speaking to me, the man clothed in linens]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **who {was} from above to the waters of the river**
UST He was above the river
(אֲשֶׁר מִמַּעַל לְמֵימֵי הַיְאֹר)

The implication is that the phrase **from above to the waters of the river** means that the man was positioned in the air over the river. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [who was hovering in the air over the waters of the river]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **{will be} the end of the wonders**
UST until these amazing events end
(קֵץ הַפְּלָאוֹת)

The implication is that **the wonders** are the astonishing events that the angel described in this vision. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [will be the end of the astonishing events described in this vision]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the wonders	these amazing events

Daniel 12:7

ULT	UST
And I heard the man clothed {in} linens who {was} from above to the waters of the river. And he raised his right hand and his left hand toward the heavens, and he swore by the one living {for} eternity that {it would be} for an appointed time, appointed times, and a half. And according to the finishing of the shattering of the hand of the people of holiness, all of these would finish.	*The angel wearing linen clothes who was above the river raised both of his hands toward the sky. I heard him solemnly swear by God, who lives forever, that it would be for a time, times, and half a time. For a while, God's holy people will lose their power. But when that time is over, these other events will also end.*

ULT **And he raised his right hand and his left hand toward the heavens**
UST raised both of his hands toward the sky
(וַיָּרֶם יְמִינוֹ וּשְׂמֹאלוֹ אֶל־הַשָּׁמָיִם)

Raising both hands toward heaven was a symbolic action by which the man clothed in linens showed that he was calling on God as the witness to the oath he was about to swear. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text of your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: [And he raised his right hand and his left hand toward the heavens to call on God as his witness]

Support Reference: Symbolic Action

ULT **and he swore by the one living {for} eternity**
UST him solemnly swear by God, who lives forever
(וַיִּשָּׁבַע בְּחֵי הָעוֹלָם)

Following the custom of the culture, the man clothed in linens is swearing an oath and guaranteeing it by someone whom he holds sacred, **the one living {for} eternity**. Alternate translation: [and he made a solemn promise, calling on the one who lives for eternity as his witness]

Support Reference: Oath Formulas

ULT **by the one living {for} eternity**
UST by God, who lives forever
(בְּחֵי הָעוֹלָם)

The implication is that **the one living {for} eternity** is a title for God. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [by God, the one who lives eternally]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for an appointed time, appointed times, and a half**
UST it would be for a time, times, and half a time
(לְמוֹעֵד מוֹעֲדִים וָחֵצִי)

The man clothed in linens is using **an appointed time, appointed times, and a half** as a common expression of the culture to mean "a limited period whose length God has determined." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [for a limited period of time that God has determined]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **And according to the finishing of the shattering of**
UST For a while … will lose … But when that time is over
(וּכְכַלּוֹת נַפֵּץ)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **the finishing** and **the shattering**, you could express the same ideas in another way. Alternate translation: [And when they finish shattering]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the hand of the people of holiness**
UST God's holy people … their power
(יַד־עַם־קֹדֶשׁ)

Here, **the hand** represents "power." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [the power of the people of holiness]

Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the people of holiness**
UST God's holy people
(עַם־קֹדֶשׁ)

The man clothed in linens is using the possessive form to describe a **people** that is characterized by **holiness**. If a speaker of your language would not use the possessive form for this, you could express this idea in another way. Alternate translation: [the holy people]

Support Reference: Possession

ULT **all of these would finish**
UST these other events will also end
(תִּכְלֶינָה כָל־אֵלֶּה)

The pronoun **these** refers to the wonders that the other angel asked about in the previous verse. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [all of these wonders would finish]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
the heavens	the sky
and he swore	him solemnly swear
eternity	forever
for an appointed time	it would be for a time
holiness	God's holy

Daniel 12:8

ULT	UST
And I, I heard, but I did not understand. So I said, "My lord, what {will be} the end of these?"	*I heard what he said, but I did not understand it. So I asked, "Sir, what will be the result of all these events?"*

ULT And I, I heard
UST I heard what he said
(וַאֲנִי שָׁמַעְתִּי)

Daniel expresses the pronoun **I** twice here, where it would ordinarily be expressed only once. This suggests that he is emphasizing his own part in what happened. It may be helpful to clarify this for your readers. Alternate translation: [And as for me, I myself heard]

Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT My lord
UST Sir
(אֲדֹנִי)

Daniel is referring to the man clothed in linens by a respectful title. Use a comparable title or expression for addressing someone respectfully in your language. Alternate translation: [Honored sir]

Support Reference: Politeness

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
I did … understand	I did … understand it
My lord	Sir

Daniel 12:9

ULT	UST
And he said, "Go, Daniel, for the words are closed up and sealed until the time of the end.	*He replied, "Daniel, no one will be able to understand what this message means until the time of these events. So just continue to live your life now.*

ULT **for**
UST So
(כִּי)

The word translated as **for** indicates that what follows is a reason for what came before. Use a connector in your language that makes it clear that what follows is a reason for what came before. Alternate translation: [because]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **Go, Daniel**
UST Daniel … just continue to live your life now
(לֵךְ דָּנִיֵּאל)

The man clothed in linens is using **Go, Daniel** as a common expression of the culture to mean "go on your way and live out the rest of your life." If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Continue living your life, Daniel]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **the words are closed up and sealed**
UST no one will be able to understand what this message means
(סְתֻמִים וַחֲתֻמִים הַדְּבָרִים)

The expressions **closed up** and **sealed** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God has closed up and sealed the words]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Daniel	Daniel
and sealed	no one will be able to understand
the time of	the time of

Daniel 12:10

ULT	UST
Many will be purified and whitened and refined, but the wicked will act wickedly. And not any of the wicked will understand, but the ones making wise will understand.	*Many people will make sure that they live in a way that honors Yahweh greatly. But wicked people will continue to do wicked things. None of them will understand what is happening, but wise people will understand.*

ULT **Many will be purified and whitened and refined**
UST Many people will make sure that they live in a way that honors Yahweh greatly
(יִתְבָּרְרוּ וְיִתְלַבְּנוּ וְיִצָּרְפוּ רַבִּים)

The expressions **purified**, **whitened**, and **refined** are passive verbal forms. If it would be unnatural to use those forms, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [God will purify and whiten and refine many]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **Many will be purified and whitened and refined**
UST Many people will make sure that they live in a way that honors Yahweh greatly
(יִתְבָּרְרוּ וְיִתְלַבְּנוּ וְיִצָּרְפוּ רַבִּים)

The man clothed in linens is speaking as if these people were cloth that could be **purified and whitened** and metal that could be **refined**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [Many will be made morally clean and pure and proven genuine]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **but the wicked will act wickedly**
UST But wicked people will continue to do wicked things
(וְהִרְשִׁיעוּ רְשָׁעִים)

The man clothed in linens is using the adjective **wicked** as a noun to mean a certain kind of person. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this adjective with an equivalent phrase. Alternate translation: [but people who are wicked will act wickedly]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

ULT **And not any of the wicked will understand, but the ones making wise will understand**

UST None of them will understand what is happening, but wise people will understand
(וְלֹא יָבִינוּ כָּל־רְשָׁעִים וְהַמַּשְׂכִּלִים יָבִינוּ)

The implication is that what the wicked will not **understand**, and what **the ones making wise will understand**, is the meaning of this message about the last days. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [And none of the wicked will understand the meaning of this message about the last days, but the people who are wise will understand it]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
will be purified	will make sure that they live in a way that honors Yahweh greatly
the wicked	wicked people
but … will act wickedly	But … will continue to do wicked things
will understand	will understand what is happening
but the ones making wise	but wise people

Daniel 12:11

ULT	UST
And from the time of {when} the perpetual sacrifice is removed and the setting up of the abomination making desolate {will be} 1,290 days.	*There will be 1,290 days after the northern king prevents the priests from offering the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening and puts something disgusting in the temple that makes it unclear.*

ULT **And from the time of {when} the perpetual sacrifice is removed and the setting up of the abomination making desolate {will be} 1,290 days**
UST There will be 1,290 days after the northern king prevents the priests from offering the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening and puts something disgusting in the temple that makes it unclean
(וּמֵעֵת הוּסַר הַתָּמִיד וְלָתֵת שִׁקּוּץ שֹׁמֵם יָמִים אֶלֶף מָאתַיִם וְתִשְׁעִים)

If it would be more natural in your language, you may want to put the information about the **1,290 days** before the information about the time **when the perpetual sacrifice is removed and the setting up of the abomination making desolate**. Alternate translation: [And there will be 1,290 days from the time of when the perpetual sacrifice is removed and the setting up of the abomination making desolate]

Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **{when} the perpetual sacrifice is removed**
UST the northern king prevents the priests from offering the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening
(הוּסַר הַתָּמִיד)

The expression **is removed** is a passive verbal form. If it would be unnatural to use that form, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: [when they remove the perpetual sacrifice]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the perpetual sacrifice**
UST the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening
(הַתָּמִיד)

The implication is that **the perpetual sacrifice** is the offering that the priests presented in the temple every morning and every evening. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the daily temple sacrifice]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **the abomination making desolate**
> UST something disgusting … that makes it unclean
> (שִׁקּוּץ שֹׁמֵם)

The implication is that **the abomination making desolate** is an idolatrous object that would defile the temple and cause people to abandon it. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [the detestable idol that defiles the temple and causes it to be abandoned]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
And from the time of	after
the perpetual sacrifice	the regular sacrifices to Yahweh each morning and evening
the abomination	something disgusting
making desolate	that makes it unclean

Daniel 12:12

ULT	UST
The happinesses of the one waiting and he reaches to the 1,335 days.	*God will greatly bless those who remain loyal to him until 1,335 days are over.*

ULT **The happinesses of the one waiting**
UST God will greatly bless those who remain loyal to him
(אַשְׁרֵי הַמְחַכֶּה)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **happinesses**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: [How happy is the one waiting]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and he reaches to the 1,335 days**
UST until 1,335 days are over
(וַיַּגִּיעַ לְיָמִים אֶלֶף שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת שְׁלֹשִׁים וַחֲמִשָּׁה)

The man clothed in linens is using **reaches to** as a common expression of the culture to mean “survives until.” If this phrase does not have that meaning for your readers, you could use a comparable expression from your language that does have that meaning, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and he survives until the 1,335 days]

Support Reference: Idiom

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
to the … days	days

Daniel 12:13

ULT	UST
But you, go until the end, for you will rest, and you will stand for your lot at the end of days.”	*But as for you, Daniel, you will die before these things happen. But when the world ends, you will live again, and God will reward you. So for now, just continue to live the rest of your life.”*

ULT **go until the end**
UST So for now, just continue to live the rest of your life
(לֵךְ לְקֵץ)

The implication is that **the end** refers to either (1) the end of Daniel’s own life or (2) the end of the age. You could include this information if that would be helpful to your readers. Alternate translation: [go until the end of your life]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for you will rest**
UST you will die before these things happen
(וְתָנוּחַ)

The man clothed in linens is referring to Daniel’s death in a polite way by using the phrase **you will rest**. Depending on what is helpful for your readers, you could use a polite way of referring to this in your language, or you could state this plainly. Alternate translation: [for you will pass away]

Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **and you will stand**
UST you will live again
(וְתַעֲמֹד)

The man clothed in linens is speaking as if Daniel’s return to life were his getting up to **stand**. Your language may have a comparable expression that you can use in your translation, or you could state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [and you will rise to life again]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **for your lot**
> UST and God will reward you
> (לְגֹרָלְךָ)

Here, **your lot** represents “the portion that God has assigned to you.” If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: [for the portion God has assigned to you]

Support Reference: Metonymy

UNFOLDINGWORD® TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
days	the world

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy - Daniel

v91

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its **weight**?” could be expressed as “How much does it **weigh**?” or “How **heavy** is it?”

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> … from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
> > Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.
>
> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)
>
> > But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.
>
> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)
>
> > Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …
>
> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> > The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.
>
> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)
>
> > He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Daniel References:

1:3; 1:4; 1:9; 1:13; 1:20; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:6; 2:7; 2:9; 2:14; 2:16; 2:18; 2:18; 2:20; 2:21; 2:25; 2:25; 2:29; 2:29; 2:31; 2:36; 2:37; 2:41; 3:2; 3:25; 4:3; 4:6; 4:9; 4:9; 4:10; 4:22; 4:27; 4:37; 5:7; 5:8; 5:11; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:29; 6:4; 7:6; 7:12; 7:14; 7:16; 7:18; 7:20; 7:27; 8:4; 8:13; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 9:2; 9:4; 9:5; 9:7; 9:9; 9:16; 9:18; 9:22; 9:23; 9:24; 11:2; 11:3; 11:5; 11:8; 11:16; 11:18; 11:20; 11:21; 11:23; 11:27; 11:36; 11:39; 11:42; 12:1; 12:2; 12:3; 12:4; 12:7; 12:12

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king’s servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Daniel References:

1:15; 1:19; 2:1; 2:3; 2:5; 2:5; 2:9; 2:13; 2:13; 2:19; 2:20; 2:30; 2:31; 2:31; 2:34; 2:35; 2:41; 2:44; 2:44; 2:45; 2:45; 3:6; 3:18; 3:19; 3:29; 3:29; 4:6; 4:12; 4:15; 4:16; 4:33; 4:35; 4:36; 5:6; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:20; 5:21; 5:23; 5:24; 5:24; 5:27; 5:27; 5:28; 5:28; 5:30; 6:4; 6:7; 6:10; 6:12; 6:17; 6:22; 6:23; 6:23; 6:26; 6:26; 7:4; 7:4; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:14; 7:14; 7:22; 7:25; 7:27; 8:8; 8:11; 8:12; 8:14; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 9:1; 9:11; 9:11; 9:12; 9:18; 9:24; 9:25; 9:26; 9:26; 9:27; 10:1; 10:1; 10:5; 10:8; 10:11; 10:12; 10:13; 10:17; 10:19; 11:4; 11:4; 11:6; 11:10; 11:11; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:22; 11:22; 11:25; 11:26; 11:26; 11:34; 11:36; 12:1; 12:1; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11

Alternative Readings

Description

In some places in the traditional Hebrew text of the Bible as we have it today, there are words or phrases that some scribes or translators have thought to be incorrect or unacceptable in some way. Their proposals for what the text was originally can be put into three groups.

1. Corrections of the scribes

Sometimes it seems that the earlier scribe made an error while copying the text, and so a later scribe recommended a correction. In other cases, a later scribe wanted to update the spelling, grammar, or vocabulary, or he wanted to replace objectionable words with something more acceptable. In many cases, the later scribes put notes in the margin that tell people who are reading the Scriptures out loud to say something different from what is in the written text. Scribes developed this system both to preserve wording that they thought might be original and to encourage readers to speak a more acceptable or understandable word or phrase.

1. Readings from ancient translations

Sometimes there are words or phrases in the Hebrew text that do not seem to make sense or it seems that there are words missing. In these cases, we can look to ancient translations of the Hebrew that may have been made before the problem entered the Hebrew text, such as the ancient Greek and Syriac translations. It may be that these translations preserve the original reading in these places.

1. Proposals of modern scholars

Some of the words or phrases that do not seem to make sense in the Hebrew text as we have it today are equally problematic in the ancient translations. This may mean that the problem entered the Hebrew text before the ancient translation was made. In some of these cases, scholars have proposed that the scribe mistook one word for a different word that has a very similar spelling. Also, the original Hebrew text contained only the consonants of the words and the vowels were added hundreds of years later. In some cases, it seems that the later scribe divided the consonants incorrectly or added the vowels of the wrong word. In these cases, scholars have proposed that a simple correction would be to group the consonants differently or to change the vowels.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make the best translation possible, translators need to know what is the best source text for their translation. Wherever there may be errors or problems in the source text, they need to know what both ancient scribes and modern scholars consider to be the most likely solution to that problem that best represents what the original text said.

Examples from the Bible

> **when** they spoke to him day after day, he did not listen to them. (Esther 3:4 text)

In the margin of the Hebrew text, a scribe has suggested a different word:

> **as** they spoke to him day after day, he did not listen to them. (Esther 3:4 margin)

In the following examples of the Hebrew text from Ruth, Naomi is speaking to Ruth about visiting Boaz at the threshing floor. In the Hebrew text, Naomi speaks as though she were doing these actions herself. This may be because the child that will be born to Ruth and Boaz will be considered to belong to Naomi (Ruth 4:16-17). But to avoid confusion, a scribe made a note in the margin to read the text as instructions to Ruth:

> **I will go down** to the threshing floor (Ruth 3:3 text)

> **go down** to the threshing floor (Ruth 3:3 margin)

> Then go and uncover his feet **and I will lie down** (Ruth 3:4 text)

> Then go and uncover his feet **and lie down** (Ruth 3:4 margin)

In the following examples, it seems that the Hebrew scribe skipped over the numbers. They can be supplied, however, from some manuscripts of the ancient Greek translation:

> Saul {was} a son of **a year** in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel **two years**. (1 Sam 13:1 ULT)

> Saul {was} a son of **thirty years** in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel **forty-two years**. (ancient Greek translation)

In Psalm 103:5, the word “ornaments” does not seem to make any sense. It seems that the scribe mistook it for a similar word that means “existence.” Modern scholars propose using that other word instead:

> The one satisfying your **ornaments** with good; (Psalm 103:5 ULT)

> The one satisfying your **existence** with good; (proposed alternate reading)

Translation Strategies

• Decide which reading to follow: Discuss as a team whether you will translate the written text or translate the reading that marginal notes or modern scholars suggest. It may be best to decide this on a case-by-case basis. If a translation of the Bible already exists in your region and the readers of your translation will be familiar with it, consider using the readings that it translates.

• Use footnotes for significant differences: If the written text and the marginal or suggested text have different meanings or implications that could affect readers’ understanding of the text, provide a footnote to explain both readings.

• Consider how your translation will sound when read aloud: Even if you decide generally to translate the written text, you may wish to follow the marginal instructions and substitute

different language when the written text uses words that might not be appropriate for public reading. You can put the reading of the written text in a footnote.

• Consult church communities and leaders for difficult cases: For readings that may be controversial or theologically sensitive, discuss options with church communities and leaders as part of the translation-checking process.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(Ruth 3:4) Then go and uncover his feet and lie down^1^

^1^From the marginal reading. The Hebrew says, "…and I will lie down."

(1 Samuel 13:1) Saul {was} a son of thirty years in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel forty-two years.^2^

^2^From the ancient Greek translation. The Hebrew says, "Saul {was} a son of a year in his becoming king, and he reigned over Israel two years."

(Psalm 103:5) The one satisfying your ornaments with good;^3^

^3^The original reading may have been, "The one satisfying your existence with good;"

This page answers the question:

Why does the ULT have some different readings from other Bible translations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

• Textual Variants (How to handle differences between manuscripts)

• Create Accurate Translations (Ensuring the meaning is faithfully communicated)

• Create Church-Approved Translations (Involving church networks in the translation process)

Next we recommend you learn about:

• Create Authoritative Translations

Daniel References:

3:29; 11:6

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes to live in**,
> and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but

> > the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”
>
> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> > At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.
>
> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> > Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> > Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**.”
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> > or:
> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish you**

> **more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Daniel References:

3:5; 4:16; 5:2; 5:10; 5:28; 7:5; 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:16; 7:18; 7:22; 7:25; 7:25; 7:27; 8:1; 8:5; 8:11; 8:11; 8:13; 8:19; 8:24; 8:25; 9:2; 9:16; 9:16; 9:21; 9:21; 9:23; 9:23; 9:24; 9:25; 9:27; 10:13; 10:21; 11:5; 11:14; 11:17; 11:20; 11:22; 11:23; 11:27; 11:28; 11:31; 11:31; 11:31; 11:33; 11:36; 11:36; 11:39; 11:41; 11:44; 12:1; 12:1; 12:3; 12:3; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:6; 12:6; 12:7; 12:10; 12:11; 12:11; 12:13

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village.He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story

- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

> - Setting includes:
> - where the story takes place
> - when the story takes place
> - who is present when the story begins
> - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said …
> (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word “and” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, “as it was assumed” gives background information to the phrase, “He was the son.” People assumed that Joseph was Jesus‘ father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
>
> > “**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

> > “Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Daniel References:

4:4; 5:14; 6:10; 9:1

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."

5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width

> will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

> > “They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; [1] its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; [2] and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] two and a half cubits
> > [2] one cubit and a half

Daniel References:

3:1

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul's second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide ‘God’ as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them.”

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God’s presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

“Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them.”

“Our sister, by God’s power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them.”

Daniel References:

3:28

Collective Nouns

Description

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family, clan,** or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

1. The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.
2. Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns. Examples (from Wikipedia):
    - a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
    - a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.
3. Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.
4. Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

> Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated “your” and “you” are plural, referring to many people. The word “heart” is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, “Israel” is singular, but means “the Israelites” by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go.”

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

> And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go.”

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

> Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

> You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

Daniel References:

5:28; 9:3; 9:7; 11:32

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)
>
> > For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines

> at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)
>
> > The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)
>
> > [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though**

> **Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

Daniel References:

5:22; 7:18

Connect — Exception Clauses

Exceptional Relationship

Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however … not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)
>
> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)
>
> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like "**only**."
(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like "**only**."

> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** 400 young men)

> > David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only** 400 young men escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

> But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

> The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)
>
> > The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will let you go **only if** you bless me.”

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

> God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)
>
> > God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

Daniel References:

6:5

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> “… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may bewise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
(2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.'

> So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

Daniel References:

7:14; 7:26; 12:4

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> “Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

Daniel References:

4:18; 4:27; 5:12; 6:3; 7:11; 11:35; 12:9

Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Sequential Clause

Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word "**after**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word "**before**." However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector "**and**" connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general connector "and" is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)
>
> > Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)
>
> > For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

> For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

Daniel References:

7:4; 11:23

Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Simultaneous Clause

Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as “while,” “as,” and “during.” Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

> But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word "**during**" tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector "**and**" indicates this.

> **While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words "**while**" and "**as**" tell us this.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.
(2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.
(3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

(1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

> **While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

(1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.

(2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.

(3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

Daniel References:

9:20; 11:4; 11:34; 12:1

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- **Background Clause** — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- **Hypothetical Condition** — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- **Factual Condition** — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- **Contrary-to-Fact Condition** — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: **Hypothetical Statements**.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.

- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word "instead" introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word "then" introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry

brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so.”

> Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> > Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “instead” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

> > I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I

> went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

Daniel References:

2:28; 9:15

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

Examples From the Bible

> Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

> צְפַנְיָה — A man’s name in Hebrew letters.
>
> > “Zephaniah” — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

> Zephaniah — This is a man's name.
>
> > "Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

> Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."
>
> > "Sefania"
> >
> > "Sefanaia"
> >
> > "Sefanaya"

Daniel References:

5:25

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, “**Go, show yourself to the priest …**”

> And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look, here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming,**
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, “**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, ‘Look. here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**”
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, ‘**Look, here it is!**’ or, ‘**There it is!**’

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, “**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

> > He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them**.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> And he commanded him **to tell no one,** but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him, “**Tell no one**. But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Daniel References:

6:25

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **“Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> • English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

> Then they approached {and} woke him up,
> **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Daniel References:

2:12; 2:22; 3:13; 4:1; 4:11; 4:37; 5:19; 6:26; 6:27; 6:27; 7:7; 7:14; 7:18; 7:26; 7:27; 9:3; 9:4; 9:4; 9:5; 9:25; 9:27; 11:24; 11:25; 11:36; 11:44; 12:2

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes**
> Sirion **skip** like a young ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> > Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”
>
> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)
>
> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.
>
> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)
>
> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)
>
> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Daniel References:

1:7; 1:12; 2:32; 2:33; 2:48; 3:15; 3:18; 4:10; 4:14; 4:19; 4:22; 5:1; 8:15; 8:16; 8:22; 8:27; 9:8; 9:25; 11:4; 11:6; 11:13; 11:15; 11:17; 11:20; 11:22; 11:24; 12:3

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a conclusion about what the story means or what is important about it
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

> Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a conclusion about what the story means or what is important about it

> Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

> And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

> All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

> "Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him**

> **about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

Daniel References:

7:28

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead." It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> >
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"
>
> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)
>
> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

> > “They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

Daniel References:

11:6; 11:19; 11:33; 11:35; 11:45; 12:2; 12:13

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah.” The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

> **Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Alas” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.
>
> **How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)
>
> > "You **are** such a worthless person!"

> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > “Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

> They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)
>
> > “They were extremely astonished, saying, ‘**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.’”
>
> Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)
>
> > “**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

> > “Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
> > “**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

> How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > “His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

Daniel References:

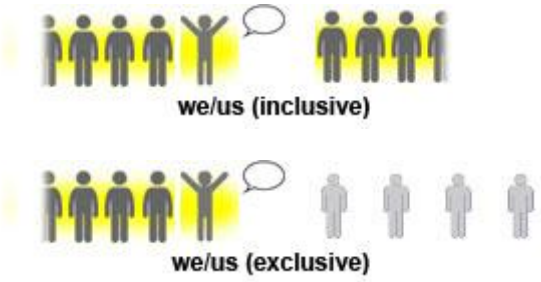
9:4

Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Daniel References:

2:23; 2:36; 9:5

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> “… Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

> But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Daniel References:

1:12; 2:4; 2:7; 4:28; 7:1; 9:4; 9:9; 9:17; 9:17; 10:17

Foreground Information

Description

When people tell a story, make an argument, or make a request, sometimes they need to tell their listeners that something that they have said or are about to say is the most important part of the story or argument or request. That type of information is called **foreground information**. It is the information that is most important for the listeners to understand or act on. People will often use a specific word or phrase to signal that this part is foreground information.

Examples

The bolded phrases in the examples below signal that what follows is foreground information. That is, what follows these phrases is the most important part of a story or argument or the specific request that someone has been leading up to by providing other information.

We've worked hard on this rose garden, fertilizing and watering the soil and pruning the branches. The bushes are beautiful and healthy, and we thought everything was fine. **But listen to this.** I just spotted two Japanese beetles on one of the bushes. We need to spray the bushes right away to kill those beetles and keep any more from coming and destroying the buds and blossoms.

Our community projects went pretty well last year, but I think they could have gone better. I've recognized that you are good at organizing people to work together. **So here is what I was hoping you would do.** Would you take a look at each of our projects and suggest ways that we could carry them out even better?

Reasons This Is A translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of signaling what is foreground information.
- You (the translator) need to be able to recognize which information in the Bible is foreground information so that you can signal it correctly in your language.
- You will need to translate biblical stories, arguments, and requests in a way that enables your own readers to recognize what information in them is foreground information.

Examples From the Bible

Ezra 5:7–17 presents a letter that Persian officials responsible for the area of Judea sent to the Persian emperor Darius. In that letter, those officials report that the Jews were rebuilding Yahweh's temple and that a previous emperor, Cyrus, had given them permission. The Persian officials doubt this, so then they write:

> "**And now,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon, if it is that a decree was set by Cyrus the king to build this house of God in Jerusalem. And let him send to us the will of the king concerning this." (Ezra 5:17 ULT)

Most of this letter provides background information to help Darius understand why the officials are making their request. The expression "And now" signals that what follows is their specific request.

In 1 Corinthians 7:1–24, Paul addresses the Corinthians' belief that it was more spiritual not to be married than to be married. He discusses the advantages and disadvantages of being married and of being single. He uses other situations in life as illustrations. He then says,

> "**Brothers,** each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24 ULT).

Paul uses the expression "Brothers" to signal that what follows is the essential point of this argument: if people are already married, they should remain married, since it is not more spiritual to be single.

In Joshua 7, the Israelites attack the small city of Ai, but they are defeated. Yahweh tells Joshua that this happened because one of the Israelites sinned against him by taking plunder from the city of Jericho, which he had forbidden. Yahweh identifies a man named Achan as the one who sinned. When Joshua confronts him, Achan confesses. He describes how he found a valuable garment and some silver and gold in Jericho and took them. He then says,

> "**And behold,** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21 ULT).

Achan uses the expression "And behold" to signal that what follows is the main point of the story that is his confession: he kept the plunder and hid it, showing that he knew that it was wrong to take it.

Translation Strategies

To keep your translation clear and natural, you will need to study how people tell stories and make arguments and requests in your language. Observe how speakers of your language mark foreground information. You may need to write down some stories, arguments, and requests in order to study this. Observe what kinds of words, phrases, or other markers in your language signal that something is foreground information. Do these same things when you translate so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is foreground information.
(2) Reorder the information as appropriate, so that the foreground information comes at the most natural place for your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is foreground information.

> "**And now,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon," (Ezra 5:17 ULT)

> > "**Accordingly,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon," (Ezra 5:17) Or "**We suggest that,** if it is good to the king, let a search

> be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon," (Ezra 5:17)

> "**Brothers,** each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24 ULT).

> "**So then, brothers**, each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24). Or "**Therefore, my fellow believers,** each one in that which he was called, let him remain with God in this" (1 Corinthians 7:24).

> "**And behold,** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21 ULT).

> "**So look,** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21). Or "**And now you will find that** they are hidden in the earth in the midst of my tent" (Joshua 7:21).

(2) Reorder the information as appropriate, so that the foreground information comes at the most natural place for your language.

> "**And now,** if it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon, if it is that a decree was set by Cyrus the king to build this house of God in Jerusalem. And let him send to us the will of the king concerning this." (Ezra 5:17 ULT).

> > "If it is good to the king, let a search be made in the house of the treasures of the king which is there in Babylon, if it is that a decree was set by Cyrus the king to build this house of God in Jerusalem. And let him send to us the will of the king concerning this. **This is our request.**" (Ezra 5:17 ULT).

In James 4:11–12, James first states his main point, signaled as foreground by the term "brothers," and he then gives reasons for it. (In this instance, the term "brothers" follows the foreground information.)

> "Do not speak against one another, **brothers.** The one speaking against a brother or judging his brother speaks against the law and judges the law. But if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge. There is one lawgiver and judge, the one being able to save and to destroy. But who are you, the one judging your neighbor?" (James 4:11–12 ULT)

In some languages, it may be clearer or more natural for the main point to come after the reasons. It might also be clearer for the expression that signals foreground information to precede that information.

The one speaking against a brother or judging his brother speaks against the law and judges the law. But if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge. There is one

lawgiver and judge, the one being able to save and to destroy. But who are you, the one judging your neighbor? **Brothers,** do not speak against one another. (James 4:11–12, reordered)

Daniel References:

2:31; 3:25; 4:10; 4:13; 5:12; 5:15; 5:16; 8:3; 8:15; 10:5; 10:10; 10:16; 10:20; 11:2

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for “you.” People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT. Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of “you” if your language does make any of these distinctions.

Daniel References:

10:21

Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of ‘You’ — Singular to a Crowd.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, “All these things **I** have kept from my youth.” But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, “One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, **sell** all and **distribute** to the poor, and

> **you** will have treasure in heaven—and **come**, **follow** me." (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said "I." This shows us that when Jesus said "you" he was referring only to the ruler and he used the singular form. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" need the singular form here, as well as for the verbs "sell," distribute," "come," and "follow."

> The angel said to him, "**Dress yourself** and **put on your** sandals." So he did that. He said to him, "**Put on your** outer garment and **follow** me." (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The angel used singular forms here and the context makes it clear that he was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" would need the singular form here for "yourself" and "your." Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs "dress," "put on," and "follow" need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> All the ones {who are} with me greet **you**. **Greet** the ones loving us in faith. Grace {be} with all of **you**. (Titus 3:15 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus, so most of the time the word "you" in this letter is singular and refers only to Titus. In this verse, the first "you" is singular, so the greeting is for Titus, as well as the instruction to greet the others there. The second "you," however, is plural, so the blessing is for Titus and for all of the believers there in Crete.

> "Having gone, **search** carefully for the young child, and after **you** have found him, **report** to me so that I also, having come, might worship him." (Matthew 2:8 ULT)

Since Herod is speaking to all of the learned men, the word "you" and the commands "search" and "report" are plural.

Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Daniel References:

1:10; 4:14; 4:15; 11:2

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
(4) Use the plural form, as in “people.”
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > “Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

> > “People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > “People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Daniel References:

2:10; 2:38; 3:6; 5:7

Hebrew Months

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

> Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

> You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information.)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
(2) Use the names for months that people know.
(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

> At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

> It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,** you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

> > At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this

> purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

> At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

> It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

> It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month,** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

> > It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**[1] you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Daniel References:

10:4

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with “and.” These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> … his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)

"A mouth" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouthand wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouthand wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun “glory” can be changed to the adjective “glorious” to make it clear that Jesus’ appearing is what we hope for. Also, “Jesus Christ” can be moved to the front of the phrase and “great God and Savior” put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Daniel References:

4:13; 8:12; 8:24; 9:18; 10:18; 11:7; 11:13; 11:32

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.

- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’),** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or

when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)
>
> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Daniel References:

1:3; 1:7; 2:14; 2:26; 3:1; 4:8; 5:1; 5:12; 7:1; 8:1; 8:2; 8:21; 10:1; 10:4; 10:5; 10:20; 11:2; 11:30; 11:43

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

> The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Daniel References:

4:11; 6:25; 7:23; 7:27; 10:17

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)

> **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

Daniel References:

1:5; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:15; 1:20; 2:1; 2:4; 2:5; 2:8; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:12; 2:24; 2:25; 2:28; 2:28; 2:37; 2:38; 2:40; 2:41; 2:47; 3:4; 3:7; 3:8; 3:8; 3:9; 3:12; 3:17; 3:19; 3:19; 3:19; 3:22; 3:25; 3:28; 3:29; 3:29; 4:3; 4:5; 4:13; 4:18; 4:19; 4:25; 4:31; 4:35; 5:2; 5:6; 5:6; 5:6; 5:7; 5:10; 5:13; 5:21; 5:22; 5:31; 6:1; 6:4; 6:6; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:13; 6:13; 6:14; 6:21; 6:22; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 7:1; 7:1; 7:3; 7:5; 7:9; 7:12; 7:15; 7:17; 7:20; 7:25; 7:26; 7:28; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:5; 8:6; 8:6; 8:7; 8:17; 8:17; 8:19; 8:23; 8:23; 8:23; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:27; 9:2; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:7; 9:12; 9:14; 9:16; 9:16; 9:18; 9:18; 9:18; 9:18; 9:23; 9:25; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:5; 10:9; 10:11; 10:12; 10:14; 10:14; 10:16; 10:21; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11; 11:11; 11:12; 11:14; 11:14; 11:15; 11:17; 11:17; 11:20; 11:21; 11:25; 11:26; 11:29; 11:30; 11:32; 11:34; 11:37; 11:42; 12:1; 12:4; 12:7; 12:9; 12:12

Imperatives — Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

> Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in." (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command "Be clean" means to "be healed" so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

> "I am willing. **Be clean**." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the

third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like "light must be."

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

> **Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
> **love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

> **Teach** a child the way he should go,
> and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.
> (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Imperatives that function as good results

An imperative sentence can also describe a desirable result. In Proverbs 3:3-4, several imperatives give instructions, then the final imperative describes the good outcome of following those instructions.

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> and **find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man!
> (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

> **Be clean**. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)
>
> > **You are now clean.**
> > **I now cleanse you.**
>
> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)
>
> > God said, "**There is now** light" and there was
> > light.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)
>
> > God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

> Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> **and find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man!
> (Proverbs 3:3-4 ULT)
>
> > Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness leave you;
> > tie them on your neck, write them on the tablet of your heart,
> > **then you will find favor** and good insight in the eyes of God and man!

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light.
> God said, “Light must be;” **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

> Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

> “**If** you teach a child the way he should go,
> **then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

Daniel References:

9:19; 10:12

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, “What did Peter paint yesterday?” The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, “his house.” Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say “His house is what Peter painted (yesterday).”

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.
(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”
>
> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > When all men speak well of you, which is just as people's ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Daniel References:

1:17; 2:42; 4:26; 6:16; 7:12; 7:15; 7:19; 7:24; 8:21; 9:2; 9:11; 9:26; 11:32; 11:37; 12:11

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> **In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> **And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> **The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> **Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

> **Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> **Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> 6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

> There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

> One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him … (Mark 2:14a ULT)

> As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and and said to him …

> As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

> > As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him …

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as "another time," or "someone."

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
>
> > **After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> **Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.
>
> > **Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

> > Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)
>
> > **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

> > **This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

> **Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come**.

Daniel References:

4:29; 7:1; 10:1

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** … **This man** came to Jesus at night … Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **Now there was a man** from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife." This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his," and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she."

> **His wife** was barren and **she** had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to by the noun phrase "the wife."

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the wife** and he said to her … (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See **Verbs**.)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
(2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth … (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
> > There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The

> > apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.
>
> > It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph’s master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.
>
> > Joseph’s master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Daniel References:

1:6; 3:8; 3:12; 3:20; 4:8; 7:16; 8:15; 9:21; 10:5; 10:13; 11:3; 12:5

Irregular Use of Tenses

Description

Normally, languages indicate when an event happens by marking it as past, present, or future (or some subset of those categories) through using different verb tenses. But sometimes speakers use those verb tenses in other ways to draw special attention to what they are saying. This article will discuss three ways that this happens in the Bible.

Past For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the past tense is used to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is a figure of speech that is used in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is sometimes called the "predictive past" or "prophetic perfect."

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the past tense in prophecy to refer to future events may think that these are events that have already happened.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, “Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones.” (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen far in the future, but he used the past tense when he said, “the Lord came.”

Present For Past

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used to refer to events that happened in the past. This is a figure of speech that makes these events more vivid or prominent for the reader. The effect can be to draw the reader into the story because these events are told as though they are happening now. The reader, however, knows that the events happened in the past. This is sometimes called the “historical present.”

> Now the mother-in-law of Simon was lying down, being sick with a fever, and immediately they speak to him concerning her. (Mark 1:30 ULT)

In the example above, Mark had been narrating events that happened in the past, using the past tense. But when he came to the part about the disciples speaking to Jesus about Simon’s mother-in-law, he changed from past tense to present tense.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to past events may think that these events are happening now or that the Bible translation makes no sense.

Examples From the Bible

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him 37 and found him and say to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” 38 And he says to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present is often used to make direct speech stand out from the narrative.

> And he enters into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

As in the above example, the historical present sometimes serves to set the scene for a new set of events. By using the historical present in this way, the writer draws the reader into the scene, and then relates the events using the past tense.

Present For Future

In the Bible, sometimes the present tense is used for a future event. Usually, this is to communicate that the event will happen very soon. Also, like the predictive past, this can communicate that the event is sure to happen or that the speaker is fully committed to making the event happen. This is sometimes called the “imminent future.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night I am going out in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

In the example above, Yahweh uses the present tense for something that he will do soon.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Speakers of languages that do not use the present tense to refer to future events may think that these events are happening at the time of speaking or writing or that the Bible translation is confusing or wrong.

Examples From the Bible

> For behold me, raising up the Chaldeans, that fierce and impetuous nation… (Habakkuk 1:6 ULT)

> Therefore, remember from where you have fallen and repent and do the first works. But if not, I am coming to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place—if you do not repent. (Revelation 2:5 ULT)

In the examples above, God speaks of a future event as though he is doing it in the present. This is a way of emphasizing the certainty of the event.

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the present tense continues the sense of the predictive past, communicating future events that are sure to happen.

Translation Strategies

If the tense that is used in the Literal Translation would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.
(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

> > For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> > Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I will deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> > And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will go out** in the midst of Egypt,

(2) Use the past tense to refer to past events.

> And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **say** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **says** to them, “Let us go elsewhere, (Mark 1:36-38 ULT)

> > And Simon and the ones with him searched for him and found him and **said** to him, “Everyone is seeking you.” And he **said** to them, “Let us go elsewhere,

> And he **enters** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach. (Mark 1:21 ULT)

> > And he **entered** into Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbaths, having entered into the synagogue, he began to teach.

(3) Use the tense that your language commonly uses to communicate the time of the event.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I have delivered** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am delivering** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”
> Or: Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, **I am about to deliver** Jericho and its king and its powerful soldiers into your hand.”

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I am going out** in the midst of Egypt, (Exodus 11:4 ULT)

> And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I will be going out** in the midst of Egypt,
> Or: And Moses said, “Thus says Yahweh: ‘About the middle of the night **I shall certainly go out** in the midst of Egypt,

Daniel References:

2:20

Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit

Description

Some languages have ways of saying things that are natural for them but sound strange when translated into Other Languages. One of the reasons for this is that some languages say things explicitly that some Other Languages would leave as implicit information.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

If you translate all of the explicit information from the source language into the explicit information in the target language, it could sound foreign, unnatural, or perhaps even unintelligent if the target language would not make that information explicit. Instead, it is best to leave that kind of information implicit in the target language.

Examples from the Bible

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to start most sentences with a conjunction such as “and” to show the connection between sentences. In English, it is not natural to do so, it is quite tiresome for the English reader, and it gives the impression that the author is uneducated. In English, it is best to leave the idea of connection between sentences implicit in most cases and not translate the conjunction explicitly.

In Biblical Hebrew, it is normal to say that something was burned with fire. In English, the idea of fire is included in the action of burning, and so it is unnatural to state both ideas explicitly. It is enough to say that something was burned and leave the idea of fire implicit.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof” (Matthew 8:8a ULT)

In the biblical languages, it was normal to introduce direct speech with two verbs of speaking. One verb indicated the action, and the other introduced the words of the speaker.

English speakers do not do this, so it is very unnatural and confusing to use two verbs. For the English speaker, the idea of speaking is included in the idea of answering. Using two verbs in English implies two separate speeches, rather than just one. So in English, it is better to use only one verb of speaking.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.
(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, leave the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the explicit information of the source language sounds natural in the target language, then translate it as explicit information.

- There would be no change to the text using this strategy, so no examples are given here.

(2) If the explicit information does not sound natural in the target language or seems unnecessary or confusing, make the explicit information implicit. Only do this if the reader can understand this information from the context. You can test this by asking the reader a question about the passage.

> **And** Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it and drew near to the door of the tower **to burn it with fire**. (Judges 9:52 ESV)
>
> > Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it, and he approached the door of the tower **to burn it**. (Or) … **to set it on fire**.

In English, it is clear that the action of this verse follows the action of the previous verse without the use of the connector “and” at the beginning, so it was omitted. Also, the words “with fire” were left out, because this information is communicated implicitly by the word

“burn.” An alternative translation for “to burn it” is “to set it on fire.” It is not natural in English to use both “burn” and “fire,” so the English translator should choose only one of them. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, “How would the door burn?” If they knew it was by fire, then they have understood the implicit information. Or, if you chose the second option, you could ask, “What happens to a door that is set on fire?” If the readers answer, “It burns,” then they have understood the implicit information.

> But the centurion **answered and said**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof” (Matthew 8:8a ULT)
>
> > The centurion **answered**, “Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof”

In English, the information that the centurion responded by speaking is included in the verb “answered,” so the verb “said” can be left implicit. You can test if the readers understood the implicit information by asking, “How did the centurion answer?” If they knew it was by speaking, then they have understood the implicit information.

> **He opened his mouth** and taught them, saying, (Matthew 5:2 ULT)
>
> > **He began to** teach them, saying, (Or) He taught them, saying,

In English, it would be very strange to include the information that Jesus opened his mouth when he spoke. That information is included in the verbs “taught” and “saying,” so that phrase can be omitted and that information left implicit. However, “he opened his mouth” is an idiom that indicates the beginning of a speech, so that information may be included, or it may also be left implicit.

Daniel References:

2:20; 3:26; 4:30; 6:16; 9:7; 11:18

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> "I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)
>
> I am **the alpha and the omega**, **the first and the last**, **the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> … I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** …, (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)
>
> > **In all places**, people should praise Yahweh’s name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)
>
> > I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)
>
> > He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

Daniel References:

2:20; 5:19; 6:27; 7:2; 8:14

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about

the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see **Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns** and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator’s special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”
> > “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the

> > **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see **Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns**.

Daniel References:

1:3; 1:3; 2:22; 2:23; 2:30; 2:35; 2:38; 2:43; 2:45; 3:29; 4:4; 4:16; 4:22; 4:27; 4:35; 4:37; 4:37; 5:2; 5:11; 5:12; 5:16; 5:20; 5:22; 5:23; 5:23; 5:27; 7:4; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:10; 7:10; 7:23; 7:25; 7:28; 8:7; 8:8; 8:10; 8:12; 8:13; 8:20; 8:26; 9:1; 9:5; 9:6; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:17; 9:24; 9:24; 9:24; 9:26; 9:26; 9:27; 10:7; 10:8; 10:16; 11:1; 11:2; 11:2; 11:4; 11:4; 11:4; 11:7; 11:10; 11:14; 11:20; 11:22; 11:22; 11:24; 11:24; 11:27; 11:32; 11:35; 11:40; 11:40; 11:43; 11:44; 11:45; 12:1; 12:1; 12:5; 12:10; 12:13

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."
>
> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see **Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies**.

Daniel References:

1:2; 1:4; 1:5; 1:9; 1:18; 2:2; 2:20; 2:20; 2:34; 2:38; 2:39; 2:49; 3:4; 3:15; 3:17; 4:1; 4:26; 5:19; 5:20; 5:23; 6:3; 6:25; 6:27; 7:8; 7:13; 7:17; 7:25; 7:27; 8:3; 8:4; 8:6; 8:7; 8:9; 8:25; 8:25; 9:6; 9:10; 9:10; 9:10; 9:15; 9:15; 10:6; 10:12; 11:6; 11:11; 11:12; 11:15; 11:22; 11:27; 11:33; 11:33; 12:7; 12:13

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

> Blessed are **people who are meek**.

Daniel References:

2:21; 2:22; 2:30; 4:17; 4:17; 4:27; 5:1; 7:24; 8:3; 8:24; 9:7; 9:27; 10:21; 11:2; 11:14; 12:10

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

> When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the

> father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands.** (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

(1) Write numbers using numerals.
(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
(4) Combine words for large numbers.
(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> > I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand**

> > talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Daniel References:

3:19; 7:4; 7:10; 8:3; 8:7; 8:14; 9:24; 9:25; 10:13; 11:12

Oath Formulas

An oath is a solemn promise that someone makes to another person to do something or to solemnly testify that something is true. The oath includes the idea that a bad thing will happen if the person making the oath does not do the thing promised or if what the person says is not true.

Description

There are two types of oath in the Bible. We can call the first type a “Promise” oath, and the second type a “Truth” oath.

Promise Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is promising to do something. As a guarantee that the person taking the oath will do what he promises, the person calls on God to witness the oath and to punish him severely if he does not do the thing promised. A complete Promise oath has four parts, but some of them are often left unspoken and only implied:

1. Calling on God to witness the oath and judge the person making it
2. Making the promise (may be implied as the opposite of the violation)
3. Telling what would be a violation of the oath (may be implied as the opposite of the promise)
4. Saying what punishment God would do if the person violates the oath (often implied)

Truth Oath

In this type of oath, the person saying it is affirming that what he is saying is true, and he guarantees that it is true by naming the life of God. Sometimes the person will not name God directly but will instead name something holy that is associated with God, such as the temple. In some situations, a person might name a revered person, such as a king. The implication is that if the person’s statement proves to be false, that person will lose any relationship to God or to the revered person. These oaths have three parts, but the third part is implied and not stated:

1. Naming something holy, usually the life of God or of someone who is revered.
2. Making the statement.
3. Implied: The speaker and hearers of the oath understand that the speaker forfeits his relationship to God or to the revered person if his statement is false.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

People in some cultures may not be familiar with the practice of taking oaths, and so they may not understand what the people in the Bible are doing. In many languages, people would not take an oath the way that people did in the Bible, and so they might not recognize that the person is taking an oath. In the Old Testament, people often did not speak one or more parts of the oath, leaving those parts implied. The part that was most often left unspoken was the part that would tell what would happen if they break the oath. People believed that spoken words have power, and that speaking the part about punishment might cause the punishment to happen, so they often left that part to be understood silently. Because of these things, people might think that the person in the Bible is not making a real oath or they may not understand what the verse is talking about at all.

Examples From the Bible

Promise Oath

> “I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, ‘I made Abram rich.’ (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

In the verse above, Abram describes a symbolic action (raising his hand to Yahweh) to signal that he is taking an oath and calling on Yahweh as witness and judge. He says what would violate his oath (thus promising to do the opposite). Then he leaves out the part that would describe how Yahweh would punish him if he fails to do what he is promising.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Ruth calls on Yahweh and includes the part about Yahweh punishing her, says what the violation would be (thus promising to do the opposite), but does not say what the punishment would be.

> And Saul said, “Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan.” (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

Saul takes an oath that Jonathan will die, but does not specifically say whom God would punish, what the punishment would be, or what the person would do that would violate the oath and bring about God’s punishment.

Truth Oath

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step!” (1 Samuel 20:3)

Here David uses a truth oath to convince Jonathan that Saul does indeed want to kill David. David says this because Jonathan had been trying to assure David that he had nothing to fear from Saul. But Jonathan knows that David holds both Yahweh’s and Jonathan’s life as sacred, and so this oath convinces Jonathan that David truly believes what he is saying.

> The life of your soul, my lord, I {am} the woman having stationed herself with you in this {place} to pray to Yahweh. (1 Samuel 1:26 ULT)

Hannah is speaking to the priest Eli. She demonstrates that she holds the priest’s life as sacred by swearing by it that what she is saying is true.

And Elijah said, “The life of Yahweh of armies, before whom I stand, that I will appear before him today.” (1 Kings 18:15 ULT)

Elijah uses this oath to convince Obadiah to announce his arrival to Ahab. Obadiah knows that Elijah would never break his relationship to Yahweh.

Combination oath

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

Joseph is speaking to his brothers as an Egyptian official, and so he swears by the life of Pharaoh rather than by the life of the God of the Hebrews. Joseph combines the two types of oaths here by using a conditional "if" statement (part 3 of the "Promise" oath). He leaves unstated the "then" part of the oath which would be either a punishment from Pharoah (as with a Promise oath) or a breaking of relationship with Pharaoh (as with a "Truth" oath) if this conditional statement proves true.

Translation Strategies

If people who speak your language would recognize the oath as it is in the ULT, consider translating it in its current form. If not, consider using the following strategies.

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.
(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.
(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add in the missing parts so that people recognize it as an oath.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.' (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

"I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **and ask him to punish me severely** if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

> And Saul said, "Thus may God do and thus may he add, for dying you will die, Jonathan." (1 Samuel 14:44 ULT)

And Saul said, "May God **punish me severely** and may he add **even more punishment if I do not kill you**, for dying you will die, Jonathan."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **I swear by** Yahweh's life and **by** the life of yourself that **it is true that** between me and death is like a step!

> The life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here. (Genesis 42:15)

I swear by the life of Pharaoh, if you leave from this {place} without your youngest brother coming here, **may Pharaoh punish me severely**.

(2) If oaths are unfamiliar, add a short explanation of what an oath is.

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

Then Ruth called on Yahweh to enforce her promise: "May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you."

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

Then David made a statement to Jonathan to convince him that he truly believed that he was in danger: "But indeed, **I forfeit my relationship to** Yahweh and **to you** yourself **if it is not true** that between me and death is like a step!"

(3) Put the oath into a form that would be natural in your language.

> "I raise my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or if I take

> from anything that {belongs} to you, so that you will not say, ‘I made Abram rich.’ (Genesis 14:22-23 ULT)

“**I solemnly swear before** Yahweh, God Most High, the possessor of heaven and earth, **that I will not take** from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or from anything that {belongs} to you, **so help me God**, so that you will not say, ‘I made Abram rich.’

> May Yahweh do thus to me, and thus may he add, if death separates between me and between you. (Ruth 1:17 ULT)

May Yahweh **strike me dead right where I stand** if death separates between me and between you.

> But indeed, the life of Yahweh and the life of yourself, that between me and between death is like a step! (1 Samuel 20:3)

But indeed, **before** Yahweh and **before you** yourself, **I swear** that between me and death is like a step!

Daniel References:

12:7

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples From the Bible

> He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

> 20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)
>
> > 20 But then Herod … had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison,** while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

> 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)
>
> > 8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of

> > rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets…
>
> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_events.

Daniel References:

9:22

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim … **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
> >
> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim … **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)
>
> > A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)
>
> > They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Daniel References:

1:1; 1:21; 2:1; 5:7; 7:1; 8:1; 9:1; 10:1; 10:4; 11:1; 11:2; 11:13

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything…does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
>
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely,” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> > Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

> > Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
>
> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> > For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.
>
> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

> > You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)
>
> > All you have done is lie to me.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Daniel References:

2:21; 4:3; 4:3; 4:5; 4:17; 6:26; 7:10; 7:14; 9:4; 11:17

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Daniel References:

3:27; 6:18

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See Parallelism)
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):

> You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
>
> > and should not throw your pearls in front of the
> > pigs.
> >
> > Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
>
> and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

> Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

> Listen to my call to you,
>
> Yahweh; think about my groanings.
>
> Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
>
> for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

• the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

> "Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**." (from an English rhyme)

• the same sound repeated many times:

> "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)

• The same root word used as both a verb and as a noun:

> Your old men will **dream dreams** (Joel 2:28 ULT)

> Yahweh,…**light lightning** and scatter them (Psalm 144:5-6 ULT)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors

3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

> … for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of Parallelism has two lines that mean the same thing.

> Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

> Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

> Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
>
> for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his co
>
> (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

> > "Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**,
> > Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those
> > who laugh at God he is **no kin.** God is his
> > constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**,
> > He thinks of it all day **and night**."

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

> > This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

> > The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they

> love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Daniel References:

1:4; 1:4; 2:1; 2:3; 2:21; 5:16; 6:7; 10:11; 11:2; 11:3; 11:22; 11:24; 11:33

Politeness

Description

People say certain things, or say things in a certain way, in order to communicate that they respect the people to whom they are speaking. We can refer to this as speaking politely. The ways of speaking politely are generally agreed on by those who share a culture. People also use polite ways of speaking to avoid offending others. This can be especially important if the person being addressed has an influential or powerful position.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Every language has ways to communicate politeness to other speakers of that language, but different languages do not communicate politeness in the same ways. A phrase that is polite in one language may be offensive in another language, or it may simply be confusing. Translators need to recognize politeness in the Bible and communicate the same polite meaning using the appropriate form of politeness in the target language.

Examples From the Bible

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The centurion sent friends to give Jesus this polite message that Jesus should not come to his house.

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

In this culture, this was a polite formula for declining a social invitation.

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

Ruth uses several phrases of politeness as she talks to Boaz. **May I find favor in your eyes** is an idiomatic phrase that communicates that Boaz is in a high position, **my lord** is an honorific form of address, and she refers to herself humbly as **your female servant** even though she is not actually one of his servants.

> **Please** let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

Abraham describes his generosity as something small in order to be polite. This was a way to communicate to his guests that they were not imposing on him at all. Abraham also uses a word translated as "please" to make his request more polite.

> Then he brought him outside and said, "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

In the above example, God is speaking to Abram, inviting him to look at the stars. He also uses the word translated as "please." God has no need to be polite, but this communicates respect for Abram.

Honorifics

A specific category of politeness is the way that people address other people who are important, powerful, or worthy of honor in other ways. We can refer to this form of politeness as using honorific language. Honorific language can be in the form of special titles or, in some languages, special forms of the words used.

> to the **most excellent** Governor Felix (Acts 23:26 ULT)

The expression **most excellent** was an honorific title by which people addressed Roman government officials.

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

This was the polite and respectful way to address the king before saying anything else to him.

Politeness under other categories

People often use language that is non-standard or figurative to communicate politeness. In these cases, there will be a Translation Note under the category of the figure of speech rather than under the category of politeness. The Note will discuss the issue of the figurative speech and then also mention that this is being used to be polite. For example, the following verses will have Translation Notes under the categories given rather than under politeness.

Metaphor

> Men, **brothers and fathers**, hear my defense to you now. (Acts 22:1 ULT)

Paul is using the word **brothers** to refer to his fellow Israelites. He is using the word **fathers** to refer either to Jewish leaders who may be present or to Jewish men who are older than he is. In both cases he is speaking respectfully.

Idiom

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

The Ethiopian official is using an idiomatic expression as a polite way to introduce a request.

Symbolic action

> **And having fallen down**, they worshiped him (Matt 2:11 ULT)

The act of kneeling down before someone showed deep respect for the person.

Speaking of oneself in the third person

> please do not pass by **your servant**. (Gen 18:3 ULT)

Abraham refers to himself as **your servant** here in order to show respect to his guests.

Euphemism

> And having said this, **he fell asleep**. (Acts 7:60 ULT)

Luke is describing the death of Stephen when he says **he fell asleep**. He is using this polite way of referring to something unpleasant to avoid offending his readers.

Other Uses of the Imperative

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

The verb **pray** is an imperative, but it communicates a polite request rather than a command.

Rhetorical question

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Martha is complaining that Jesus is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. But Martha respects Jesus, so she uses the question form to make her complaint more polite.

Translation Strategies

If the phrase used in the ULT would be natural and be a polite expression in your language, consider using it. If not, use the strategy below.

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that would be both natural and polite in your language for this situation.

> **do not trouble yourself** (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I do not want you to go out of your way
or
Please do not bother

> **I ask you, have me excused** (Luke 14:18 ULT)

Please accept my apology for not being able to attend

> **May I find favor in your eyes, my lord**, since you have comforted me, and since you have spoken to the heart of **your female servant**. (Ruth 2:13 ULT)

You are too kind to me, good sir; you have comforted me and you have spoken to my heart **even though I am not worthy of it**.

> Please let **a little** water be brought… Let me also bring **a bit** of bread (Genesis 18:4-5 ULT)

I have **plenty** of water… I also have **plenty** of food

> "**Please** look at the heavens and count the stars…" (Genesis 15:5)

"Look up at the heavens, **if you will**, and count the stars…"

> **O king, live forever!** (Daniel 5:10 ULT)

Your majesty, **I wish you well**!

> **I beg of you**, about whom is the prophet saying this…? (Acts 8:34 ULT)

Please tell me, about whom is the prophet saying this…?

> **You pray to the Lord for me**, so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me. (Acts 8:24 ULT)

Please pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.
or
I ask you to pray to the Lord for me so that nothing of which you have spoken may come upon me.

> **Lord, are you not concerned that my sister has left me alone to serve**? (Luke 10:40 ULT)

Lord, it seems as if you do not care that my sister has left me alone to serve.

Daniel References:

4:1; 12:8

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my **grandfather's** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.

> The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own

- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.

> The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John

> A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel

- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.

> The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing

> the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord

- Contents — Something has something in it.

> a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.

> my head — the head that is part of my body

> the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > “On their heads were **gold crowns**”

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.
>
> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.
>
> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.
>
> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

Daniel References:

1:5; 4:8; 5:3; 5:11; 7:14; 7:18; 8:24; 9:16; 9:25; 11:8; 11:14; 11:15; 11:16; 11:28; 11:32; 11:36; 11:37; 11:38; 11:39; 11:45; 12:7

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from thePharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, “See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath.” But **Jesus** said to them, “Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and

> the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> > At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

Daniel References:

1:5; 1:10; 1:12; 1:19; 2:30; 2:43; 2:44; 3:4; 4:16; 4:25; 4:30; 5:3; 5:16; 5:20; 5:21; 5:29; 7:5; 7:12; 7:13; 7:23; 7:25; 8:1; 8:5; 8:7; 8:14; 8:16; 8:23; 9:23; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 10:8; 10:12; 10:21; 11:1; 11:1; 11:5; 11:8; 11:9; 11:11; 11:16; 11:17; 11:17; 11:18; 11:18; 11:21; 11:22; 11:24; 11:25; 11:27; 11:38; 11:40; 12:7; 12:8

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” **she said**.
- “The food is ready,” **she said.** “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, “How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days.” (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, “Teacher, what should we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, “Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered.” (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> “I will hide my face from them,” **he said,** “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

> > “Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)
>
> > But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
>
> > But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Daniel References:

2:5; 2:25; 3:9; 4:9; 6:5; 7:2; 7:17; 9:4

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I, however, was indeed born a citizen." (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, “… I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’**”’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)
>
> > Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you

> will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)
>
> > And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God.'"
>
> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)
>
> > They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Daniel References:

4:14; 7:5; 7:17; 7:23

Reduplication

Description

Writers and speakers in the Bible sometimes repeat the same word or forms of the same word. This is to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of the action that the word describes, or to otherwise increase the emotional impact of the word.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages may not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, or they may not repeat words to increase the level of emotion that they communicate. In these cases, repeated words may appear to be a mistake or may indicate that the speaker is unable to speak correctly.

Examples From the Bible

To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “multiply” in order to intensify the idea of multiplying.

To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13)

The speaker is repeating forms of the verb “circumcise” in order to increase the certainty that this must happen.

Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)

Moses repeats the word “possess” to emphasize the completeness of the action of possessing the land.

My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)

The writer repeats “my God” to increase the level of emotion that he wants to communicate; he is crying out desperately to God.

“Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…” (Revelation 14:8 ULT)

The angel repeats the word “fallen” in order to show deep emotion in this lament for the ruined city of Babylon.

Translation Strategies

If repeating words would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then do the same in your translation. If not, here are some other options:

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.
(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language would not repeat words to increase the intensity, completeness, or certainty of an action, then use a different word or phrase to add that meaning.

> To the woman he said, “To multiply I will multiply your pain and your childbearing…” (Genesis 3:16 ULT)

> > To the woman he said, “I will greatly multiply
> > your pain and your childbearing…”

> To be circumcised he must be circumcised (Genesis 17:13 ULT)

> > He certainly must be circumcised
> > Or By all means, he must be circumcised

> Begin, possess, to possess his land (Deuteronomy 2:31 ULT)

> > Begin to completely possess his land
> > Or Enter his land until you completely possess it

(2) If your language would not repeat words to increase emotional intensity, then use an emotional word to do that.

> My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? (Psalm 22:1 ULT)

> > You are my God! Why, then, have you forsaken
> > me?
> > Or My God, oh, why have you forsaken me?

> “Fallen, fallen has Babylon the Great…” (Revelation 14:8 ULT)

> > “Alas, Babylon the Great has fallen!

Daniel References:

5:11; 8:1; 10:3; 10:19; 11:10

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?
> > **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me
> > for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> > Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)
>
> > **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)
>
> > **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)
>
> > **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)
>
> > **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)
>
> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my

> people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)
>
> > Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

Daniel References:

1:10; 3:15; 4:30; 4:35; 5:13; 6:12; 10:17; 10:20

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as," or "than."

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.

- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.
>
> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)
>
> > For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!
>
> If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)
>
> > If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Daniel References:

2:35; 2:40; 2:42; 2:43; 4:25; 4:33; 5:11; 5:21; 5:21; 7:4; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:8; 7:9; 7:9; 7:13; 8:15; 10:6; 10:6; 10:6; 10:6; 10:6; 12:3

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

> > Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
> > Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
> > Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

> Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Daniel References:

2:46; 5:2; 5:7; 5:16; 8:17; 9:3; 10:3; 12:7

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

> Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples From the Bible

> After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured,

> broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

> This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

> I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man … He had **seven stars** in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

> This is what that person said, ‘As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.’ (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

> After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

> > After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, [1] terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; [2] it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. [3]

> The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
> > [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
> > [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

Daniel References:

7:3; 7:7; 7:8

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, "Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?" (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **Arepresentative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Daniel References:

2:11; 4:12; 9:7; 9:13; 10:3; 10:10

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]

> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]

> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> 14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the

> man are the things that defile the man. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Daniel References:

3:7; 8:14; 8:23; 10:13

Third-Person Imperatives

Description

The languages of the Bible have verb forms that can give commands, instructions or other directive speech in the third person. In other words, these directives address “he,” “she,” “it,” or “they” rather than “you.”

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

Many languages, including English, do not have these verb forms and so they must communicate this kind of directive speech in other ways. In English, we normally represent these third-person imperatives by putting “let” before the subject or verb. This is actually one of the translation strategies, since English does not have third-person imperatives.

Examples From the Bible

> **Let your kingdom come, let your will be done** as in heaven also on earth. (Matthew 6:9 ULT)

In this prayer, Jesus uses two third–person imperatives. The first one tells God’s kingdom to come, and the second one tells God’s will to be done. Of course, a kingdom and a will cannot hear Jesus, so Jesus is using these verb forms to communicate to God that Jesus desires that these things happen.

> **Let no one deceive himself**. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, **let him become a “fool,”** that he may become wise. (1 Corinthians 3:18 ULT)

In this verse, Paul uses third–person imperatives to give a warning and an instruction. It may be that using this third–person form was more polite than if he had used second–person imperatives.

> But because of immorality, **let each man have** his own wife, and **let each woman have** her own husband. (1 Corinthians 7:2 ULT)

Here again Paul uses two third–person imperatives to instruct the Corinthian church. Since he had just recommended a celibate life in the previous verse, these imperatives have the sense of giving advice rather than command.

> Then God said, **"Let there be light."** And there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

The Biblical Hebrew verb form used here is equivalent to the third–person imperative in Greek. Here, God commands in the third person that light come into existence, so it does.

> **…let him do to me** just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

David uses the third-person form to express his willingness for God to do to him whatever God wants to do.

Translation Strategies

If your language has third-person imperative forms and would use them in the way that the biblical languages do, then please use them. If not, then consider these strategies.

(1) Use a form that your language has that indicates that this is the will or wish of the speaker.
(2) If appropriate, use a second-person imperative.
(3) Use an explicit reference to the function of the imperative.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a form that your language has that indicates that this is the will or wish of the speaker.

> Let your kingdom come, let your will be done as in heaven also on earth. (Matthew 6:9 ULT)

(Since English does not have third-person imperatives, it follows this strategy and uses "let" to indicate that this is the will or wish of the speaker.)

> > May your kingdom come, may your will be done as in heaven also on earth.

> Let no one deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, let him become a "fool," that he may become wise. (1 Corinthians 3:18 ULT)

(Since English does not have third-person imperatives, it follows this strategy and uses "let" to indicate that this is the will or wish of the speaker.)

> > No one should deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, he should become a "fool," that he may become wise.

> …let him do to me just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

(Since English does not have third-person imperatives, it follows this strategy and uses "let" to indicate that this is the will or wish of the speaker.)

> > …he may do to me just as {is} good in his eyes.
> > (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

(2) If appropriate, use a second-person imperative.

> Let no one deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this age, let him become a “fool,” that he may become wise. (1 Corinthians 3:18 ULT)

> > Do not deceive yourselves. If you think you are wise in this age, then become a “fool,” that you may become wise.

> Then God said, “Let there be light.” And there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> > Then God said, “Light, come into being.” And there was light.

> …let him do to me just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

> > …Yahweh, do to me just as {is} good in your eyes.

(3) Use an explicit reference to the function of the imperative.

> Let your kingdom come, let your will be done as in heaven also on earth. (Matthew 6:9 ULT)

> > We pray that your kingdom come, we pray that your will be done as in heaven also on earth.

> Then God said, “Let there be light.” And there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

> > Then God said, “I command light to be.” And there was light.

> But because of immorality, let each man have his own wife, and let each woman have her own husband. (1 Corinthians 7:2 ULT)

> > But because of immorality, I advise each man to have his own wife, and I advise each woman to have her own husband.

> …let him do to me just as {is} good in his eyes. (2 Samuel 15:26 ULT)

> > …he has my permission to do to me just as {is} good in his eyes.

See also Imperatives – Other Uses

Daniel References:

4:14; 4:16; 5:17

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> “We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is

> if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> “We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

> to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Daniel References:

1:11; 1:20; 2:2; 3:2; 3:5; 3:21; 4:15; 4:15; 6:1; 6:2; 10:6

Unusual Uses of the Plural

The biblical languages sometimes use plural forms to refer to single objects, ideas, or people.

Description

Using a plural form to refer to something singular is done to show an intensified feeling about the object, idea, or person, or to show that an object or idea is extraordinary in some way. Also, sometimes a person refers to himself or herself with a plural pronoun. If the person is a king or a leader in a high position, this is to show that the person is very important and represents many people. If the person is writing a letter, such as Paul in the New Testament, this is to do the opposite. It is to avoid referring directly to himself, to avoid any sense that he is boasting or drawing attention to himself.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use plural forms to refer to single objects, ideas, or people. In these languages, doing so would be both wrong and confusing. Instead, they need to use a singular form and express any intended intensification in another way.

Examples From the Bible

> The tents of robbers prosper, and securities {are} to the provokers of God (Job 12:6 ULT)

Job is using the plural form **securities** to indicate that these provokers of God experience security to a supreme extent.

> Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the seas (Jonah 2:3 ULT)

Jonah refers to the sea using the plural **seas** to intensify the idea of either the sea's vastness or activity.

> The letter that you sent to **us** has been carefully read aloud before me. (Ezra 4:18 ULT)

Artaxerxes, the king of Persia, refers to himself as **us** in response to a letter sent to him.

> …through whom [Jesus] **we** received grace and apostleship for obedience of faith among all the Gentiles (Romans 1:5 ULT)

Since this letter is from Paul alone, it is likely that he is using the plural **we** to refer to himself.

Translation Strategies

If a plural form would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Use a singular form instead of the plural.
(2) If the plural is used to intensify the meaning, use a singular form with another word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
(3) If the plural is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a singular form instead of the plural.

> The letter that you sent to **us** has been carefully read aloud before me. (Ezra 4:18 ULT)

The letter that you sent to **me** has been carefully read aloud before me.

> …through whom [Jesus] **we** received grace and apostleship for obedience of faith among all the Gentiles (Romans 1:5 ULT)

…through whom [Jesus] **I** received grace and apostleship for obedience of faith among all the Gentiles

(2) If the plural is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use a singular form with another word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

> The tents of robbers prosper, and **securities {are}** to the provokers of God (Job 12:6 ULT)

The tents of robbers prosper, and **great security {is}** to the provokers of God

> Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **seas** (Jonah 2:3 ULT)

Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **great sea**

(3) If the plural is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

> The tents of robbers prosper, and **securities {are}** to the provokers of God (Job 12:6 ULT)

The tents of robbers prosper, and the provokers of God **enjoy complete security**

> Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **seas** (Jonah 2:3 ULT)

Now you had cast me deep into the heart of the **raging sea**

Daniel References:

7:25

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

> 29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and
> Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites,
> according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

> 29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir
> land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,
> Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

> 4-5 Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you.
> If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I
> am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you.
> (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

> [4] However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), [5] if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

> [16-17] But Yahweh said to him, “I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park.” (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

> [16] Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. [17] But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die.” (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

> 2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)
>
> 2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Daniel References:

9:1; 9:20

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice
> but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **hisbrother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **hisbrother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

> > “The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”
> > “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > “For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> > “If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

Daniel References:

7:4

unfoldingWord® Translation Words - Daniel

v91

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and did not want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

Daniel References:

9:27; 11:31; 12:11

acknowledge, admit, admitted

Definition:

The term “acknowledge” means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

- To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
- People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
- To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of acknowledging that something is true, “acknowledge” could be translated as “admit” or “declare” or “confess to be true” or “believe.”
- When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as “accept” or “recognize the value of” or “tell others that (the person) is faithful.”
- In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as “believe and obey God” or “declare who God is” or “tell other people about how great God is” or “confess that what God says and does is true.”

(See also: obey, glory, save)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:38-39
- Jeremiah 9:4-6
- Job 34:26-28
- Leviticus 22:32
- Psalm 29:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3045, H3046, H5046, H5234, H6942, G14920, G19210, G36700

Daniel References:

11:39

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

Daniel References:

4:19

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

Daniel References:

3:2; 3:3; 3:24; 3:27; 4:27; 4:36; 6:7

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one’s soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: **leprosy**, **plague**, suffer)

Bible References:

- **2 Thessalonians 1:6**
- **Amos 5:12**
- **Colossians 1:24**
- **Exodus 22:22-24**
- **Genesis 12:17-20**
- **Genesis 15:12-13**
- **Genesis 29:32**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

Daniel References:

9:25

age, aged, old, old age, years old

Definition:

In this sense, the term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. In the Bible the terms “aged” and “old” are both used to describe someone who has lived a for many years.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The term “aged” could also be translated as “old” or “very old” depending on context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G01650, G01660

Daniel References:

1:10

age, era, time

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “age” refers to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience toward God fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign in a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could be translated as “era” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”
- The phrase “end of the age” (used in Jesus’ words in Matthew 28:20) means “end of this period of history” or “end of this present age” and refers to the end of this present age at Jesus’ second coming.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2165, H6256, H6471, G21190, G21210, G22350, G25400, G35680, G41830, G42180, G44550, G51190, G55500, G55510, G56100

Daniel References:

2:8; 2:9; 2:16; 2:21; 3:5; 3:7; 4:16; 4:23; 4:25; 4:32; 4:36; 6:10; 6:13; 7:12; 7:22; 7:25; 8:17; 9:21; 9:25; 11:6; 11:13; 11:14; 11:24; 11:35; 11:40; 12:1; 12:4; 12:7; 12:9; 12:11

Ahasuerus

Definition:

Ahasuerus was a king who ruled over the ancient kingdom of Persia for twenty years.

- This was during the time the exiled Jews were living in Babylonia, which had come under Persian rule.
- Another name for this king may have been Xerxes.
- After sending away his queen in a fit of anger, King Ahasuerus later chose a Jewish woman named Esther to be his new wife and queen.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Esther, Ethiopia, exile, Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:1
- Esther 10:1-2
- Ezra 4:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0325

Daniel References:

9:1

alarm, alarmed

Definition:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or to “worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: Jehoshaphat, Moab)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 4:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7321, H8643

Daniel References:

4:5; 4:19; 5:6; 5:9; 5:10; 7:15; 7:28

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

Daniel References:

11:39

Ammon, Ammonite

Definition:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

Daniel References:

11:41

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16

- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:12 God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- 22:3 The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- 23:6 Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- 25:8 Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- 38:12 Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- 38:15 “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

Daniel References:

3:28; 6:22

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil. Often this was a Symbolic Action, representing God empowering that person with the Holy Spirit for special service to him.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship.
- People prepared dead bodies for burial by anointing them with perfumed oils and spices.
- In the New Testament, receiving the Holy Spirit is described as anointing.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour/put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring oil on” or “consecrate” or “appoint.”
- Depending on the context, to “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated” or “be given the Holy Spirit.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28

- **Amos 6:5-6**
- **Exodus 29:5-7**
- **James 5:13-15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

Daniel References:

9:24; 9:25; 9:26; 10:3

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

Daniel References:

2:24; 2:49; 3:12; 8:19; 11:27; 11:29; 11:35

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus

Definition:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic." Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
- The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
- The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- 2 Samuel 8:6
- Amos 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:16
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:12
- Psalm 60:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0130, H0726, H0758, H0761, H0762, H0763, H1834, H7421

Daniel References:

2:4

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21

- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

Daniel References:

3:2; 3:3; 3:27; 11:10

assign, assigned, assignment, reassign

Definition:

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, Samuel, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:48
- Daniel 12:13
- Jeremiah 43:11
- Joshua 18:2
- Numbers 4:27-28
- Psalms 78:55

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2506, H3335, H4487, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G33070

Daniel References:

1:5; 1:10; 1:11

Azariah

Definition:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, Jeremiah, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:38
- 1 Kings 4:2
- 2 Chronicles 15:1
- Daniel 1:6-7
- Jeremiah 43:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5838

Daniel References:

1:6; 1:7; 1:11; 1:19; 2:17

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Definition:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:6 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- 20:7 But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:9 Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- 20:11 About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

Daniel References:

1:1; 2:12; 2:14; 2:18; 2:24; 2:48; 2:49; 3:1; 3:12; 3:30; 4:6; 4:29; 4:30; 5:7; 7:1

banquet

Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as “elaborate meal” or “important feast” or “multi-course meal.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 5:10
- **Isaiah 5:11-12**
- **Jeremiah 16:8**
- **Luke 5:29-32**
- **Song of Songs 2:3-4**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4960, H4961, H8354, G11730, G14030

Daniel References:

5:10

bear, bearer, bore, borne, produce, produced

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to “produce” or “give birth to.”

- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit”
- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “produce” or “give birth to.”

(Translation suggestions: fruit)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3205, H3209, H3211, H5375, G01420, G03990, G04300, G09410, G10800, G41600, G47220, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090

Daniel References:

7:5

bear, bears, bore, borne, bearer, bearing, carry

Definition:

Used in this sense, the term “bear” means to carry something.

- To “bear a burden” means to carry something heavy.
- The term “burden bearers” refers to men who carry heavy things and could be translated as “burden carriers” or “carriers.”
- The term “armor bearer” could be translated as “armor carrier.”
- The phrase “bearer of news” could be translated as “carrier of news.”
- Depending on context, this term could be translated as “carry” or “bring.”

(See also: strength)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5375

Daniel References:

2:35

beast

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: **authority**, Daniel, livestock, nation, **power**, **reveal**, **Beelzebul**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 15:32**
- **1 Samuel 17:44**
- **2 Chronicles 25:18**
- **Jeremiah 16:1-4**
- **Leviticus 7:21**
- **Psalms 49:12-13**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

Daniel References:

2:38; 4:12; 4:14; 4:15; 4:16; 4:21; 4:23; 4:25; 4:32; 7:3; 7:5; 7:6; 7:7; 7:11; 7:12; 7:17; 7:19; 7:23; 8:4

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

Daniel References:

3:20; 3:21; 3:23

blemish, unblemished, defect

Definition:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: believe, clean, sacrifice, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:19
- 2 Peter 2:13
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 6:13-15
- Song of Songs 4:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3971, H8400, H8549, G34700

Daniel References:

1:4

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25

- **Luke 6:20**
- **Matthew 26:26**
- **Nehemiah 9:5**
- **Romans 4:9**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

Daniel References:

2:19; 2:20; 3:28; 4:34

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

Daniel References:

6:10

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called "unleavened bread" in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate "unleavened bread" during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."
- The phrase "bread of the presence" refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The term "bread from heaven" refers to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."

(See also: **Passover**, **tabernacle**, temple, **unleavened bread**, **yeast**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 2:46**
- **Acts 27:35**
- **Exodus 16:15**
- **Luke 9:13**
- **Mark 6:38**
- **Matthew 4:4**
- **Matthew 11:18**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

Daniel References:

10:3

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

Daniel References:

2:32; 2:35; 2:39; 2:45; 4:15; 4:23; 5:4; 5:23; 7:19; 10:6

call, called

Definition:

The term “call,” in this sense, means to summon a person or being.

- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- Depending on context the phrase “call upon” can be translated as “summon” or “request help from” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- The expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”

(See also: call to speak loudly, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7121, G25640, G28210, G43410, G47790, G54550

Daniel References:

2:2; 5:12

call, called

Definition:

The terms “call” and “called,” in this sense, mean to name a place, person, or being. When referring to a person or thing the terms “call” and “called” can refer either to initially giving someone or something a name for the first time or to saying that thing or persons pre-existing name or title.

- The Bible sometimes uses these terms in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.

Translation Suggestions:

- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- You could translates Jesus’ words “You call me ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord,’” as “You address me as ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord,’” or something similar to show that the word “call” in this context means to “address” someone by a specific name or title.

(See also: call to summon)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7121, G25640, G30040, G55810

Daniel References:

9:18; 9:19; 10:1

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

Daniel References:

3:4; 4:14; 5:7; 8:16

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, **exile**, **prison**, seize)

Bible References:

- **2 Corinthians 10:5**
- **Isaiah 20:4**
- **Jeremiah 43:3**
- **Luke 4:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

Daniel References:

2:25; 5:13; 6:13; 11:8; 11:33

chaff

Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called "winnowing."
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: **grain**, **wheat**, **winnow**)

Bible References:

- Daniel 2:35
- **Job 21:18**
- **Luke 3:17**
- **Matthew 3:12**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G08920

Daniel References:

2:35

Chaldea, Chaldean

Definition:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."
- In the book of Daniel, the term "Chaldean" also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

Daniel References:

1:4; 2:2; 2:4; 2:5; 2:10; 3:8; 4:7; 5:7; 5:11; 5:30; 9:1

chief, leader

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: **head**, **chief priests**, **priest**, **tax collector**)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- **Ezekiel 26:15-16**
- **Luke 19:2**
- **Psalm 4:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

Daniel References:

1:3; 1:7; 1:8; 1:10; 1:11; 1:18; 2:48; 4:9; 5:11; 10:13; 11:22

commander

Definition:

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term to “command” an army could be translated as to “lead” or to “be in charge of.”

(See also: command, ruler, centurion)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 2:14
- Mark 6:21-22
- Proverbs 6:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G55060

Daniel References:

2:15; 8:11; 11:18

companion, fellow worker, friend

Definition:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

Daniel References:

2:13; 2:17; 2:18

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “deep caring” or “pity” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- **Hosea 13:14**
- **James 5:9-11**
- **Jonah 4:1-3**
- **Mark 1:41**
- **Romans 9:14-16**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

Daniel References:

1:9; 9:9

concubine

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife.
Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:7
- Genesis 22:24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3904, H6370

Daniel References:

5:2; 5:3; 5:23

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: **faith**, **testimony**)

Bible References:

- **1 John 1:8-10**
- **2 John 1:7-8**
- **James 5:16**
- **Leviticus 5:5-6**
- **Matthew 3:4-6**
- **Nehemiah 1:6-7**
- **Philippians 2:9-11**
- **Psalms 38:17-18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

Daniel References:

9:4; 9:20

confirm, confirmation

Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, trust)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

Daniel References:

2:45

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

Daniel References:

7:26

contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to

Definition:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: **dishonor**)

Bible References:

- Daniel 12:1-2
- **Proverbs 15:5-6**
- **Psalms 31:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0936, H0937, H0959, H0963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G18480

Daniel References:

12:2

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

Daniel References:

2:9; 6:4

courage, courageous, valor

Definition:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance or when he faces the threat of emotional or physical pain with emotional strength.
- The expression “take courage” means “do not be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

Translation Suggestions

(See also: encourage, confidence, fear, strength)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0553, H2428, H2865, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G43890, G51110

Daniel References:

3:20

court

Definition:

The term “court” refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- Often, when the Bible uses the term “court” (in this legal sense), it refers to human courts but it can also be used to refer to a heavenly court such as in Daniel 7:10 and Daniel 7:26.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “court” could be translated as “tribunal” or when referring to a human court it could be translated as “legal court.”

(See also: judge)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Daniel References:

7:10; 7:26

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”

- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:9 Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- 5:4 “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”

- 6:4 After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- 7:10 "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- 13:2 God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- 13:4 Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- 21:5 Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- 21:14 Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- 48:11 But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

Daniel References:

9:4; 9:27; 11:22; 11:28; 11:30; 11:32

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: covenant, faithful, **grace**, Israel, **people of God**, **promise**)

Bible References:

- **Ezra 3:11**
- **Numbers 14:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2617

Daniel References:

9:4

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11

- **Matthew 22:4**
- **Luke 13:15**
- **Luke 14:5**
- **Hebrews 9:13**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

Daniel References:

4:25; 4:32; 4:33; 5:21

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- The terms “cry” or “cry out” can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call speak loudly, plead, pray)

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

Daniel References:

6:20

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:9 God said to the snake, “You are **cursed**!”
- 2:11 “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- 4:4 “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- 39:7 Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

Daniel References:

9:11

Cyrus

Definition:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

- King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
- Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
- Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Daniel, Darius, Ezra, Nehemiah, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:23
- Daniel 1:21
- Ezra 5:13
- Isaiah 44:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3566

Daniel References:

1:21; 6:28; 10:1

Daniel

Definition:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniels enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:6-7
- Daniel 5:29
- Daniel 7:28
- **Ezekiel 14:12-14**
- **Matthew 24:15**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1840, H1841, G11580

Daniel References:

1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:17; 1:19; 1:21; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:46; 2:47; 2:48; 2:49; 4:8; 4:19; 5:12; 5:13; 5:17; 5:29; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:10; 6:11; 6:13; 6:14; 6:16; 6:17; 6:20; 6:21; 6:23; 6:24; 6:26; 6:27; 6:28; 7:1; 7:2; 7:15; 7:28; 8:1; 8:15; 8:27; 9:2; 9:22; 10:1; 10:2; 10:7; 10:11; 10:12; 12:4; 12:5; 12:9

Darius

Definition:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that “Darius” was a title rather than a name.

- “Darius the Mede” was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion’s den as punishment for worshiping God.
- “Darius the Persian” helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Persia, Babylon, Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- Ezra 4:4-6
- Haggai 1:1
- Nehemiah 12:22
- Zechariah 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1867, H1868

Daniel References:

5:31; 6:1; 6:6; 6:9; 6:25; 6:28; 9:1; 11:1

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

Daniel References:

1:15; 2:28; 2:44; 4:34; 5:11; 6:7; 6:10; 6:12; 6:13; 7:9; 7:13; 7:22; 8:26; 10:14; 11:20; 12:12; 12:13

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

Daniel References:

2:2; 5:29; 9:23; 11:2

decree, decreed

Definition:

The term “decree” means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a “decree.”

- A “decree” is similar to a “law,” but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term “decree” could be translated as to “order” or to “command” or to “formally require” or to “publicly make a law.”
- God’s laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: command, declare, law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 8:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 2:13
- Esther 1:22
- Luke 2:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G13780

Daniel References:

2:9; 2:13; 2:15; 3:10; 3:29; 4:6; 4:17; 4:24; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:12; 6:13; 6:15; 6:26; 11:36

dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”
- The terms “devote” and “devoted” often refer to something that is completely destroyed as a way of dedicating it to Yahweh.

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 6:9-11
- 1 Kings 7:51
- 1 Timothy 4:5
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 2:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G14560, G14570

Daniel References:

3:2; 3:3; 4:36

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: profane, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

Daniel References:

1:8

delight

Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “to take pleasure in” or “take joy in” or “be happy about” it. If a person “delights in” something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

Daniel References:

10:3; 10:11; 10:19; 11:8; 11:43

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:3 Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- 16:16 They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- 16:17 Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

Daniel References:

3:15; 3:17; 3:28; 6:14; 6:16; 6:20; 6:27; 8:4; 8:7

desolate, desolated, desolation, deserted, desolator

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation,” when used to refer to a place or location, refer to the state or condition of being ruined and left fully or partially uninhabited. The term “desolate,” when referring to a person or group of people, describes a state or condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.

- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land that is partially deserted or abandoned and therefore has few people living there.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a city or region, could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “abandoned” or “deserted.”
- Depending on the context, this term, when referring to a person or people group, could be translated as “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”
- A “desolator” is one who causes desolation.

(See also: desert, devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

Daniel References:

8:13; 8:27; 9:2; 9:17; 9:18; 9:26; 9:27; 11:31; 12:11

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

Daniel References:

2:12; 2:24; 2:44; 4:23; 6:26; 7:11; 7:14; 7:26; 8:24; 8:25; 9:26; 10:8; 11:16; 11:44

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

Daniel References:

7:5; 7:7; 7:19; 7:23

discern, discernment, distinguish

Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: judge, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 1:5
- Psalms 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G03500, G12520, G12530, G29240

Daniel References:

6:3

disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believe, persecute, captive, exile)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

Daniel References:

4:14; 11:24

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, false god, magic, sorcery)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G44360

Daniel References:

2:27; 4:7; 5:7; 5:11

doctrine, teaching, belief, beliefs, instruction, knowledge

Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit—including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: **teach**)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 1:3**
- **2 Timothy 3:16-17**
- **Mark 7:6-7**
- **Matthew 15:7-9**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3948, G13190, G13220, G20850

Daniel References:

5:12

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: **authority**, **power**)

Bible References:

- **1 Peter 5:10-11**
- **Colossians 1:13**
- **Jude 1:25**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

Daniel References:

4:3; 4:22; 4:34; 6:26; 7:6; 7:12; 7:14; 7:26; 7:27; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

Daniel References:

5:21

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:2 Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- 8:6 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- 8:7 God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- 16:11 So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- 23:1 He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

Daniel References:

1:17; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:9; 2:26; 2:28; 2:36; 2:45; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:9; 4:18; 4:19; 5:12; 7:1

drunk, drunkard

Definition:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

Daniel References:

5:4

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Daniel, **free**, Nebuchadnezzar, **power**)

Bible References:

- **2 Samuel 1:23**
- Daniel 7:4
- **Jeremiah 4:13-15**
- **Leviticus 11:13-16**
- **Revelation 4:7**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, G01050

Daniel References:

4:33; 7:4

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

Daniel References:

1:2; 2:10; 2:35; 2:39; 4:1; 4:10; 4:11; 4:15; 4:20; 4:22; 4:23; 4:35; 6:25; 6:27; 7:17; 7:23; 8:5; 8:7; 8:10; 8:12; 8:18; 9:6; 9:7; 9:15; 10:9; 10:15; 11:9; 11:16; 11:19; 11:28; 11:39; 11:40; 11:41; 11:42

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Definition:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
- The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: adversary, birthright, Esau, Obadiah, prophet)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

Daniel References:

11:41

Egypt, Egyptian

Definition:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan.

An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:4 The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- 8:8 Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- 8:11 So Jacob sent his older sons to __Egypt __ to buy food.
- 8:14 Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- 9:1 After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

Daniel References:

9:15; 11:8; 11:42; 11:43

Elam, Elamites

Definition:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- Acts 2:9
- Ezra 8:4-7
- Isaiah 22:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5867, H5962, G16390

Daniel References:

8:2

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: **persevere**)

Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 2:11-13**
- **James 1:3**
- **James 1:12**
- **Luke 21:19**
- **Matthew 13:21**
- **Revelation 1:9**
- **Romans 5:3-5**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

Daniel References:

4:26; 6:26

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 27:1 One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- 28:1 One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- 28:10 Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

Daniel References:

2:4; 2:20; 2:44; 3:9; 4:3; 4:34; 5:10; 6:21; 6:26; 7:14; 7:18; 7:27; 9:24; 12:2; 12:3; 12:7

eunuch

Definition:

Usually the term “eunuch” refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings’ servants who were set as guards over the women’s quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: **Philip**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 8:27**
- **Acts 8:36**
- **Acts 8:39**
- **Isaiah 39:7-8**
- **Jeremiah 34:17-19**
- **Matthew 19:12**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5631, G21340, G21350

Daniel References:

1:3; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:18

evil, wicked, wickedness, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:4 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- 3:1 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- 3:2 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- 4:2 God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- 8:12 “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- 14:2 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- 17:1 But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- 29:8 The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- 45:2 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

Daniel References:

9:15; 11:27; 11:32; 12:10

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:12 One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 17:2 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- 30:3 To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.

- 38:8 Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

Daniel References:

8:3; 8:4; 8:6; 8:7; 8:20

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

Daniel References:

4:37; 11:36

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: **believe**, **faith**, **believe**)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 24:49**
- **Leviticus 26:40**
- **Numbers 12:7**
- **Joshua 2:14**
- **Judges 2:16-17**
- **1 Samuel 2:9**
- **Psalm 12:1**
- **Proverbs 11:12-13**
- **Isaiah 1:26**
- **Jeremiah 9:7-9**
- **Hosea 5:7**
- **Luke 12:46**
- **Luke 16:10**
- **Colossians 1:7**

- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:5 Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- 14:12 Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- 15:13 The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- 17:9 David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- 35:12 “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- 49:17 But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- 50:4 “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

Daniel References:

10:21

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: **Jewish leaders**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 21:8-10**
- **2 Chronicles 20:3**
- **Acts 13:1-3**
- **Jonah 3:4-5**
- **Luke 5:34**
- **Mark 2:19**
- **Matthew 6:18**
- **Matthew 9:15**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:8** “‘For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.’”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G35210, G35220

Daniel References:

6:18; 9:3

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

Daniel References:

1:9

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” often refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect,” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear Yahweh” could be translated as “reverence Yahweh” or “deeply respect Yahweh.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

Daniel References:

1:10; 4:5; 5:19; 6:26; 7:7; 7:19; 8:17; 9:4; 10:12; 10:19; 11:30

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

Daniel References:

5:1

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: Metaphor)
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: **ark**, **Noah**)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- **Genesis 7:6-7**
- **Luke 6:46-48**
- **Matthew 7:24-25**
- **Matthew 7:26-27**
- **Matthew 24:37-39**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3999, G26270

Daniel References:

9:26; 11:22

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: **flock**, **shepherd**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 14:7**
- **1 Kings 1:38-40**
- Daniel 3:3-5
- **Luke 7:31-32**
- **Matthew 9:23**
- **Matthew 11:17**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

Daniel References:

3:5; 3:7; 3:10; 3:15

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11

- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 7:10 But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- 21:5 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- 29:1 One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- 29:8 I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

Daniel References:

9:9; 9:19

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

Daniel References:

2:44; 4:23; 4:26; 10:8; 10:13; 11:30

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” produces a lot of fruit. Something that is “unfruitful” does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase “the fruit of every tree” refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term “fruit” refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much fruit.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When used literally, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

Daniel References:

4:12; 4:14; 4:21

furnace

Definition:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: false god, image)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51
- Genesis 19:28
- Proverbs 17:3
- Psalms 21:9
- Revelation 9:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G25750

Daniel References:

3:6; 3:11; 3:15; 3:17; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 3:26

Gabriel

Definition:

Gabriel is the name of one of God's angels. He is mentioned by name several times, in both the Old and New Testaments.

- God sent Gabriel to tell the prophet Daniel the meaning of a vision he had seen.
- Another time, while Daniel was praying, the angel Gabriel flew to him and prophesied about what would happen in the future. Daniel described him as a "man."
- In the New Testament it is recorded that Gabriel came to Zechariah to prophesy that his aged wife Elizabeth would have a son, John.
- Sixth months after that, Gabriel was sent to Mary to tell her that God would miraculously enable her to conceive a child who would be the "Son of God." Gabriel told Mary to name her son "Jesus."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: angel, Daniel, **Elizabeth**, **John (the Baptist)**, **Mary**, prophet, **Son of God**, **Zechariah (NT)**)

Bible References:

- Daniel 8:15-17
- Daniel 9:21
- **Luke 1:19**
- **Luke 1:26**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1403, G10430

Daniel References:

8:16; 9:21

gate, gate bar, gatekeeper, gatepost, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

Daniel References:

2:49

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to a period of time approximately equal to the lifetime of a person. This could be as long as 100 years. This period of time also came to be measured by the time between the adulthood of one person and the adulthood of his or her offspring, or a 30–40-year time span.

Translation Suggestions

- When referring to the past, “generations” could be translated as “during the times of our ancestors” or “when people lived before us.”
- When referring to the future, “generations” could be translated as “lifespans” or “times of people who will come afterwards” or “when our descendants are living.”
- The phrase “in his own generation” could be translated as “while he lived” or “during his time”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “from the time of people living now and for always” or “as long as people live on the earth” or “from now to all future time periods” or “for all time.”

(See also: descendant, ancestor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H8435, G01650, G10740

Daniel References:

4:3

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” in this sense refers to a group of people who share a certain characteristic or quality.

Translation Suggestions:

When the word “generation” is used in this sense, it is the context the determines which particular characteristic or quality is in view. For example, when David says in Psalm 24:6 “This is the generation of the ones seeking him” he is speaking of the type of people who seek Yahweh, so this phrase could also be translated as “These are the ones seeking him.”

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Daniel References:

4:34

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

Daniel References:

10:5

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”

- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 25:6 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- 37:1 When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- 37:8 Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

Daniel References:

2:37; 4:30; 4:34; 4:36; 4:37; 5:20; 7:14; 11:39

goat, goatskin, scapegoat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 3:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

Daniel References:

8:5; 8:8; 8:21

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.” NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8

- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:1 **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- 1:15 **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- 5:3 "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- 9:14 **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- 10:2 Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- 16:1 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- 22:7 "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- 24:9 There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 25:7 "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- 28:1 "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."

- 49:9 But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- 50:16 But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

Daniel References:

1:9; 1:17; 2:11; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:23; 2:28; 2:37; 2:44; 2:45; 2:47; 3:17; 3:18; 3:26; 3:28; 3:29; 4:2; 4:8; 4:9; 4:18; 5:18; 5:21; 5:23; 5:26; 6:5; 6:7; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:16; 6:20; 6:22; 6:23; 6:26; 9:3; 9:4; 9:9; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 10:12; 11:8; 11:32; 11:36

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Definition:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:9 There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 29:9 Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:9 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- 40:7 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:8 “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”
- 50:10 “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, G39620

Daniel References:

5:11

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, **Asherah**, **Baal**, **Molech**, **demon**, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 10:2 Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- 13:4 Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- 14:2 They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- 16:1 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- 18:13 But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

Daniel References:

1:2; 2:47; 3:12; 3:14; 3:15; 3:25; 3:28; 3:29; 5:4; 5:11; 5:14; 5:23; 11:36; 11:37; 11:38; 11:39

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects.

It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

Daniel References:

2:32; 2:35; 2:38; 2:45; 3:1; 3:5; 3:7; 3:10; 3:12; 3:14; 3:18; 5:2; 5:3; 5:4; 5:7; 5:16; 5:23; 5:29; 10:5; 11:8; 11:38; 11:43

good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:4 God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- 1:11 God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- 1:12 Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- 2:4 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- 8:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- 28:1 “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

Daniel References:

1:4; 1:15; 4:2; 4:27; 6:1; 8:14

govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, king, power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

Daniel References:

2:48; 3:2; 3:3; 3:27; 6:7

Greece, Grecian

Definition:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called “Greeks” and their language is “Greek.” People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term “Greek” is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Corinth**, **Gentile**, **Greek**, **Hebrew**, **Philippi**, **Thessalonica**)

Bible References:

- Daniel 8:21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- **Zechariah 9:13**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3120, G16710

Daniel References:

8:21; 10:20; 11:2

Hananiah

Definition:

Hananiah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament.

- One Hananiah was an Israelite captive in Babylon whose name was changed to "Shadrach."
- He was given a position as a royal servant due to his excellent character and abilities.
- Once, Hananiah (Shadrach) and two other Israelite young men were thrown into a fire in a furnace because they refused to worship the Babylonian king. God showed his power by protecting them from being harmed.
- Another man named Hananiah was listed as a descendant of King Solomon.
- A different Hananiah was a false prophet during the time of the prophet Jeremiah.
- One man named Hananiah was a priest who helped lead a celebration during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Azariah, Babylon, Daniel, **false prophet**, Jeremiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:6-7
- Daniel 2:17-18
- **Jeremiah 28:1**
- **Jeremiah 28:5-7**
- **Jeremiah 28:15-17**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2608

Daniel References:

1:6; 1:7; 1:11; 1:19; 2:17

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: David, fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 5:23-24
- Daniel 3:5
- Psalm 33:1-3
- Revelation 5:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G27880, G27890, G27900

Daniel References:

3:5; 3:7; 3:10; 3:15

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we cannot directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: **kingdom of God**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 8:22-24**
- **1 Thessalonians 1:8-10**
- **1 Thessalonians 4:17**
- **Deuteronomy 9:1**
- **Ephesians 6:9**
- **Genesis 1:1**
- **Genesis 7:11**
- **John 3:12**
- **John 3:27**
- **Matthew 5:18**
- **Matthew 5:46-48**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:2 They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- 23:7 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 29:9 Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:9 Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 42:11 Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

Daniel References:

2:18; 2:19; 2:28; 2:37; 2:38; 2:44; 4:11; 4:12; 4:13; 4:15; 4:20; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:25; 4:26; 4:31; 4:33; 4:34; 4:35; 4:37; 5:21; 5:23; 6:27; 7:2; 7:13; 7:27; 8:8; 8:10; 9:12; 11:4; 12:7

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: holy, God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 2:27
- Acts 3:13-14
- Isaiah 5:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 4:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H0376, H6918, G00400, G37410

Daniel References:

4:13; 8:13

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, bread, consecrate, courtyard, curtain, holy, set apart, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:16-18
- Acts 6:12-15
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:1
- Ezra 9:8-9
- Hebrews 9:1-2
- Leviticus 16:18
- Matthew 24:15-18

- **Revelation 15:5**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G00400, G00400, G34850, G51170

Daniel References:

9:24

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Definition:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:1 But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- 24:8 When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- 26:1 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- 26:3 Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- 42:10 "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- 43:3 They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- 43:8 "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- 43:11 Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- 45:1 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

Daniel References:

4:8; 4:9; 4:18; 5:11; 5:12; 6:3

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often said to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”

- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6
- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 1:16 He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 9:12 “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- 13:2 “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- 13:5 “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- 22:5 “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- 50:2 As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

Daniel References:

4:9; 4:17; 4:18; 4:23; 5:11; 8:13; 8:24; 9:16; 9:20; 9:24; 11:28; 11:30; 11:45; 12:7

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

Daniel References:

2:6; 3:12; 5:18; 5:23; 11:38

horn, horned, shofar

Definition:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals or to call men for battle.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet, which is usually made of metal.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.
- The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.

(See also: authority, cow, deer, goat, power, royal, sheep, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

Daniel References:

3:5; 3:7; 3:10; 3:15; 7:7; 7:8; 7:11; 7:20; 7:21; 7:24; 8:3; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:20; 8:21

hour, moment

Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 AM). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 PM). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system.
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

Bible References:

- Acts 2:15
- John 4:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G56100

Daniel References:

3:6; 3:15; 4:19; 4:33; 5:5

house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps.

- When referring to a building where people live and sleep the term “house” could be translated as “dwelling place” or “dwelling structure” or with another term that expresses the meaning.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, H1035, H1397, G36140, G36240

Daniel References:

2:5; 2:17; 3:29; 5:23; 6:10

house of God, your house, his house, Yahweh's house, a house for my name, the house for my name, the house, a house, a house of Yahweh

Short Title: house of God, Yahweh's house, house of Yahweh

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house)" refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The Bible often uses the phrases "your house" and "his house" to refer to the temple of Yahweh.
- The phrases "the house for my name," "a house for my name," and "a house of Yahweh" all refer to the temple of Yahweh.
- In some contexts, such as in 1 Chronicles 17:25 and 29:16, the phrase "a house" refers to the temple of Yahweh.
- In some contexts, such as in 1 Kings 8:44 and 2 Chronicles 6:4, the phrase "the house" refers to the temple of Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped" (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people").
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:14-15

- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 5:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 2:26
- Matthew 12:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G23160, G36240

Daniel References:

1:2; 5:3

house, household, house of Israel, house of David

Definition:

The term “house,” in this sense, refers to “descendants.”

- The term “house,” in this sense, means “family” or “descendants,” and refers to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”

(See also: **descendant**, **house of David**, **kingdom of Israel**)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Daniel References:

4:4

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “do not be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:2 David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:10 “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

Daniel References:

4:37; 5:19; 5:22; 7:24; 10:12

image, carved image, cast metal image, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

Daniel References:

2:31; 2:32; 2:34; 2:35; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:7; 3:10; 3:12; 3:14; 3:15; 3:18; 11:8

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: **altar of incense**, **burnt offering**, **frankincense**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 3:1-3**
- **2 Chronicles 13:10-11**
- **2 Kings 14:4**
- **Exodus 25:3-7**
- **Luke 1:10**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G23680, G23690, G23700, G23790, G30310

Daniel References:

2:46

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

Daniel References:

4:27; 9:5; 9:13; 9:16; 9:24

interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Definition:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream, prophet, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 4:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 7:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G12520, G13280, G13290, G13810, G19550, G20580, G31770, G47930

Daniel References:

2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:9; 2:16; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:30; 2:36; 2:45; 4:6; 4:7; 4:9; 4:18; 4:19; 4:24; 5:7; 5:8; 5:12; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 7:16

iron

Definition:

Iron is a hard, slightly shiny metal that is used to make many things.

- In Bible times, iron was used to make coins, chains, furniture, tools, weapons, chariots, gates, nails and other things.
- Iron is a very strong metal.
- If your culture does not have iron you could translate this term with a general expression which describes it such as “hard metal” or “strong metal.”
- If your culture does not have iron you could translate the phrase “an iron tool” as “a tool made of hard metal” or “a strong metal tool.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1270

Daniel References:

2:33; 2:34; 2:35; 2:40; 2:41; 2:42; 2:43; 2:45; 4:15; 4:23; 5:4; 5:23; 7:7; 7:19

Israel, Israelites

Definition:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: **Jacob**, **kingdom of Israel**, **Judah**, nation, **twelve tribes of Israel**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 10:1**
- **1 Kings 8:2**
- **Acts 2:36**
- **Acts 7:24**
- **Acts 13:23**
- **John 1:49-51**
- **Luke 24:21**
- **Mark 12:29**
- **Matthew 2:6**
- **Matthew 27:9**
- **Philippians 3:4-5**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.

- 10:1 They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- 14:12 But despite all this, the people of __Israel __ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- 15:9 God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of __Israel __ its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- 16:16 So God punished __Israel __ again for worshiping idols.
- 43:6 “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

Daniel References:

1:3; 9:7; 9:11; 9:20

Jehoiakim

Definition:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, **Eliakim**, Jeremiah, **Judah**, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 3:15-16**
- **2 Kings 23:34-35**
- **2 Kings 24:1**
- Daniel 1:2
- **Jeremiah 1:3**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3079

Daniel References:

1:1; 1:2

Jeremiah

Definition:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, **Judah**, prophet, rebel, suffer, **well**)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 35:25**
- **Jeremiah 1:2**
- **Jeremiah 11:1**
- **Matthew 2:18**
- **Matthew 16:13-16**
- **Matthew 27:10**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:5** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G24080

Daniel References:

9:2

Jerusalem

Definition:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, **Christ**, **David**, **Jebusites**, **Jesus**, **Solomon**, temple, **Zion**)

Bible References:

- **Galatians 4:26-27**
- **John 2:13**
- **Luke 4:9-11**
- **Luke 13:5**
- **Mark 3:7-8**
- **Mark 3:20-22**
- **Matthew 3:6**
- **Matthew 4:23-25**
- **Matthew 20:17**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.

- 20:7 They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- 38:1 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- 38:2 After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- 42:8 "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

Daniel References:

1:1; 5:2; 5:3; 6:10; 9:2; 9:7; 9:12; 9:16; 9:25

Jew, Jewish

Definition:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: **Abraham**, **Jacob**, Israel, Babylon, **Jewish leaders**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 2:5**
- **Acts 10:28**
- **Acts 14:5-7**
- **Colossians 3:11**
- **John 2:14**
- **Matthew 28:15**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

Daniel References:

3:8; 3:12

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2

- **Isaiah 56:6-7**
- **Jeremiah 15:15-16**
- **Matthew 2:9-10**
- **Luke 15:7**
- **Luke 19:37-38**
- **John 3:29**
- **Acts 16:32-34**
- **Romans 5:1-2**
- **Romans 15:30-32**
- **Galatians 5:23**
- **Philippians 4:10-13**
- **1 Thessalonians 1:6-7**
- **1 Thessalonians 5:16**
- **Philemon 1:4-7**
- **James 1:2**
- **3 John 1:1-4**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field… Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

Daniel References:

6:23

Judea, Judah

Definition:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

Daniel References:

1:1; 1:2; 1:6; 2:25; 5:13; 6:13; 9:7

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, **judge**, **judgment day**, **just**, law, law)

Bible References:

- **1 John 4:17**
- **1 Kings 3:9**
- **Acts 10:42-43**
- **Isaiah 3:14**
- **James 2:4**

- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 21:8 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- 39:4 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- 50:14 But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

Daniel References:

3:2; 3:3; 4:37; 7:22; 9:5; 9:12

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 8:6 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 16:1 The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- 16:18 Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.

- 17:5 Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- 21:6 God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- 48:14 David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

Daniel References:

1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:8; 1:10; 1:13; 1:15; 1:18; 1:19; 1:20; 1:21; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:21; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:31; 2:36; 2:37; 2:44; 2:45; 2:46; 2:47; 2:48; 2:49; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:7; 3:9; 3:10; 3:12; 3:13; 3:16; 3:17; 3:18; 3:22; 3:24; 3:27; 3:28; 3:30; 4:1; 4:18; 4:19; 4:22; 4:23; 4:24; 4:27; 4:28; 4:30; 4:31; 4:37; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:17; 5:18; 5:30; 6:2; 6:3; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:9; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:24; 6:25; 7:1; 7:17; 7:24; 8:1; 8:20; 8:21; 8:23; 8:27; 9:1; 9:6; 9:8; 10:1; 10:13; 11:2; 11:3; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:9; 11:11; 11:13; 11:14; 11:15; 11:25; 11:27; 11:36; 11:40

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: **authority**, king, **kingdom of God**, **kingdom of Israel**, **Judah**, **Judah**, **priest**)

Bible References:

- **1 Thessalonians 2:12**
- **2 Timothy 4:17-18**
- **Colossians 1:13-14**
- **John 18:36**
- **Mark 3:24**

- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:2 God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- 18:4 God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- 18:7 Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- 18:8 The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- 21:8 A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

Daniel References:

1:3; 1:20; 2:37; 2:40; 2:41; 2:42; 2:44; 4:3; 4:17; 4:18; 4:25; 4:26; 4:29; 4:30; 4:31; 4:32; 4:34; 4:36; 5:7; 5:11; 5:16; 5:20; 5:21; 5:28; 5:29; 5:31; 6:1; 6:3; 6:4; 6:7; 6:26; 7:14; 7:18; 7:22; 7:23; 7:24; 7:27; 8:1; 8:22; 9:1; 10:13; 11:2; 11:4; 11:9; 11:17; 11:20; 11:21

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

Daniel References:

1:4; 1:17; 2:3; 2:5; 2:8; 2:9; 2:15; 2:17; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:25; 2:26; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:45; 3:18; 4:2; 4:6; 4:7; 4:9; 4:17; 4:18; 4:25; 4:26; 4:32; 5:8; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 5:21; 5:22; 5:23; 6:10; 6:15; 7:16; 8:19; 9:25; 11:32; 11:38; 12:4

labor, labors, labored, laboring, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “toil” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3021, H4399, H4522, H4639, H5647, H5656, H5998, H6001, H6089, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730

Daniel References:

3:12

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- The lampstand would be tall enough so that the light of the lamp could shine throughout the room.
- The lampstand could be made of wood or metal and could hold one or more lamps.
- Ordinary lamps were made of clay, and lamps for special purposes, such as for the temple, were made of metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- The lamps were in the shape of a bowl with a raised lip on one side that held a wick. The lamps were filled with olive oil that soaked the wick and burned when the wick was lighted.
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand that had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, **lamp**, **light**, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- Daniel 5:5-6
- **Exodus 37:17**
- **Mark 4:21-23**
- **Matthew 5:15-16**
- **Revelation 1:12-13**
- **Revelation 1:20**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4501, G30870

Daniel References:

5:5

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: **instruct**, **Moses**, **Ten Commandments**, **lawful**, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- **Acts 15:6**
- Daniel 9:13
- **Exodus 28:42-43**

- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:7 God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- 16:1 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- 21:5 In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- 27:1 Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- 28:1 Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

Daniel References:

6:5; 7:25; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:2
- Esther 3:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:5
- John 18:31
- Romans 7:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

Daniel References:

6:8; 6:12; 6:15

leopard

Definition:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: beast, Daniel, prey, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 7:6
- Hosea 13:7
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5245, H5246

Daniel References:

7:6

likeness

Definition:

The term “likeness” refers to something or someone being the same as or similar to, or having similar characteristics to something or someone else.

- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

Daniel References:

10:16

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

Daniel References:

6:7; 6:12; 6:16; 6:19; 6:20; 6:22; 6:24; 6:27; 7:4

livestock, animals

Definition:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, goat, horse, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0929, H4399, H4735

Daniel References:

5:21

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, children)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

Daniel References:

5:6; 10:5

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:5 But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- 25:7 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- 26:3 This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- 27:2 The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- 31:5 Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- 43:9 “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- 47:3 By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- 47:11 Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

Daniel References:

1:2; 1:10; 2:47; 4:19; 4:24; 5:23; 8:6; 8:20; 9:3; 9:4; 9:7; 9:9; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; 9:19; 10:16; 10:17; 10:19; 12:8

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
    - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
    - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2
- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 27:2 The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- 33:8 "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- 36:5 As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- 39:10 "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- 47:1 She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- 48:1 When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- 49:3 He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- 49:4 He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- 49:7 Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.

- 49:9 But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- 49:13 God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

Daniel References:

9:4

lute, lyre

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: harp)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

Daniel References:

3:5; 3:7; 3:10; 3:15

magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: divination, Egypt, **Pharaoh**, **power**, sorcery)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 41:8**
- **Genesis 41:22-24**
- **Genesis 44:3-5**
- **Genesis 44:15**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2748, H2749, H3049, G30970

Daniel References:

1:20; 2:2; 2:10; 2:27; 4:7; 4:9; 5:11

magistrate

Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

- In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “ruling judge” or “legal officer” or “city leader.”

(See also: judge, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:20
- Acts 16:35
- Daniel 3:1-2
- Luke 12:58

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8200, H8614, G07580, G47550

Daniel References:

3:2; 3:3

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” or “majestic” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- Daniel 4:36
- Isaiah 2:10
- Jude 1:25
- Micah 5:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G31680, G31720

Daniel References:

4:30; 4:36; 5:18

manager, steward, stewardship

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: servant)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:4-5
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 8:3
- Luke 16:2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 1:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G20120, G36210, G36230

Daniel References:

1:11

Mede, Medes, Media

Definition:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called “Medes.”

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, Elam, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:6
- Acts 2:9
- Daniel 5:28
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezra 6:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G33700

Daniel References:

5:28; 5:31; 6:8; 6:12; 6:15; 8:20; 11:1

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6

- Romans 12:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- 19:17 He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- 20:12 The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- 27:11 Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- 32:11 But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- 34:9 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

Daniel References:

2:18; 4:27; 9:18

Michael

Definition:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: angel, Daniel, **messenger**, Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 10:13
- Daniel 10:21
- **Ezra 8:8**
- **Revelation 12:7-9**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4317, G34130

Daniel References:

10:13; 10:21; 12:1

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

Daniel References:

2:10; 2:20; 2:40; 2:42; 4:3; 4:30; 8:8; 8:23; 8:24; 9:15; 11:3; 11:25

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: **believe**, **heart**, **soul**)

Bible References:

- **Luke 10:27**
- **Mark 6:51-52**
- **Matthew 21:29**
- **Matthew 22:37**
- **James 4:8**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

Daniel References:

6:3

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3

- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:8 Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- 19:14 God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- 43:6 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- 49:2 Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

Daniel References:

4:2; 4:3; 6:8; 6:27; 12:6

Mishael

Definition:

Mishael is the name of three men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Mishael was a cousin of Aaron. When two of Aaron's sons were killed by God after they offered incense in a away that did not follow what God had told them to do, Mishael and his brother were given the task of carrying the dead bodies outside the Israelite camp.
- Another man named Mishael stood beside Ezra when he publicly read the rediscovered law.
- During the time when the people of Israel were in exile in Babylon, a young man named Mishael was also captured and forced to live in Babylon. The Babylonians gave him the name, "Meshach." He, along with his companions, Azariah (Shadrach) and Hananiah (Abednego), refused to worship the king's statue and were thrown into a fiery furnace.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Aaron, Azariah, Babylon, Daniel, Hananiah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:6-7
- Daniel 2:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4332, H4333

Daniel References:

1:6; 1:7; 1:11; 1:19; 2:17

Moab, Moabite

Definition:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

Daniel References:

11:41

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

Daniel References:

4:29; 10:4

Most High

Definition:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority. This title emphasizes God’s supreme authority and power over all creation.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 4:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 7:1-3
- Hosea 7:16
- Lamentations 3:35
- Luke 1:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G53100

Daniel References:

3:26; 4:2; 4:17; 4:24; 4:25; 4:32; 4:34; 5:18; 5:21; 7:18; 7:22; 7:25; 7:27

mourn, mourner, weeping

Definition:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

Daniel References:

10:2

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something that we cannot know or understand unless God reveals it or explains it to us.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden truth” or “previously unknown thing.”

(See also: Christ, Gentile, good news, Jew, true)

Bible References:

- Colossians 4:2-4
- Ephesians 6:19-20
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1219, H7328, G34660

Daniel References:

2:18; 2:19; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:47; 4:9

nation

Definition:

In the Bible, a nation is a large group of people who share a common identity and speak the same language. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- In the Bible, a nation could be a country with an extensive government structure and defined boundaries (such as Egypt or Ethiopia), but usually it is more general and refers to a people group.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- When used in the plural in a general way, the word translated as "nations" often referred to the people who were not Israelites, that is, to Gentiles, the people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "non-Jews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26

- **Acts 26:4**
- Daniel 3:4
- **Genesis 10:2-5**
- **Genesis 27:29**
- **Genesis 35:11**
- **Genesis 49:10**
- **Luke 7:5**
- **Mark 13:7-8**
- **Matthew 21:43**
- **Romans 4:16-17**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

Daniel References:

3:4; 3:7; 3:29; 4:1; 5:19; 6:25; 7:14; 8:22; 12:1

Nebuchadnezzar

Definition:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 1:2
- Daniel 4:4
- Ezekiel 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:6 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- 20:6 The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- 20:8 To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.

- 20:9 **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

Daniel References:

1:1; 1:18; 2:1; 2:28; 2:46; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:7; 3:9; 3:13; 3:14; 3:16; 3:19; 3:24; 3:26; 3:28; 4:1; 4:4; 4:18; 4:28; 4:31; 4:33; 4:34; 4:37; 5:2; 5:11; 5:18

Negev

Definition:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5045, H6160

Daniel References:

11:6

noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 4:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 16:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G09370, G21040

Daniel References:

1:3; 4:36; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:9; 5:10; 5:23; 6:17

oath, vow, swear, swearing, swear by, sworn

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath. A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: **Abimelech**, covenant, **promise**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72
- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280, H5087, H5088, G21710

Daniel References:

9:11; 12:7

ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: command, covenant, decree, law, law, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 3:3
- Psalms 111:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G12990, G25250, G42700, G42820

Daniel References:

2:44; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:7; 3:12; 3:14; 3:18; 6:1; 6:8; 11:31

palace, house

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 5:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 45:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G08330, G09330, G42320

Daniel References:

1:4; 4:4; 4:29; 4:30; 5:2; 5:5; 5:10; 6:18; 11:45

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, Jerusalem, peace)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G54040

Daniel References:

5:5

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:6 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- 15:12 Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- 16:3 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

Daniel References:

4:1; 6:25; 10:19

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

Daniel References:

8:23

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, **Artaxerxes**, **Assyria**, Babylon, Cyrus, **Esther**, **Ezra**, **Nehemiah**)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 36:20**
- Daniel 10:13
- **Esther 1:3-4**
- **Ezekiel 27:10**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

Daniel References:

8:20; 10:1; 10:13; 10:20; 11:2

pit, pitfall, trench, cistern

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A “cistern” was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: **abyss**, **hell**, **prison**)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 37:21-22**
- **Job 33:18**
- **Luke 6:39**
- **Proverbs 1:12**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

Daniel References:

9:25

plea, plead, please, beg, implore

Definition:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 8:3-5
- Judges 6:31
- Luke 4:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G11890, G17930, G20650, G38700

Daniel References:

1:12; 9:16

plunder, plundered, spoil, spoils

Definition:

The terms “spoil” and “plunder,” when used as a noun, refer to things that are taken by force from a person or place, normally during a time of war. The verb “plunder” means to take things from a person or place, normally by force and during a time of war.

- When translating the verb “plunder” in the context of war you should use a different word than “steal” as “to steal” normally implies wrong doing and to “plunder”” something in war is not necessarily sinful.
- You could translate the verb “plunder” with a word such as “pillage” or with a descriptive phrase “take the goods of.”
- You could translate the term “spoil” with a descriptive phrase such as “plundered goods” or “plundered things.”
- Depending on context, you could translate the term “plunder” with a descriptive phrase such as “captured goods” or with some other descriptive phrase or with a term such as “spoil” or “spoils.”
- Your language may have a word for things that are taken by force and/or in a time of war.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0957, H0962, H7998

Daniel References:

11:24; 11:33

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Definition:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19

- **Acts 2:45**
- **Deuteronomy 4:5-6**
- **Genesis 31:36-37**
- **Matthew 13:44**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

Daniel References:

7:18; 7:22

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.

- 17:8 When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- 22:7 Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!"
- 43:13 They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- 47:8 They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

Daniel References:

2:23; 4:34; 4:37; 5:4; 5:23

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:5 Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- 19:8 Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:7 Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.

- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

Daniel References:

6:10; 9:3; 9:4; 9:17; 9:20; 9:21

prince, princess, governor, provincial governor, official, nobleman, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: angel, **authority**, **Christ**, **demon**, lord, **power**, ruler, **Satan**, **Savior**, spirit)

Bible References:

- **Acts 5:29-32**
- **Genesis 12:15**
- **Genesis 49:26**
- **Luke 1:52**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

Daniel References:

1:9; 8:25; 9:6; 9:8; 10:13; 10:20; 10:21; 11:5; 12:1

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, holy, **clean**)

Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 2:16-18**
- **Ezekiel 20:9**
- **Malachi 1:10-12**
- **Matthew 12:5**
- **Numbers 18:30-32**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

Daniel References:

11:31

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:1 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- 19:6 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- 19:17 Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- 21:9 The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:5 "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- 43:7 "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- 48:12 Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

Daniel References:

9:2; 9:6; 9:10; 9:24

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: bless, good, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

Daniel References:

4:4; 4:27; 6:28; 8:24; 8:25; 11:27; 11:36

prostrate

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, bow)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

Daniel References:

3:5; 8:17

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: bow, fear, sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:4 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- 14:2 The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:6 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.

- 18:12 All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- 25:7 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- 26:2 On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- 47:1 There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

Daniel References:

2:46; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:14; 3:15; 3:18; 3:28

proud, pride, prideful, boast, boastful, boasting

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “pride,” in this sense, refer to a person thinking too highly of themself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people. The term “boast,” when used with this sense, means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”
- The term “boastful” is always negative, and refers to a person who brags about themself or what they possess or have done or can do.
- Someone who is “boastful” frequently talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, proud positive sense)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 4:2 They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1364, H1431, H2087, H2102, H3093, H4994, G51870, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260, G54500

Daniel References:

4:37; 5:20; 8:25; 11:37

province, provincial

Definition:

The term “province” refers to a large area into which a nation or empire might be divided for the purposes of government. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: Asia, Egypt, Esther, Galatia, Galilee, Judea, Macedonia, Medes, Rome, Samaria, Syria)

Bible References:

- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 3:2
- Daniel 6:2
- Ecclesiastes 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G18850

Daniel References:

2:48; 2:49; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:12; 3:30; 8:2; 11:24

prudence, prudent

Definition:

The term “prudent” describes a person who thinks carefully about his actions and makes wise decisions.

- Often “prudence” refers to the ability to make wise decisions about practical, physical matters, such as in managing money or property.
- Although “prudence” and “wisdom” are similar in meaning, often “wisdom” is more general and focuses on spiritual or moral matters.
- Depending on the context, “prudent” could also be translated as “shrewd” or “careful” or “wise.”

(See also: shrewd, spirit, wise)

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:4-5
- Proverbs 12:23-24
- Proverbs 27:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H5843, H6175, H6191, H6195, H7919, H7922

Daniel References:

2:14

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

Daniel References:

7:9; 11:35; 12:10

purple

Definition:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: **ephod**, **Philippi**, **royal**, **tabernacle**, temple)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 2:13-14**
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- **Proverbs 31:22-23**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

Daniel References:

5:7; 5:16; 5:29

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, **Athaliah**, **Esther**, king. Persiaruler, **Sheba**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 10:10**
- **1 Kings 11:18-19**
- **2 Kings 10:12-14**
- **Acts 8:27**
- **Esther 1:17**
- **Luke 11:31**
- **Matthew 12:42**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G09380

Daniel References:

5:10

rage

Definition:

The term “rage” refers to intense anger. Often, the term is used to describe an angry person who is out of control in some way.

- When used as a verb, the term “rage” can mean to move powerfully, such as in descriptions of a “raging” storm or ocean waves that “rage.”
- To be “filled with rage” means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: **self-control**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 4:25**
- Daniel 3:13
- **Luke 4:28**
- **Numbers 25:11**
- **Proverbs 19:3**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H1348, H1984, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3491, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7283, H7857, G16930, G28300, G37100, G54330

Daniel References:

3:13; 11:30

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:14 After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- 18:7 Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- 18:9 Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- 18:13 Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.

- 20:7 But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- 45:3 Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

Daniel References:

9:5; 9:9

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 45:5 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- 49:6 He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- 49:10 When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- 49:13 God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

Daniel References:

2:6; 5:31; 7:18

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

Daniel References:

1:1; 2:1; 2:38; 2:39; 5:7; 5:18; 5:26; 6:28; 8:23; 9:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:2 After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- 17:13 David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- 19:18 They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- 24:2 Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, "**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- 42:8 "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins."
- 44:5 "So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

Daniel References:

9:13

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Do not talk about this with anyone” or “Do not tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

Daniel References:

2:4; 2:7; 2:9; 2:36; 4:7; 4:9; 4:18; 11:44

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

Daniel References:

9:25; 10:20

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: **punish**)

Bible References:

- **Deuteronomy 32:6**
- **Isaiah 40:10**
- **Luke 6:35**
- **Mark 9:40-41**
- **Matthew 5:11-12**
- **Matthew 6:3-4**
- **Psalms 127:3-5**
- **Revelation 11:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

Daniel References:

2:6; 5:17

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”

- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, **integrity**, **just**, law, law, **obey**, pure, righteous, sin, **unlawful**)

Bible References:

- **Deuteronomy 19:16**
- **Job 1:8**
- **Psalms 37:30**
- **Psalms 49:14**
- **Psalms 107:42**

- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:2 But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- 4:8 God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- 17:2 David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 23:1 Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- 50:10 Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

Daniel References:

4:27; 9:7; 9:14; 9:16; 9:18; 9:24; 11:6; 12:3

ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

(See also: **devastated**)

Bible References:

- **2 Chronicles 12:7-8**
- **2 Kings 19:25-26**
- **Acts 15:16**
- **Isaiah 23:13-14**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5327, H5557, H5754, H5856, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G26790, G26920, G36390, G44850

Daniel References:

11:17

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: **authority**, governor, king, **synagogue**)

Bible References:

- **Acts 3:17-18**
- **Acts 7:35-37**
- **Luke 12:11**
- **Luke 23:35**
- **Mark 10:42**
- **Matthew 9:32-34**
- **Matthew 20:25**
- **Titus 3:1**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

Daniel References:

2:48; 3:2; 3:3; 3:27; 4:17; 4:25; 4:26; 4:32; 5:16; 5:21; 5:29; 6:7; 9:25; 9:26; 11:39

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: **ash**, **camel**, goat, humble, mourn, repent, **sign**)

Bible References:

- **2 Samuel 3:31**
- **Genesis 37:34**
- **Joel 1:8-10**
- **Jonah 3:5**
- **Luke 10:13**
- **Matthew 11:21**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8242, G45260

Daniel References:

9:3

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: **altar**, **burnt offering**, **drink offering**, false god, **fellowship offering**, **freewill offering** **peace offering**, **priest**, **sin offering**, worship)

Bible References:

- **2 Timothy 4:6**
- **Acts 7:42**
- **Acts 21:25**
- **Genesis 4:3-5**

- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- 5:6 "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- 5:9 God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- 13:9 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- 17:6 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- 48:6 Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- 48:8 But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- 49:11 Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

Daniel References:

2:46; 8:11; 8:12; 8:13; 9:21; 9:27; 11:31; 12:11

saint

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

Daniel References:

7:18; 7:21; 7:22; 7:25; 7:27

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: holy, Holy Spirit, holy, set apart, tabernacle, tax, temple)

Bible References:

- Amos 7:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3
- Hebrews 8:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1
- Psalms 78:69

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G00400

Daniel References:

8:11; 8:13; 8:14; 9:17; 9:26; 11:31

save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful.
To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:8 Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- 11:2 God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- 12:5 Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- 16:17 This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- 44:8 “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- 47:11 The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
- 49:12 Good works cannot **save** you.
- 49:13 God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

Daniel References:

3:29; 6:14; 6:27; 11:41; 12:1

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:3
- Luke 4:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G09740, G09750

Daniel References:

9:2

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

When referring to an action, the term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal. When referring to an object, the term “seal” refers to something that was made of wood or metal or stone that was formed into a design so that it could be used to stamp something (make an imprint on it).

- A seal was marked with a design to show who it belonged to.
- Seals were used to mark different objects for the purpose of showing that the thing belonged to the owner or had come from the owner or was approved by the owner.
- Seals were used to indicate the authenticity of something as deriving from the owner or being approved by the owner or belonging to the owner in some way.
- Sometimes a seal was put on the top of a ring so that the owner of the ring could press the seal down into something and make an imprint on it.
- Sometimes seals were attached to a string or cord and worn around the neck.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

Daniel References:

6:17; 9:24; 12:4; 12:9

seed

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant.

- The term “seed” can also refer to what a man plants into a woman that allows them to reproduce.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a man‘s or woman‘s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the seed of a plant, use a general term that can apply to all plants, if possible.
- When “seed” refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: **children**, **descendant**)

Bible References:

- **1 Kings 18:32**
- **Genesis 1:11**
- **Jeremiah 2:21**
- **Matthew 13:8**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

Daniel References:

1:3; 2:43; 9:1

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: **just**, **true**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 10:14**
- **Acts 17:26-27**
- **Hebrews 11:6**
- **Luke 11:9**
- **Psalms 27:8**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

Daniel References:

1:8; 1:20; 2:13; 2:16; 2:23; 2:49; 4:36; 6:4; 7:16; 8:15; 9:3

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

Daniel References:

11:15; 11:18; 11:21

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master’s direction. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” which could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 6:1 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 19:10 Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.”
- 29:3 “Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’”
- 35:6 “All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- 47:4 The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.”
- 50:4 Jesus also said, “A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570

Strong’s for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

Daniel References:

1:12; 1:13; 2:4; 2:7; 3:12; 3:14; 3:17; 3:18; 3:26; 3:28; 6:16; 6:20; 7:10; 7:14; 7:27; 9:6; 9:10; 9:11; 9:17; 10:17

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5
- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

Daniel References:

9:7; 9:8; 9:16; 11:18; 12:2

Shinar

Definition:

Shinar means “country of two rivers” and was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

- Shinar later became known as “Chaldea” and then, “Babylonia.”
- Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
- Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called “Chaldea.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: **Abraham**, **Babel**, Babylon, Chaldea, **Mesopotamia**, **patriarchs**, **Ur**)

Bible References:

- **Genesis 10:8-10**
- **Genesis 14:1**
- **Genesis 14:7-9**
- **Isaiah 11:10-11**
- **Zechariah 5:11**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8152

Daniel References:

1:2

shrewd, cunning

Definition:

The term “shrewd” describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

- Often the term “shrewd” has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
- A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “cunning” or “crafty” or “smart” or “clever,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2450, H6175, G54290

Daniel References:

8:25

siege, besiege, besieged, siegework, siegeworks

Definition:

A “siege” occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city or to put it “under siege” means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To “besiege” a city can also be expressed as to “lay siege” to it or to “perform a siege” on it.
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Jeremiah 33:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4692, H4693, H5341, H5437, H5564, H6693, H6696, H6887

Daniel References:

1:1

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made from silver include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.
- If your culture does not have silver you could translate this term as "precious metal"

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

Daniel References:

2:32; 2:35; 2:45; 5:2; 5:4; 5:23; 11:8; 11:38; 11:43

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws.

Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3

- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 3:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children.”
- 13:12 God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- 20:1 The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s **sin**.
- 35:1 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- 38:5 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**.”
- 48:8 We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- 49:17 Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

Daniel References:

4:27; 9:5; 9:8; 9:11; 9:15; 9:16; 9:20; 9:24

slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: **slaughter**)

Bible References:

- **Ezekiel 28:23**
- **Isaiah 26:21**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

Daniel References:

2:13; 2:14; 3:22; 5:19; 5:30; 7:11; 11:26

snow

Definition:

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus’ clothing and hair were described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Lebanon, pure)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:6
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:3
- Psalms 147:16
- Revelation 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7949, H7950, H8517, G55100

Daniel References:

7:9

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: heaven, son, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:56
- Daniel 7:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 3:12-13
- Luke 6:5
- Mark 2:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 80:17-18

- **Revelation 14:14**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H0606, H1121, H1247, G04440, G52070

Daniel References:

7:13; 8:17

sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician

Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, false god, magic, sacrifice, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Revelation 9:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G30950, G30960, G30970, G53310, G53320, G53330

Daniel References:

2:2

sow, sower, plant, planted, replanted, transplanted

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds on top of or in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds. A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground.

- One method of sowing or planting seeds during biblical times was to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Farmers would often plow the ground on which they had sown seeds after they had sown the seeds. The reason farmers would plow the ground after they had sown the seed is so that the seed would be covered with soil.
- Sometimes farmers may have plowed the field that they sowed seeds in both before and after sowing seeds.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word or phrase you use to translate this term refers to, or can include, planting seeds by scattering them because this is the method of sowing that Jesus was referring to in his parable in Matthew 13:3-23, Mark 4:2-20, and Luke 8:4-8 where he describes a sower who sowed seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.

(See also: **harvest**)

Bible References:

- **Luke 8:5**
- **Matthew 6:25-26**
- **Matthew 13:4**
- **Matthew 13:19**
- **Matthew 25:24**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

Daniel References:

11:45

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5

- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:3 Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- 40:7 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- 45:5 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my **spirit**.”
- 48:7 All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

Daniel References:

2:1; 2:3; 2:35; 5:14; 5:20; 5:23; 7:2; 7:15; 8:8; 10:17; 11:4

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: glory, king, majesty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:27
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:7
- Luke 4:7
- Psalms 89:44-45
- Revelation 21:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1925, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2091, H2122, H2892, H3314, H3519, H6643, H7613, H8597

Daniel References:

2:31; 4:36; 5:6; 5:9; 5:10; 7:28; 10:8; 11:20; 11:21

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

Daniel References:

6:7

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

Daniel References:

2:34; 2:35; 2:45; 5:4; 5:23; 6:17; 11:38

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple and tent of meeting (sometimes called “the tabernacle”)contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”
- When referring to the place where valuable things were kept for the tent of meeting or temple, another way to translate the word “storehouse” is “treasury.”

(See also: consecrate, dedicate, famine, gold, grain, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Psalms 33:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0214, H0618, H0624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G05960

Daniel References:

1:2

stronghold, fortification, fortress, citadel

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A “citadel” is a fortress inside a city. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: false god, false god, **refuge**, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- **2 Corinthians 10:4**
- **2 Kings 8:10-12**
- **2 Samuel 5:8-10**
- **Acts 21:35**
- **Habakkuk 1:10-11**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0490, H0553, H0759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G37940, G39250

Daniel References:

8:2; 11:1; 11:7; 11:10; 11:15; 11:19; 11:24; 11:31; 11:38; 11:39

stumble, reeling

Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: believe, persecute, sin, stumbling block)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 2:8
- Hosea 4:5
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G06790, G43480, G43500, G44170, G46240, G46250

Daniel References:

11:14; 11:19; 11:33; 11:34; 11:35; 11:41

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:13 God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- 38:12 Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- 42:3 He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- 42:7 He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- 44:5 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- 46:4 God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

Daniel References:

6:2

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55

- **Revelation 1:16**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

Daniel References:

11:33

temple, house, house of God

Definition:

A temple is a building dedicated to the worship of a specific diety where that diety was thought to dwell. Nations around Israel had temples dedicated to their various gods. The temple in Israel was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the first temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, **Solomon**, Babylon, Holy Spirit, **tabernacle**, **courtyard**, **Zion**, house)

Bible References:

- **Acts 3:2**
- **Acts 3:8**
- **Ezekiel 45:18-20**
- **Luke 19:46**
- **Nehemiah 10:28**
- **Psalm 79:1-3**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:6 David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:2 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- 20:7 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- 20:13 When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city.
- 25:4 Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- 40:7 When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

Daniel References:

1:2; 5:3

tent, tentmaker

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: **Abraham**, **Canaan**, **curtain**, **Paul**, **Sinai**, **tabernacle**, **tent of meeting**)

Bible References:

- **1 Chronicles 5:10**
- Daniel 11:45
- **Exodus 16:18**
- **Genesis 12:9**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Daniel References:

11:45

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

Daniel References:

2:31; 11:44

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43

- **Malachi 3:10**
- **Philippians 1:10**
- **Psalm 26:2**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

Daniel References:

1:12; 1:14

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea

Definition:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by: Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, people group, prosper)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0314, H1419, H3220

Daniel References:

7:2; 7:3; 11:45

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

Daniel References:

2:35

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: **authority**, **power**, king, reign)

Bible References:

- **Colossians 1:15-17**
- **Genesis 41:40**
- **Luke 1:32**
- **Luke 22:30**
- **Matthew 5:34**
- **Matthew 19:28**
- **Revelation 1:4-6**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

Daniel References:

5:20; 7:9

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

Daniel References:

1:4; 3:4; 3:7; 3:29; 4:1; 5:19; 6:25; 7:14

trample

Definition:

To “trample” means to step on something and smash it with the feet. This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean “destroy” or “defeat” or “humiliate.”

- An example of “trampling” would be the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field.
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by trampling grapes to remove the juice from them.
- Sometimes the term to “trample” has a figurative meaning of to “punish by humiliating,” comparing it to trampling mud for a threshing floor.
- The term “trample” was used figuratively to express how Yahweh would punish his people Israel for their pride and rebellion.
- Other ways that “trample” could be translated include “crush with the feet” or “smash down with the feet” or “stomp on and crush” or “smash into the ground.”
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “run over,” “walk around on,” or “crush underfoot.”

(See also: grape, shame, punish, rebel, thresh, wine)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:29
- Psalms 7:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0947, H1758, H1869, H4001, H4823, H7429, H7512, G26620, G39610

Daniel References:

7:7; 7:19; 7:23; 8:7; 8:10; 8:13

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

Daniel References:

8:12; 8:13; 9:7; 9:11; 9:24

tremble, shake, shaken, quake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

Daniel References:

4:14; 5:19; 6:26; 10:7; 10:11

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Do not trouble her” could also be translated as “do not bother her” or “do not criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

Daniel References:

2:1; 2:3; 7:15; 9:12; 9:13; 9:14; 12:1

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.

- 17:2 David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- 34:6 Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

Daniel References:

6:4; 6:23

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See Also: robe)

Bible References:

- Daniel 3:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 8:12-13
- Luke 3:11
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

Daniel References:

3:21

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

Daniel References:

1:17; 1:20; 2:21; 5:11; 5:12; 5:14; 8:15; 8:16; 8:17; 8:23; 8:27; 9:2; 9:22; 9:23; 9:25; 10:1; 10:11; 10:12; 10:14; 11:33; 12:8; 12:10

vision, envision

Definition:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

Daniel References:

1:17; 2:19; 2:28; 4:5; 4:9; 4:10; 4:13; 7:1; 7:2; 7:7; 7:13; 7:15; 8:1; 8:2; 8:5; 8:8; 8:13; 8:15; 8:17; 8:26; 8:27; 9:21; 9:24; 10:1; 10:14; 11:14

watch, guard, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

Daniel References:

2:14; 8:5; 9:14

week

Definition:

The term “week” literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term “week” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The “Festival of Weeks” is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called “Pentecost.”

(See also: Pentecost)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:9
- Leviticus 23:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7620, G45210

Daniel References:

10:2; 10:3

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: **grape**, **vine**, **vineyard**, **winepress**)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 5:23**
- **Genesis 9:21**
- **Genesis 49:12**
- **John 2:3-5**
- **John 2:10**
- **Matthew 9:17**
- **Matthew 11:18**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

Daniel References:

1:5; 1:8; 1:16; 5:1; 5:2; 5:4; 5:23; 10:3

wise men, advisor

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wise men” is often a technical term referring to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

Daniel References:

2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:18; 2:24; 2:27; 2:48; 4:6; 4:18; 5:7; 5:8; 5:15

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 2:5 She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- 18:1 When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.

- 23:9 Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- 45:1 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

Daniel References:

1:4; 1:17; 1:20; 2:20; 2:21; 2:23; 2:30; 5:11; 5:14; 9:22; 11:33; 11:35; 12:3; 12:10

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”

- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:7 In **God’s word** he commands his people, “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- 33:6 So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”
- 42:3 Then Jesus explained to them what **God’s word** says about the Messiah.
- 42:7 Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in **God’s word** must be fulfilled.” Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God’s word**.
- 45:10 Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.

- 48:12 But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

Daniel References:

9:2

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

Daniel References:

9:16; 11:44

Yahweh, Yah

Definition:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show that this represents God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- “Yah” is a shortened form of the name Yahweh that occurs in poetry and praise (e.g. Hallelujah = “Praise Yah”), and in some Hebrew names (e.g. Zechariah = “Yah remembers”).

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “existing one” or “the one who is” or “he who is present.”
- This name could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled, or how it sounds in your language.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- In most cases it is good to keep the name Yahweh where it occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places to make the text more natural and clear.
- An introduction of a quote from Yahweh could be something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Lord)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5
- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 9:14 God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- 13:4 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 13:5 “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God.”
- 16:1 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- 19:10 Then Elijah prayed, “O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Daniel References:

9:4; 9:8; 9:10; 9:13; 9:14; 9:20

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

Daniel References:

1:1; 1:5; 1:21; 2:1; 5:31; 7:1; 8:1; 9:1; 9:2; 10:1; 11:1; 11:6; 11:8; 11:13